OXFORD

Oxford Word Skills

INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and **Stuart Redman**

Learn to use the most important words and phrases in English topic by topic

Oxford 3000

INCLUDES DICTIONARY APP

SECOND EDITION

Oxford
Word Skills

INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and **Stuart Redman**

Learn to use the most important words and phrases in English topic by topic

OXFORD

Contents

List of spotlight boxes 6
Acknowledgements 7
Introduction 8

LEARNING

1 Vocabulary learning 12
2 Progress and aims 14
3 Using an English dictionary 16
4 English punctuation 18

PEOPLE

5 The body 20
6 Appearance 22
7 Character 24
8 Feelings and emotions 26
9 Personal qualities 28
10 Friendship 30
11 Families 32
12 Marriage and divorce 34

THE WORLD AROUND US

13 Geography 36
14 The universe and science 38
15 Weather conditions 40
16 Climate change 42
17 Saving the environment 44
18 Animals, insects and birds 46

LANGUAGE FOCUS adjectives and adverbs

19 Adjectives (1) 48
20 Adjectives (2): opposites 50
21 Adverbs (1): degree and frequency 52
22 Adverbs (2): emphasizing and manner 54

DAILY LIFE

23 Fruit, vegetables and herbs 56
24 Containers and quantities 58
25 Cooking 60
26 Shopping 62
27 Clothing 64
28 Fashion 66
29 Illness and accidents 68
30 Hospital 70

TRANSPORT AND TRAVEL

31 Roads 72
32 Driving 74
33 Trains and buses 76
34 Air travel 78
35 Holidays 80

LANGUAGE FOCUS prepositions

36 Verb + preposition 82
37 Noun + preposition 84
38 Prepositions in time phrases 85
39 Adjective + preposition 86
40 Prepositional phrases 88

DESCRIBING THINGS

41 Describing objects 90
42 Household tasks 92
43 Buildings 94
44 How to grow something 96
45 Shapes and lines 97
46 A painting 98
47 The five senses 100

SOCIAL AND POLITICAL ISSUES

48 Crime 102
49 The justice system 104
50 Health issues 106
51 Politics 108
52 War and peace 110
53 Events in history 112
54 Social issues 114

LANGUAGE FOCUS verbs

55 Irregular verbs 116
56 Verb + infinitive or *-ing* form 118
57 Using verbs with reflexive pronouns 120
58 *take* 121

MEDIA AND ENTERTAINMENT

59 Art 122
60 Films 124
61 Theatre 125
62 Music 126
63 TV and online viewing 128
64 Newspapers 130
65 Books 132
66 Sporting events 134
67 Sport: people and places 136
68 Festivals 138
69 The internet 140
70 Email and social media 142

LANGUAGE FOCUS word building

71 Word building: prefixes 144
72 Word building: suffixes 146
73 Link words 148

STUDY AND WORK

74 School 150
75 Academic life 152
76 Student life 154
77 Describing jobs 156
78 Careers 158
79 Applying for a job 160
80 Finance 162
81 Running a business 164
82 Marketing 166

LANGUAGE FOCUS phrasal verbs and idioms

83 Phrasal verbs (1): grammatical patterns 168
84 Phrasal verbs (2): meaning 170
85 Expressions (1) 172
86 Expressions (2) 174

LANGUAGE FOCUS social English

87 Likes, dislikes and preferences 176
88 Probability 178
89 Similarities and differences 179
90 Pleasure and annoyance 180
91 Making arrangements 182
92 Warnings 183
93 Opinions 184
94 Hopes and plans 186
95 Obligation 188
96 Asking for permission 189

LANGUAGE FOCUS styles of language

97 Formal and informal English 190
98 Write a letter or email 192
99 Abbreviations and short forms 194
100 American English 196
Vocabulary building 198
Common irregular verbs 202
Answer key 205
Word list 237

Spotlight boxes

Title	Unit	Page
actually	94	186
adjective + preposition	39	86
adjectives ending in *-ful* and *-less* (1)	20	51
adjectives ending in *-ful* and *-less* (2)	72	14
adverbs of manner	22	55
alone, on your own, lonely	8	26
as … as possible	50	107
at last	38	85
be used to (doing) sth and *be accustomed to (doing) sth*	76	154
birth	11	33
block	43	95
can + sense verbs	47	100
career, job, profession	78	158
championship and *tournament*	66	134
cheers	97	191
cinema	60	124
compare and *comparison*	89	179
competition	66	134
completely, absolutely, totally	21	52
compound adjectives with *well*	65	133
compounds with *driving*	32	75
contain and *include*	2	15
conversation, discussion, argument	1	13
crazy, mad, stupid	7	24
degree courses	75	152
depth	67	137
diet	25	60
different meanings	84	170
different uses of *bother*	90	181
discover or *invent?*	14	39
disease and *illness*	50	106
effect n and *affect v*	16	42
employment	78	159
enough	30	70
evidence and *proof*	49	104
expect	9	29
experience and *experienced*	34	79
fashion and *fashionable*	28	66
finance	80	162
formal language	79	160
further	98	192
get (= become)	8	27
getting dressed and wearing clothes	27	64
giving opinions	93	184
go away	85	173
gradable and ungradable adjectives	19	48
hardware and *software*	69	140
journey, trip, travel	33	76
keep	57	118
lady and *gentleman*	46	98
live, alive, living	62	127
long, wide, deep; length, width, depth	67	137
market	81	165
mind	85	172
noun + noun	41	91
on earth	40	89
outdoor(s)/indoor(s)	35	80
politics	51	108
the prefix *re-* with verbs	71	145
the prefixes *over-* and *under-*	81	164
preposition + *-ing* form	37	84
prepositions with *rise* and *fall*	80	163
quite, fairly, rather, pretty	21	53
reflexive verbs	57	120
religion	68	138
repair, fix, mend	42	93
royal families	53	112
separable phrasal verbs	83	168
separate	12	35
shape and *-shaped*	45	97
skill	82	166
so/neither do/have/can, etc.	87	177
social media	70	143
sore and *painful*	29	68
steal and *rob*	48	103
still	73	149
stress and *emphasize*	3	16
stuff	41	90
take/send sth back	26	63
the suffix *-er* and *player*	67	136
the suffix *-ish*	6	23
the suffix *-ist*	62	126
the suffixes *-ed* and *-ing*	19	49
tin and *can*	24	58
transitive and intransitive verbs	24	59
TV	63	129
ugly	6	22
uncountable nouns	42	92
verb + noun	52	111
verb + preposition	36	82
verbs that mean *continue*	74	150
whenever, wherever, whatever	17	45
whether (or not)	49	104
word order with *like, enjoy*, etc.	87	176
word stress	71	144
worth	26	62

Acknowledgements

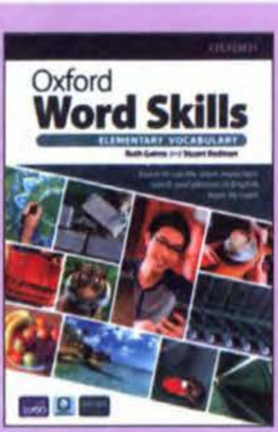
Some of the ABOUT YOU answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

Elżbieta Rudniak (Poland)
Eva Paulerová (Czech Republic)
Florence Waeni (Kenya)
Franky Lau (China)
Hossein Sarempour (Iran)
Katalin Elekes (Hungary)
Mallika Ghosh (India)
Michael Finch (South Korea)
Susana Dichiera (Argentina)

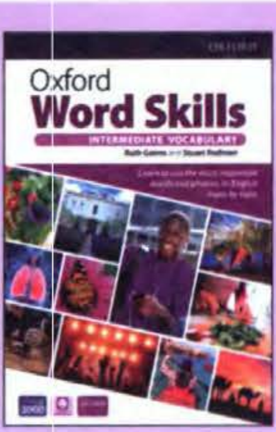
Introduction

What is *Oxford Word Skills*?

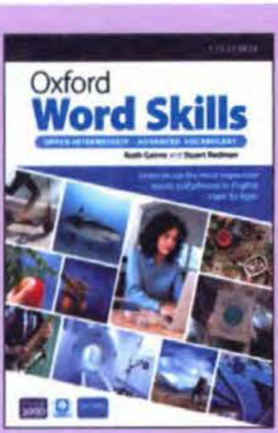
Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn and practise new vocabulary.



Level 1:
elementary (CEFR levels A1 and A2)



Level 2:
intermediate (CEFR level B1)



Level 3:
upper-intermediate – advanced (CEFR levels B2 and C1)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each level contains 100 units of vocabulary presentation and practice, with a unit being 1–2 pages, depending on the size of the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable chunks, then immediately followed up with practice exercises, usually on the same page.

The units are grouped within modules containing 3–12 units each. A majority of the modules are topic-based, e.g. Feelings and emotions, Geography, Air travel, but some modules have a language focus, e.g. Prepositional phrases, Using verbs with reflexive pronouns, Phrasal verbs.

At the front of the Intermediate level you will find:

- a list of all the 'spotlight' boxes

At the back of the Intermediate level you will find:

- a list of vocabulary-building tables
- a list of common irregular verbs
- an Answer key for all the exercises
- a Word list of all the vocabulary taught with a reference to the units where each item appears and the CEFR level for words/phrases in the Oxford 3000™/5000™ or Oxford Phrase List™.

Oxford Word Skills comes with the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app, which allows learners to find the meaning of new words in English and provides a pronunciation model for the words. You will find pronunciation exercises throughout the book which refer you to the APP to check the correct pronunciation.

What vocabulary is included?

At Intermediate level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topic areas, e.g. People, The world around us, Study and work
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. Making arrangements, Warnings, Opinions
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. Verb + infinitive or *-ing* form, Prepositions in time phrases, Word building: prefixes

Throughout the three levels the main focus is on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, although the higher levels add more language from different styles of English as well as more figurative usage of language.

The selection of vocabulary at each level is based on frequency and usefulness, with the foundation being the Oxford 3000. This is a list of 3,000 words identified by the Oxford University Press ELT Dictionaries team as the most important words for learners of English. These items have been divided into four levels in accordance with the CEFR (A1, A2, B1 and B2).

- The Elementary level includes many items from A1, but with the majority of items at A2 level.
- The Intermediate level has a focus on B1 items from the Oxford 3000, as well as recycling some items from the A2 level, and it also includes some B2 items.
- The Upper-Intermediate – Advanced level concentrates on B2 items from the Oxford 3000, but also includes C1 items from the Oxford 5000 word list (which includes both additional B2 items and C1 words). It is not within the scope of this series to teach C2 items, as these correspond more closely to lexical needs at proficiency level.

The Oxford 3000/5000 word lists are supplemented by the Oxford Phrase List, which contains just under 1,000 CEFR-levelled phrases considered important for students at each level. The Intermediate word list also draws on topic lists from OUP's learner's dictionaries, which identify key vocabulary items across a range of 60 topics. By using the Oxford 3000 alongside the topic lists, we have been able to focus on high-frequency vocabulary, but also to include vocabulary items that may not have a high frequency overall, but will have great value in particular contexts, e.g. *turnover* and *inflation* in finance, and *selfie* and *profile* in social media. By using the Oxford Phrase List, we have also been able to ensure the best coverage of both words and phrases for each level.

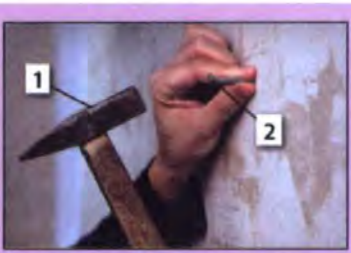
We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple definition, or an example of each word or phrase in use. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* APP for information on other meanings.

To the teacher

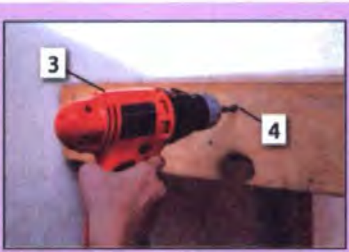
How can I use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through:

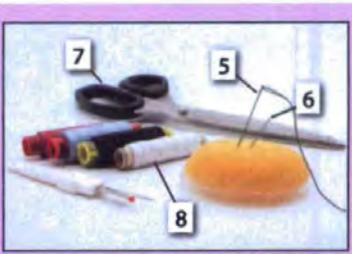
- **visuals**



You use a **hammer**[1] to **bang a nail**[2] into the wall to **hang** a picture on.

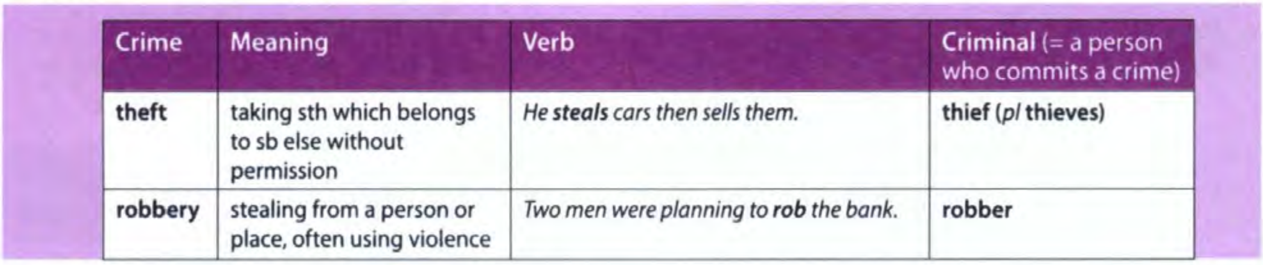


You use a **drill**[3] to make a **hole**[4]. A hammer and drill are **tools**.



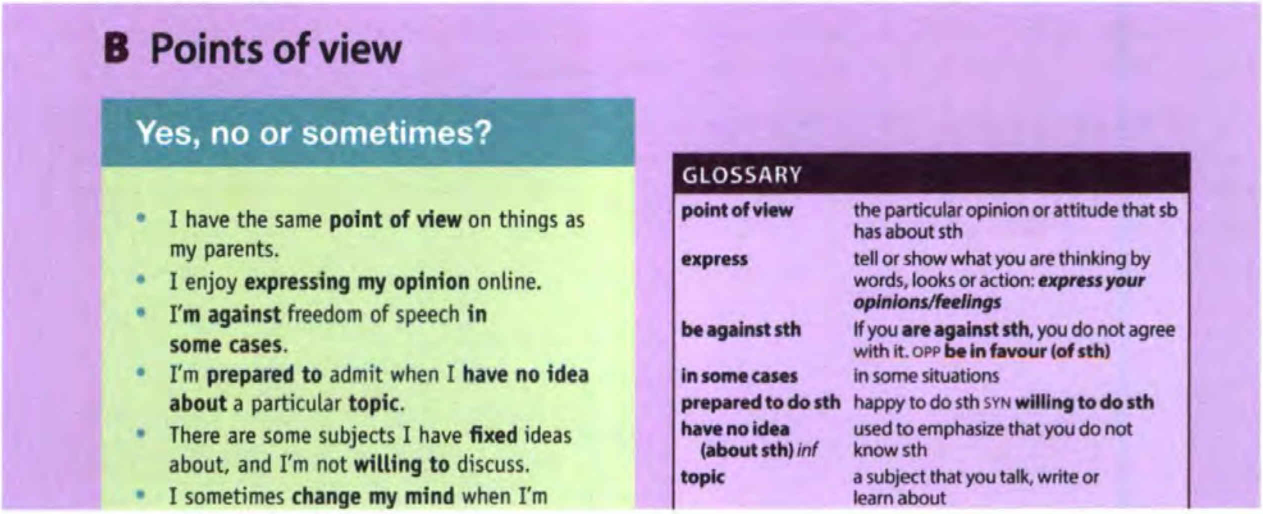
You use a **needle**[5], **pins**[6], **scissors**[7] and **cotton**[8] when you're **sewing**.

- **tables**



Crime	Meaning	Verb	Criminal (= a person who commits a crime)
theft	taking sth which belongs to sb else without permission	*He **steals** cars then sells them.*	**thief** (*pl* **thieves**)
robbery	stealing from a person or place, often using violence	*Two men were planning to **rob** the bank.*	**robber**

- **different types of text**



B Points of view

Yes, no or sometimes?

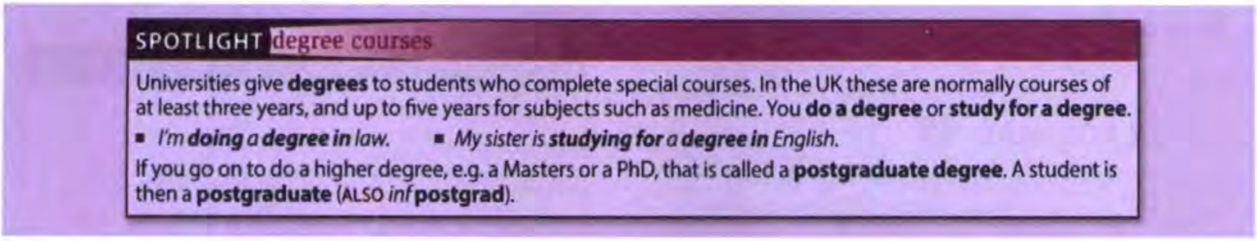
- I have the same **point of view** on things as my parents.
- I enjoy **expressing my opinion** online.
- I'**m against** freedom of speech **in some cases.**
- I'm **prepared to** admit when I **have no idea about** a particular **topic.**
- There are some subjects I have **fixed** ideas about, and I'm not **willing to** discuss.
- I sometimes **change my mind** when I'm

GLOSSARY	
point of view	the particular opinion or attitude that sb has about sth
express	tell or show what you are thinking by words, looks or action: ***express your opinions/feelings***
be against sth	If you **are against sth**, you do not agree with it. OPP **be in favour (of sth)**
in some cases	in some situations
prepared to do sth	happy to do sth SYN **willing to do sth**
have no idea (about sth) *inf*	used to emphasize that you do not know sth
topic	a subject that you talk, write or learn about

Visuals provide a clear guide to meaning; the tables and texts show words used in natural sentences, with the meaning explained in a glossary. As the input in most sections occupies a page and does not usually exceed 15 items, it is very straightforward to use in the classroom. Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the visuals or written text in the presentation for at least ten minutes. This allows time for them to reinforce the connection between the visual input and the meanings, or to read through the glossary carefully to check the meaning of the new items in the presentation sentences, dialogue or extended text. Tell students to look at the extra words included in the **glossary** (opposites, synonyms, derivatives, collocations and further examples) as this will help them to expand their vocabulary with minimal effort in many cases. It is also important to look at the **spotlight** boxes. This is an additional feature which picks out an item or items of particular value.

For example:



SPOTLIGHT degree courses

Universities give **degrees** to students who complete special courses. In the UK these are normally courses of at least three years, and up to five years for subjects such as medicine. You **do a degree** or **study for a degree**.

- *I'm **doing a degree in** law.*
- *My sister is **studying for a degree in** English.*

If you go on to do a higher degree, e.g. a Masters or a PhD, that is called a **postgraduate degree.** A student is then a **postgraduate** (ALSO *inf* **postgrad**).

- While students are working through the presentation, you can answer any questions they may have about the new vocabulary. This is also an opportunity to provide a pronunciation model for your students to repeat; otherwise the presentation stage is going to be a long silent phase. You might want to read a text aloud, or get students to read sections of it.
- Students can move on to the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the Answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class. The latter is probably a better approach, as you can also discuss why they might have arrived at a wrong answer and focus on or practise pronunciation. It is sensible to work through the exercises chronologically, as they generally progress from receptive practice to controlled productive practice, and then quite often to freer productive practice in the ABOUT YOU / ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY activities.
- When you are satisfied with their answers to the first exercise, you can ask students to go on to further exercises while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, assisting where necessary. You will find that many of the exercises, once done – e.g. sentence completion, and particularly dialogue completion – lend themselves to controlled speaking practice. Students can practise dialogues in pairs or take it in turns to read out complete sentences to each other.
- TEST YOURSELF When they have completed the written exercises, students can test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new words beneath a picture (using a piece of paper, etc.) while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises. It is also useful to demonstrate this so that students can revise vocabulary in their own time using this 'cover and check' approach.
- The headings ABOUT YOU or ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY signal personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary in a freer way, and within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these exercises, but they also make ideal pairwork activities in which learners can practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the Answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by both native speakers and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world. This may be of particular value to a self-study learner, as a way of comparing answers.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If you want your learners to use the material for self-study, you can recommend that they use the book alongside the APP, as it gives them a pronunciation model for items of vocabulary. For self-study learners in particular, it is also a good idea to start with the first module on the subject of learning. They can check their answers to exercises using the Answer key, and test themselves using the 'cover and check' procedure explained above. They can also select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their vocabulary.

1 Vocabulary learning

A Help with reading

ADVICE FOR READING

When you're reading in a **foreign** language, you should first try to understand the **basic** meaning of the text. You will meet vocabulary you don't **recognize**, but you can often **go through** the text again later to look at this. If so, try this:

- **Identify** the new words and phrases which seem to be important. Try to **guess** the meaning from the **context**, and/or use a dictionary.
- **Keep a record** of the words in a notebook, and if possible write down any special information. For example, is the word **formal** or **informal**? Is it followed by a particular preposition?
- Write a **translation** if you think it helps; sometimes it isn't necessary.

GLOSSARY	
foreign	from a country that is not your own. A person from another country is a **foreigner**.
basic	most important and necessary
recognize	know what sth is or who sb is because you have seen or heard them before
go through sth	read sth carefully from beginning to end
identify	recognize and decide what sth is
guess	give an answer to sth without being sure of the facts **have a guess** *n*
context	the words before and after a new word/phrase that help you to understand the meaning
keep a record of sth	write sth down to help you remember it
formal	We use **formal** language to appear serious or official, or in some situations where we don't know people well. OPP **informal**
translation	text that has been changed from one language into another **translate** *v*

1 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has a similar meaning.

▶ I understood the most important and necessary ideas. basic

1 We couldn't recognize and decide what language they were speaking. ....

2 I think he was using very serious and official language. ....

3 He's from another country. ....

4 You can guess the meaning from the words before and after the new word. ....

5 There was a text that I had to change from one language into another. ....

6 I replied without really knowing the answer. ....

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Is *'How do you do'* formal ? ~ Yes, we usually just say ***hello***.

1 Did you understand the exercise the first time? ~ No, but we .... it again later.

2 Did you understand everything? ~ No, but I got the .... meaning.

3 Did you .... all the students in the photo? ~ No, I didn't know one or two of them.

4 Were there many .... in the group? ~ No, the people were all from this country.

5 Is there a difference between ***hello*** and ***hi***? ~ Yeah, ***hi*** is more ....

6 Did you know the answer? ~ No, I had a ....

3 Complete the sentences. ABOUT YOU

▶ When you read a text in English, do you usually go through it a second time? ....

1 Do you often try to guess the meaning of new words from the .... ? ....

2 Do you keep a .... of new words in a notebook? ....

3 Do you write down the meaning in English, or do you write a .... ? ....

4 Do you make a note of special information? For example, a note about the pronunciation, or whether a word is formal or .... ? ....

5 Do you often .... a word without being able to remember the meaning? ....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 3, or talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Help with speaking and listening

- In a **conversation** in English, ask people to **repeat** words you don't understand, and **explain** the meaning if necessary.
- **Repetition** of new words using the APP will help you to remember them, and how to **pronounce** them.
- One **function** of the app is to help you pronounce new words, and repetition of these words will help you to remember them.
- Look for **opportunities** to practise new vocabulary. Don't be afraid to **experiment with** language, and don't worry about **making mistakes.**
- It's important to **revise** new vocabulary. If not, you may forget it quite quickly.
- Remember: there isn't just one correct **method** of learning vocabulary. Do what **works** for you.

GLOSSARY

repeat	say sth again **repetition** *n*
explain	tell sb sth in a way that makes it clear or easy to understand **explanation** *n*
pronounce	make the sound of a word or letter **pronunciation** *n*
function	the purpose or job that sth is designed to do
opportunity	a time when it is possible to do sth that you want to do SYN **chance**
experiment with sth	try sth to see what result it has
make mistakes	(NOT ~~do mistakes~~)
revise	study sth again **do revision** *n*
method	a way of doing sth
work	get or have the result you want: *I tried speaking slowly but it didn't* ***work.***

SPOTLIGHT *conversation, discussion, argument*

A **conversation** is a talk between two or more people.

A **discussion about something** is when you talk about something seriously. **discuss** *v.*

An **argument** is a discussion in which people disagree, often angrily. **argue** *v*

5 Write the noun forms, then underline the main stress on both verbs and nouns. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ discuss discussion
1 repeat ....
2 pronounce ....
3 explain ....
4 revise ....
5 argue ....

6 Circle the correct answer.

▶ An argument is a conversation in which people *agree* / [✓ *disagree*].
1 If you revise something, you *say it again / study it again.*
2 If something works, it is *successful / difficult.*
3 If you experiment with something, you *try to do something / find something.*
4 You can *do / make* a mistake.
5 We had a *conversation / discussion* about politics in class yesterday. It got quite serious.
6 A method is *an opportunity to do something / a way of doing something.*
7 If you explain something, you make it easy to *say / understand.*
8 If you make a mistake, you get something *wrong / right.*
9 One *function / method* of a dictionary is to help you with the meanings of words.

7 Complete the sentences.

▶ We had a conversation on the phone last night.
1 I never know how to .... the word *necessary.* Pronunciation is difficult.
2 My brother's got an .... to work in Paris next year. Lucky him.
3 I have to do some .... for my exam tomorrow.
4 I used a new method for cooking the rice and it really .... You must try it.
5 Do you think we'll have a .... to revise before we take the test?
6 You won't know if you can use new words until you .... with them.
7 Does .... help you to remember new words?
8 I often have .... with my parents. We disagree about most things.

TEST YOURSELF

2 Progress and aims

A Making progress

Felipe from Argentina

When I started learning English, I was very **keen** and **motivated**, but I **found it difficult to** pronounce English words, and sometimes people couldn't understand me.

After a while my pronunciation **got better,** and I was able to **express** basic ideas quite **effectively**. It was **obvious** that I was **improving,** and that was very **encouraging**.

But at intermediate level, my progress **slowed down**. There were so many new words and phrases I didn't know. I think I **was** also more **aware of** my mistakes, which was good – but also **frustrating**.

GLOSSARY	
keen	interested in sth and wanting to do it: *She's* ***keen*** *to learn.*
motivated	If you are **motivated (to do sth)**, you really want to do sth. **motivation** *n*
find it difficult to (do sth)	be difficult for sb (to do sth)
after a while	after a period of time
get better	become better SYN **improve** *v*, **improvement** *n*
express	say or show what you think or feel
effectively	in a way that gives you the result you want **effective** *adj*
obvious	easy to see and understand SYN **clear**; **obviously, clearly** *adv*
encouraging	If sth/sb is **encouraging,** they give you hope and make you want to continue. **encourage** *v*
slow down	start to go more slowly
be aware of sth	If you **are aware of sth**, you know about it.
frustrating	making you angry because you cannot be successful at sth you want to do **frustration** *n*

① **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ find / while S

1 effective / difficult ....

2 slow down / improve ....

3 encourage / frustrating ....

4 slow down / motivate ....

5 better / obvious ....

6 aware / after ....

② **Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals.**

▶ It's frustrating when you can't understand. FRUSTRATION

1 My dad was very .... ENCOURAGE

2 I think my English is .... IMPROVEMENT

3 He is .... keen to do well. OBVIOUS

4 She did the work very .... EFFECTIVE

5 He doesn't have much .... MOTIVATED

6 She is .... very intelligent. CLEAR

③ **Complete the sentences with a word or phrase from the box.**

aware	encouraging	slowing down	express	effective
keen	getting better	obviously ✓	difficult	while

ABOUT YOU

▶ Repeating words obviously helps me to remember them. ....

1 I worried about my mistakes, but after a .... I stopped. ....

2 At first I made good progress, but now I'm ....

3 I'm not .... of making mistakes when I speak, but I'm sure I make lots. ....

4 I think I can .... things better now than I could a year ago. ....

5 I listen to songs in English. I think that's an .... way to learn. ....

6 I find it very .... to concentrate when I'm learning English. ....

7 I'm very .... to read books in English; it will be good for me. ....

8 It's very .... when people tell me my English is ....

④ ABOUT YOU **Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true for you? Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Future goals

What are your learning **goals**?

Felipe Ramirez

VOCABULARY *I can understand most **native speakers** of English, but my vocabulary needs to **expand** so that I can understand a **wide range of** subjects, and express more **complex** ideas.*

SPEAKING *I'd like to be more **fluent** when I'm speaking, and be able to talk about things **in more detail**. And I need to get better at using language that is **suitable** for the situation.*

READING *I can understand general things, but to **achieve** my **aims** I need to be able to read texts that **are to do with** my work, and some of these **contain** quite difficult language.*

GLOSSARY

goal	sth you want to be able to do in the future SYN **aim**
native speaker	sb who speaks a language as their first language and has not learnt it as a foreign language. A **native** is a person who was born in a particular place: ***a native of** New York*
expand	become bigger or make sth bigger
a (wide) range (of sth)	a (large) number of different things
complex	having a lot of details that make sth difficult to understand
fluent	able to speak easily and well **fluently** *adv*
in detail	fully and including a lot of information
suitable	right for sth or sb OPP **unsuitable**
achieve	do or finish sth well after trying hard **achievement** *n*
be to do with sth/sb	be connected with sth/sb

SPOTLIGHT *contain and include*

Contain and **include** can have the same meaning.

- *The dictionary **contains/includes** lots of important information.*

Sometimes we can only use one of the verbs.

- *The box **contains** books.* (= There are books inside the box.)
- *The price of the book **includes** the app.* (= The app is one part of the price.)

5 **Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or words with a similar meaning. Be careful with tenses.**

▶ It was a success and he did well. an achievement
1 I speak Russian very well. ....
2 The text contains lots of new words. ....
3 It isn't connected to my work. ....
4 The story is difficult to understand. ....
5 He described it with lots of information. ....
6 That word isn't really right here. ....
7 My goal is to get to university. ....
8 The business got bigger. ....
9 He studies a lot of different subjects. ....

6 **Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.**

▶ Did you explain it fully? ~ Yes, I described it in detail.
1 Are you planning to study English at university? ~ Yes, that's my ....
2 It wasn't the right thing to say. ~ No, I agree, it was ....
3 Is your English teacher from Spain? ~ No, she's British. She's a .... speaker of English.
4 Was that English book useful? ~ Yes, it .... lots of new words.
5 Is her vocabulary getting bigger? ~ Yes, it's definitely ....
6 Is the English course expensive? ~ Yes, but the price .... all the books you need.
7 Can you do English at an evening college? ~ Yes, there's a wide .... of courses.
8 Has she done well? ~ Yes, she has .... everything she wanted to do.
9 Is English important for Joe? ~ Yes, it's to .... with his job. He needs to speak English.
10 Does Marta speak English well now? ~ Yes, she's a very .... speaker.

7 ABOUT YOU **Write down your learning goals, or talk to another student.**

....

TEST YOURSELF

3 Using an English dictionary

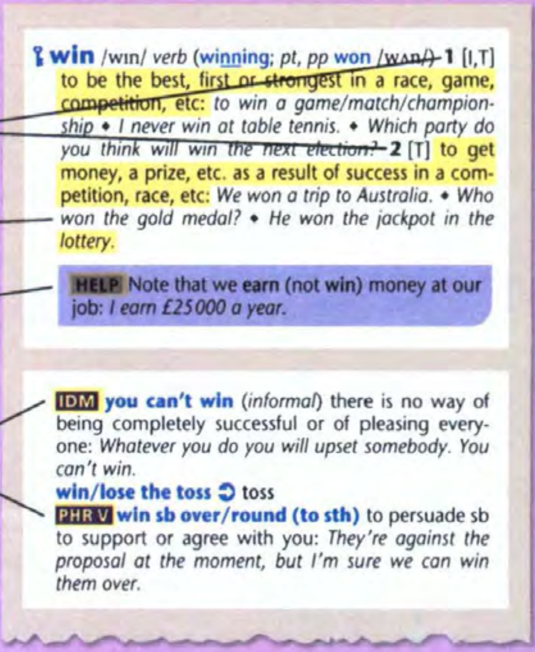
How can a learner's dictionary help you? These examples are from the *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary*.

Definitions are in simple English.
Different meanings of a word are given.

Examples are **provided** to show how the word is used.

The dictionary can help you to **avoid** making mistakes, and gives help with grammar.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are at the end of the **entry**.



win /wɪn/ *verb* (**winning**; *pt, pp* **won** /wʌn/) **1** [I,T] to be the best, first or strongest in a race, game, competition, etc: *to win a game/match/championship* ◆ *I never win at table tennis.* ◆ *Which party do you think will win the next election?* **2** [T] to get money, a prize, etc. as a result of success in a competition, race, etc: *We won a trip to Australia.* ◆ *Who won the gold medal?* ◆ *He won the jackpot in the lottery.*

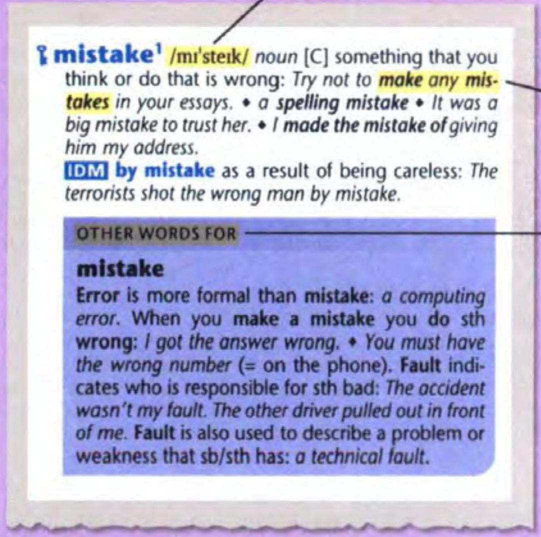
HELP Note that we **earn** (not **win**) money at our job: *I earn £25 000 a year.*

IDM **you can't win** (*informal*) there is no way of being completely successful or of pleasing everyone: *Whatever you do you will upset somebody. You can't win.*

win/lose the toss ➲ toss

PHR V **win sb over/round (to sth)** to persuade sb to support or agree with you: *They're against the proposal at the moment, but I'm sure we can win them over.*

Phonetic **symbols** help with pronunciation.
You can find out which **syllable** is **stressed.**



mistake[1] /mɪ'steɪk/ *noun* [C] something that you think or do that is wrong: *Try not to* ***make*** *any* ***mistakes*** *in your essays.* ◆ *a* ***spelling mistake*** ◆ *It was a big mistake to trust her.* ◆ *I* ***made the mistake of*** *giving him my address.*

IDM **by mistake** as a result of being careless: *The terrorists shot the wrong man by mistake.*

OTHER WORDS FOR

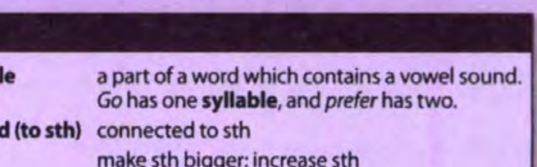
mistake

Error is more formal than **mistake**: *a computing error.* When you **make a mistake** you **do** sth **wrong**: *I got the answer wrong.* ◆ *You must have the wrong number* (= on the phone). **Fault** indicates who is responsible for sth bad: *The accident wasn't my fault. The other driver pulled out in front of me.* **Fault** is also used to describe a problem or weakness that sb/sth has: *a technical fault.*

Words that are often used together are given in bold.

It can teach you **related** words: this helps you **build** your vocabulary and choose the correct word for your needs.

It helps you with **style**: **for instance**, formal, informal, **slang**, etc.



guy /gaɪ/ *noun* **1** [C] (*informal*) a man or a boy: *He's a nice guy.* **2** **guys** [pl] (*informal*) used when speaking to a group of people of either sex: *What do you guys want to eat tonight?*

SPOTLIGHT *stress* and *emphasize*

Both verbs mean to say a syllable, word or phrase with extra loudness. The related nouns are **stress (on sth)** and **emphasis (on sth)**.

- *Don't* ***emphasize*** *every word. The* ***stress*** *is* ***on*** *the first syllable.*

GLOSSARY

definition	an exact statement of what a word or phrase means **define** *v*	**syllable**	a part of a word which contains a vowel sound. *Go* has one **syllable**, and *prefer* has two.
provide	give sth to sb or make sth available for sb	**related (to sth)**	connected to sth
avoid doing sth	If you **avoid** doing sth, you try not to do it.	**build**	make sth bigger; increase sth
idiom	a group of words with a special meaning	**style**	the way sth is written or spoken, e.g. *informal, formal*
entry	one item that is written in a dictionary, list, etc. There are three dictionary **entries** on this page.	**for instance**	SYN **for example**
symbol	a letter, number or sign that has a particular meaning, e.g. /ʃ/ is pronounced 'sh'.	**slang**	very informal words or phrases used in spoken language

① Complete the words.

▶ d e f i n e
1 s ___ mb ___ l
2 st ___ l ___
3 sl ___ ___ ___
4 em ___ ___ asize
5 id ___ ___ ___
6 s ___ ll ___ bl ___
7 em ___ ___ asi ___
8 f ___ r ___ ___ st ___ ___ ce
9 d ___ f ___ n ___ t ___ ___ n

② Is the meaning the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ Does he use a lot of slang? / Does he use a lot of idioms? D
1 It's possible to increase your vocabulary. / It's possible to build your vocabulary. ....
2 Is that symbol correct? / Is that definition correct? ....
3 It gives words that are connected. / It gives words that are related. ....
4 The city is fantastic: for example, the buildings, the parks, the people, etc. / The city is fantastic: for instance, the buildings, the parks, the people, etc. ....
5 Can you avoid mistakes? / Can you define mistakes? ....
6 Is that formal? / Is that slang? ....
7 They always stress that syllable. / They always emphasize that syllable. ....
8 It doesn't give all the answers. / It doesn't provide all the answers. ....

③ Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

symbols avoid related entry ✓ definitions syllable define
instance stress idiom provide build entry

▶ In a dictionary, ***foreigner*** comes after the entry for ***foreign***.
1 Dictionaries have many uses: for ...., to find out the meaning, check pronunciation, etc.
2 This dictionary has clear .... which are easy to understand.
3 Some dictionaries can help you .... your vocabulary if they .... synonyms and opposites, or other .... words.
4 A dictionary gives you grammar information so that you can .... making mistakes.
5 You can check the pronunciation of any word in the dictionary by looking at the phonetic .... and noticing which .... is stressed.
6 ***Good luck!*** is given as an .... in the dictionary, at the end of the .... for ***luck***.
7 Dictionaries for foreign learners .... words in simple English.
8 In the word ***emphasize***, the .... is on the first syllable.

④ Look at the dictionary entries on page 16. Answer the questions.

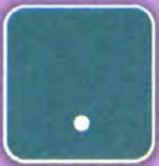
▶ Which syllable is stressed in ***mistake***? The second syllable
1 Which related words are given for ***mistake***? ....
2 How many definitions are there in the entry for ***win***? ....
3 What style is the idiom ***You can't win***? ....
4 Is ***guy*** a slang word? ....
5 Which phonetic symbols are given for ***guy***? ....
6 What's the second definition of ***guy***? ....

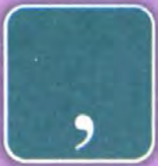
⑤ Are these sentences correct? Write *Yes* or *No*. Use the dictionary entries to correct any wrong answers.

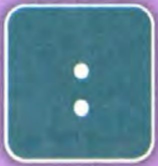
1 a She turned left by a mistake. ....
  b I haven't got the keys, but it's not my fault; Jo lost them. ....
2 a We're hoping to win a medal for skiing in the Olympics. ....
  b My dad wins a lot of money in his job. ....
3 a There are a couple of guys at the door. Who are they? ....
  b I like Amelie: she's a funny guy. ....

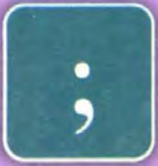
TEST YOURSELF

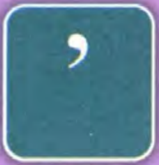
4 English punctuation

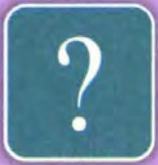

1 **full stop**

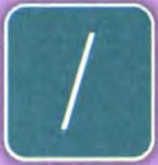

2 **comma**

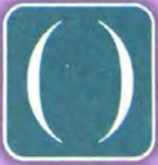

3 **colon**

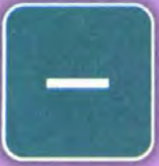

4 **semicolon**

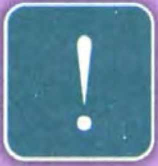

5 **apostrophe**

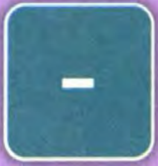

6 **question mark**

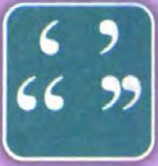

7 **slash**


8 **brackets**


9 **dash**


10 **exclamation mark**


11 **hyphen**


12 **quotation marks**

Some important punctuation rules

A full stop is used at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation, and is sometimes used in **abbreviations.** Each new sentence must begin with a **capital letter.**

A comma in writing is like a **pause** in speech. It is used:

- to **separate** parts of a sentence, e.g. *After we left, someone tried to phone us.*
- often between adjectives, e.g. *He bought a powerful, expensive car.*
- to separate words in a **list**, though it is usually **omitted** before *and*, e.g. *I went to France, Germany, Italy and Spain.*
- when words or phrases **interrupt** the normal order of a sentence, e.g. *I decided, however, that I needed something to eat first.*

A colon is often used to introduce **further details** such as an explanation or a list, e.g. *The shop is full of antiques: tables, chairs, wardrobes, mirrors and so on.*

A semicolon is sometimes used in formal writing **instead of** a full stop when two sentences are very closely **connected.** It is also used to separate two main clauses, e.g. *I went round this morning; nobody was there.* These are often clauses not **joined** by a link word **such as** *and* or *but.*

Apostrophes show where we have **left** letters **out** of a word, e.g. *I'm* = I am; *don't* = do not; *I'd* = I would OR I had. They are also used to show that something belongs to somebody or something, e.g. *Mark's car* = the car belonging to Mark; *the children's room.*

GLOSSARY

abbreviation	a short form of a word: *TV is an **abbreviation** for television.*
capital letter	A B C are **capital letters**; a b c are small letters.
pause	a short period of time when sb stops talking
separate	keep people or things away from each other
list	a series of names, items, or numbers: *a **shopping list**, a **list of** countries*
omit *formal*	If you **omit** sth, you don't include it. SYN **leave sth out**
interrupt	stop sth or sb so that it or they cannot continue
further	more, extra: *Do you have any **further** questions?*
details	small pieces of information about sth
instead of sb/sth	in the place of sb/sth
connect	put two or more things together SYN **join**
such as	You use **such as** to introduce an example. SYN **like**

❶ Complete the words.

▶ com m a
1 full s ___ ___ ___
2 col ___ ___
3 hyp ___ ___ ___
4 bra ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
5 semi- ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
6 excla ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ m ___ ___ ___
7 apo ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

❷ What punctuation is used in 1–8 below? You don't need to repeat *full stop* each time.

▶ We went home early. full stop
1 She had beautiful, long hair. ....
2 What are you doing? ....
3 Congratulations! ....
4 It's too late. ....
5 Breakfast was incredible: fruit, eggs, toast and cheese! ....
6 Someone (not me) left the door open. ....
7 It was only a five-minute walk – he still took a taxi. ....
8 'It's only me,' he said. ....

❸ Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ connect
1 details
2 instead
3 apostrophe
4 omit
5 interrupt
6 separate
7 connect
8 shopping list
9 question mark
10 abbreviation
11 exclamation

❹ Complete the sentences.

▶ An **abbreviation** is a short form of a word.
1 A **pause** is a short period of time when somebody stops ....
2 If you give **details** of something, you give more ....
3 **Omit** and **leave out** have a similar meaning, but **omit** is more ....
4 **Like** and **such as** can both be used to introduce an ....
5 If you **interrupt** a conversation, you .... it.
6 If you **connect** something, you put two or more things ....

❺ Complete the sentences.

▶ Sentences have to begin with a capital letter.
1 I wrote a .... of irregular verbs in my notebook.
2 I would use this dictionary .... of the other one; it's much better.
3 We often use *and* or *but* to .... two parts of a sentence.
4 In this application form, you have to give .... of your work experience.
5 *Prep.* is an .... for *preposition*.
6 You need to use more adjectives .... as *beautiful* and *attractive*.
7 The teacher said we can .... out Exercise 5 and go on to Exercise 6.
8 You can use brackets to .... information from the rest of the sentence.
9 The director had to .... the lesson to tell us to leave the building quickly.
10 I always write a .... list when I buy food.

❻ What punctuation is missing, and where?

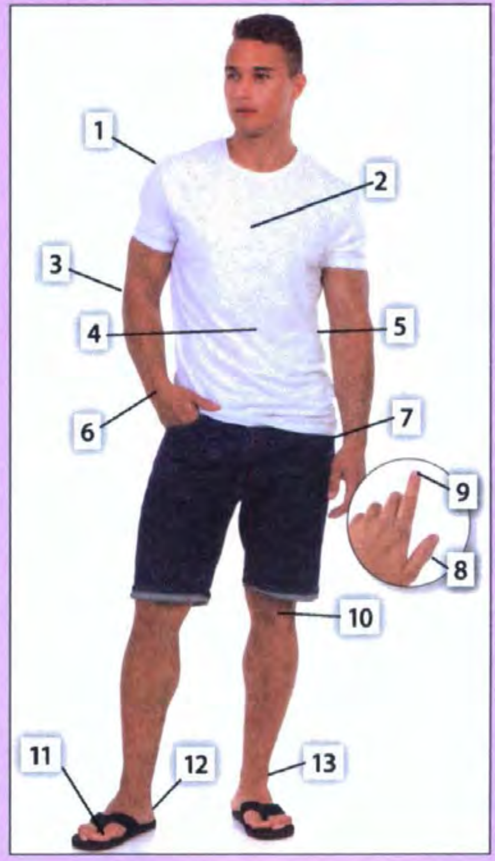
▶ We live there A full stop is missing at the end of the sentence.
1 she works in Bristol. ....
2 He's a tall thin boy. ....
3 The book is *in on* the table. Which is correct? ....
4 We have two choices stay here and wait, or go and look for them. ....
5 This is my boyfriends watch. ....
6 After that fortunately we had no more problems. ....

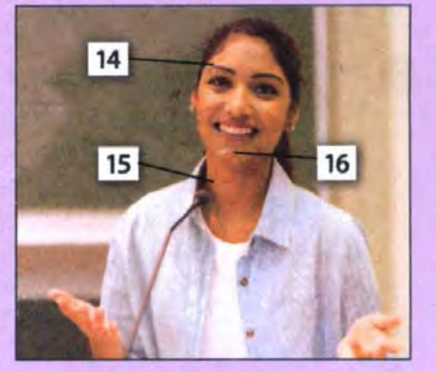
TEST YOURSELF

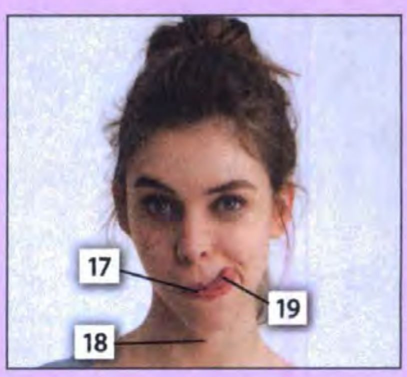
5 The body

A Parts of the body

1 **shoulder**
2 **chest**
3 **elbow**
4 **stomach**
5 **waist**
6 **wrist**
7 **hip**
8 **thumb**
9 **fingernail**
10 **knee**
11 **toe**
12 **heel**
13 **ankle**
14 **eyebrow**
15 **neck**
16 **chin**
17 **lip**
18 **throat (inside)**
19 **tongue**







① Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ waist / nail S
1 elbow / eyebrow ....
2 elbow / toe ....
3 shoulder / throat ....
4 stomach / chest ....
5 thumb / tongue ....
6 waist / wrist ....
7 stomach / thumb ....

② Complete the words.

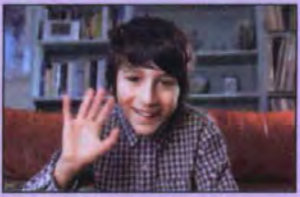
▶ thr o a t
1 kn ___ ___
2 l ___ p ___
3 t ___ ___ g ___ ___
4 h ___ ___ s
5 f ___ ___ g ___ ___ n ___ ___ l
6 ey ___ ___ ___ ___ w
7 sh ___ ___ ___ d ___ ___

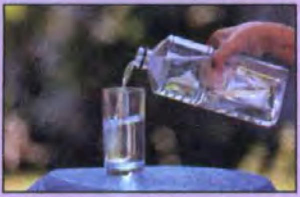
③ What's the answer?

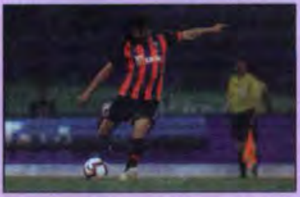
▶ Your mouth has two of these. lips
1 You have one of these at the end of each finger. ....
2 You have five of these at the end of each foot. ....
3 You have four fingers, plus one of these on each hand. ....
4 You often wear a watch on this. ....
5 You can see this if you open your mouth. ....
6 It connects your head to your body. ....
7 It connects your leg to your foot. ....
8 It's at the back of your foot. ....
9 It's where men can grow a beard. ....
10 You can rest your arms on a table on these. ....
11 Food goes down through here when you eat. ....
12 And then food goes into here. ....

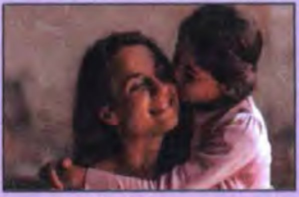
TEST YOURSELF

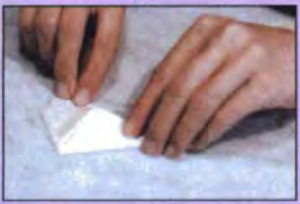
B Using the body

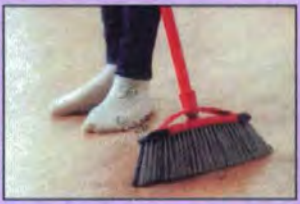

wave

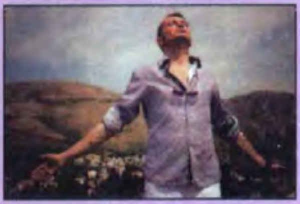

pour

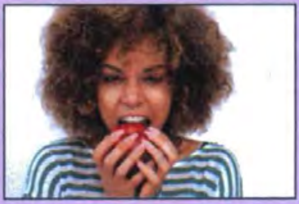

kick

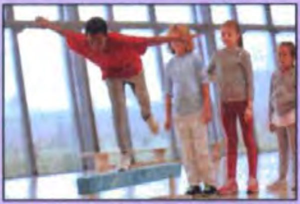

kiss

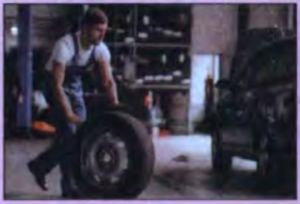

fold

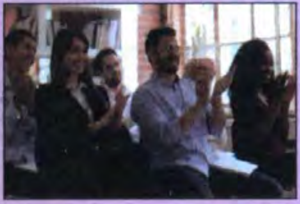

sweep *pt/pp* **swept**

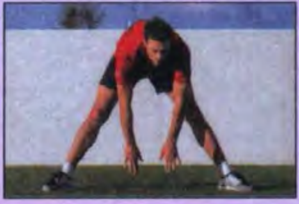

breathe


bite *pt* **bit** *pp* **bitten**


balance


roll


clap


bend *pt/pp* **bent**

4 Do you do these things with your mouth or your hands?

▶ breathe mouth

1 roll ....

2 kiss ....

3 fold ....

4 wave ....

5 pour ....

6 bite ....

7 sweep ....

8 clap ....

5 Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶ roll e

1 bend ......

2 wave ......

3 kiss ......

4 bite ......

5 fold ......

6 clap ......

a to a friend

b into an apple

c your hands together

d clothes

e a ball ✓

f your boyfriend/girlfriend

g your knee

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ I waved to them from the balcony, but they didn't see me.

1 You have to .... the piece of paper, then put it in the envelope.

2 She .... boiling water into the coffee pot.

3 After my accident, I couldn't .... my arm for three weeks.

4 When I brush my teeth, I try to .... on one leg at the same time – it's not easy.

5 The suitcase had wheels, so luckily I was able to .... it through the airport.

6 The talk was so good that at the end everyone stood up and ....

7 My yoga teacher told us to .... very slowly and deeply to help us relax.

8 I .... the floor every day.

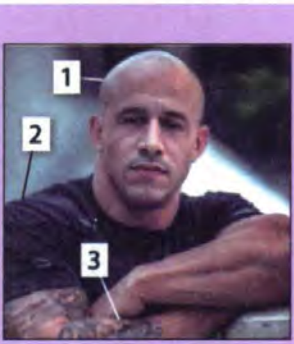
9 The dog .... me when I tried to take its food away. It was very painful.

10 The passenger in the seat behind me kept .... my seat. I had to ask him to stop.

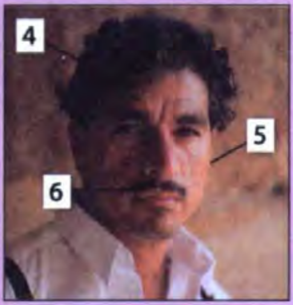
TEST YOURSELF

6 Appearance

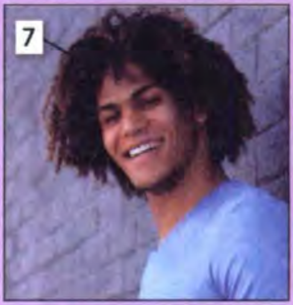
A Male appearance



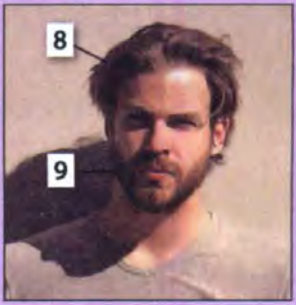
1 He's **bald**[1], with **broad shoulders**[2] and **tattoos**[3]. His general **appearance** is quite **ugly.**



2 Jed's got **wavy**[4] hair, **dark skin**[5] and a **moustache**[6].



3 Sam's got **curly**[7] hair, is **in good shape**, and always has a great **tan** in summer.



4 Brad's got **fair hair**[8] and a **beard**[9] with moustache. He's **medium build.**

SPOTLIGHT *ugly*

Ugly is the opposite of **beautiful**, but it's not polite to say somebody is **ugly.** It is better to say **unattractive** or **not very attractive**.

GLOSSARY

male	Men and boys are **male**. Women and girls are **female.** (A person's *gender/sex* can be **male** or **female.**) We also use **male** and **female** to talk about animals.
broad	large from side to side: ***broad shoulders*** (NOT ~~*wide shoulders*~~)
appearance	the way that sb or sth looks or seems **appear** *v*
dark skin	OPP **pale/fair skin**
in good/ bad shape	in good/bad physical condition
(sun)tan	When you have a **(sun)tan**, your skin is brown from the sun.
medium build	not big or small, not fat or thin ALSO **of medium build**

1 Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

- ▶ wavy hair / curly hair D
- **1** a moustache / a beard ....
- **2** in good shape / in good condition ....
- **3** bald / no hair ....
- **4** fat / medium build ....
- **5** narrow shoulders / broad shoulders ....
- **6** dark hair / fair hair ....
- **7** a tan / a suntan ....
- **8** pale skin / fair skin ....
- **9** ugly / unattractive ....
- **10** male / female ....

2 Complete the words in these questions.

- ▶ Who has got dark .... skin ....?
- **1** Who has got f........ h........?
- **2** Has anyone got a tat........?
- **3** Who has got a b........ or m........?
- **4** Who is in good s........?
- **5** Who has got b........ shoulders?
- **6** Are any men b........ or nearly b........?
- **7** Who is medium b........?

3 Complete the questions.

- ▶ Is that elephant male or female........?
- **1** Is your hair straight, wavy or ....?
- **2** Have you got dark skin or .... skin?
- **3** Have you got broad ....?
- **4** Do you think you're in good ....?
- **5** Do you normally have a good .... in the summer?
- **6** Are you generally happy with your ....?

4 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2 about family or friends, and to Exercise 3 about yourself, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Female appearance

1 This is my mother at 27 when she **was pregnant**; in fact, she was **expecting** me. She's **medium height**, and she had long wavy hair **at the time**, and lovely **smooth** skin.

2 Here's mum now. Her appearance hasn't changed that much. She still has a good **figure,** though she has more of a **roundish** face, and a different **hairstyle**: shorter, straighter and very **neat**. She wears **contact lenses** now, and you certainly can't **tell** that she's nearly 60.

GLOSSARY

be pregnant	If a woman **is pregnant,** she has a baby growing in her body. SYN **be expecting (a baby)**
medium height	not tall or short ALSO **of medium height**
at the time	then; at a time in the past
smooth	with a completely flat surface OPP **rough**
figure	the shape of the body, especially that of a woman
hairstyle	the way your hair is cut and arranged
neat	tidy and carefully arranged
contact lenses	small round pieces of plastic you wear in your eyes to help you see better
tell	know or guess

SPOTLIGHT the suffix *-ish*

The suffix *-ish* is used informally with some adjectives meaning 'quite'.

- *a* ***roundish*** *face* = a face which is quite round ALSO **tallish, youngish,** etc.

⑤ **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ Medium height is not tall or short. T
1 Contact lenses are the same as glasses. ....
2 Skin can be rough or smooth. ....
3 A tallish person is very tall. ....
4 A pregnant woman has just had a baby. ....
5 Neat and tidy are similar in meaning. ....
6 If you have a good figure, your face is attractive. ....
7 If you're pregnant, it means you're expecting a baby. ....
8 Hairstyle is the same as hairdresser. ....

⑥ **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Does she wear contact lenses ?
1 My younger sister is medium .... , and her hair is short and very ....
2 She's still very slim, so you can't .... she's .... a baby in July.
3 I wouldn't say my aunt is very tall, but she's .... – more than medium height.
4 My baby's skin is so .... , but my hands are really ....
5 My best friend eats a huge amount, but she still has a great .... – it's so annoying!
6 You can .... she's been on holiday – she's got a lovely suntan.
7 My sister is always changing her .... : one week it's straight, the next week it's wavy.
8 We moved to this house in 2020: I was eight months .... at the .... , so it was quite difficult for me.

⑦ ABOUT YOUR FAMILY **Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.**

▶ Who is always very neat and tidy? My wife.
1 When was the last time somebody was pregnant? ....
2 Who is of medium height? ....
3 Who often changes their hairstyle? ....
4 Who is shortish? ....
5 Who has got a roundish face? ....
6 Who wears contact lenses? ....

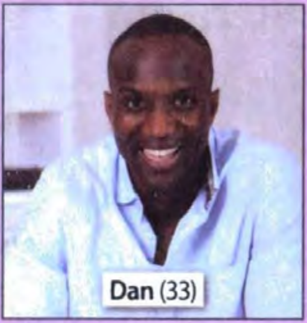
TEST YOURSELF

7 Character

HOW I SEE MYSELF

HOW OTHERS SEE ME

My **character**? I'm **ambitious** and **outgoing**, and I think I'm **generous**.



Dan (33)

Some people really like me, and like the fact I'm so **confident.** Others say I'm not very **patient**.

I see myself as **practical, organized** and very **hard-working.**

Gina (45)

Other people probably think I'm very **sensible**, quite **shy** and maybe a bit **dull**.

I'm always **cheerful**, I'm **easy-going**, and I've got lots of **energy**.

Kaz (18)

My parents don't think I'm very **responsible**. My friends just think I'm **crazy**.

GLOSSARY

see sb as sth	imagine or think of sb in a particular way
character	the qualities that make sb different from other people SYN **personality**
ambitious	An **ambitious** person wants to be successful, to have power, etc. **ambition** *n*
outgoing	friendly and interested in other people and new experiences
generous	always ready to give people things or to spend money OPP **mean**
confident	feeling sure about your own ability OPP **insecure**
patient	able to stay calm and wait for sth/sb OPP **impatient; patience** *n*
practical	making sensible decisions and good at dealing with problems OPP **impractical**
organized	good at planning and arranging things OPP **disorganized**
hard-working	able to work with effort and for a long time OPP **lazy**
sensible	able to think carefully about sth and do the right thing OPP **stupid**
shy	not able to talk easily to people you do not know
dull	not interesting or exciting; a bit boring
cheerful	feeling happy
easy-going	relaxed and not worried by what others do
energy	the ability to be very active without getting tired **energetic** *adj*
responsible	able to act sensibly and intelligently OPP **irresponsible**

SPOTLIGHT *crazy, mad, stupid*

Crazy *inf* and **mad** *inf* mean 'not sensible or practical; a bit stupid'.

Both words can describe a person or an action or idea, but the meaning is not always negative. They can describe someone who is a bit out of control but just wants to enjoy life. **Stupid** is always negative.

① Positive or negative, or possibly both? Write *P*, *N* or *B*.

- ▶ She's very cheerful. P
- **1** He's very organized. ....
- **2** They're a bit dull. ....
- **3** He is very easy-going. ....
- **4** She's extremely practical. ....
- ▶ He's very ambitious. B
- **5** He can be quite mean. ....
- **6** He's very confident. ....
- **7** My brother is mad, but I love him. ....
- **8** Karen is so patient. ....

② Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ cheerful
- **1** energetic
- **2** responsible
- **3** generous
- **4** easy-going
- **5** confident
- **6** disorganized
- **7** personality

③ Match 1–8 with a–i.

- ▶ feeling sure about your own ability c
- **1** boring ....
- **2** relaxed and not worried by others ....
- **3** friendly and interested in others ....
- **4** good at planning and arranging ....
- **5** able to stay calm and wait for things ....
- **6** feeling happy ....
- **7** not interested in giving money or helping people ....
- **8** active without getting tired ....

- **a** organized
- **b** cheerful
- **c** confident ✓
- **d** patient
- **e** energetic
- **f** dull
- **g** outgoing
- **h** easy-going
- **i** mean

④ Complete the table.

ADJECTIVE	OPPOSITE	ADJECTIVE	OPPOSITE
▶ patient	impatient	confident	....
responsible	....	sensible	....
lazy	....	organized	....
generous	....	practical	....

⑤ Complete the words in each sentence.

- ▶ Marcel never does any work – he's so lazy........ .
- **1** My brother's a bit irresponsible and does some c........ things, but he's fun.
- **2** Keiko's a good person to share a flat with: she's very e........-g........ .
- **3** Zoltan is a great person to work with: he's very p........ and o........ .
- **4** Marco is very g........ : he's always the first person to buy you a drink.
- **5** Since Katy went to university and got a boyfriend, she's become more c........ .
- **6** My brother's lazy, but my sisters have always been very h........-w........ .
- **7** I don't think young Aaron is r........ enough to drive a car.
- **8** Andrea has so much e........ – she's always doing something.
- **9** My sister is the s........ member of the family – thinks carefully and never does anything s........ .
- **10** My cousin Sylvia has an interesting c........ . Sometimes she is quite s........ and insecure, but at other times you realize she is very a........ and wants to do well and be successful.

⑥ ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- **1** Are you ambitious? If so, in what way? ....
- **2** Would you say you're hard-working or a bit lazy? ....
- **3** Are you outgoing or quite shy? ....
- **4** When are you impatient? ....
- **5** Are you very organized? If so, in what way? ....
- **6** Are you usually cheerful? Why/why not? ....
- **7** How do you see yourself? Write three adjectives. ....
- **8** Which two qualities are the most important for you: ambition, patience, energy or generosity? ....

TEST YOURSELF

8 Feelings and emotions

A Feelings

Word	Example	Meaning
anxious	*He was **anxious** before he went into hospital.*	worried and afraid
calm	*My boss keeps **calm** in any situation.*	quiet and not excited or afraid
delighted	*My parents were **delighted** when I told them I was getting married.*	very pleased or happy
disappointed	*Jess was very **disappointed** when she failed the exam.*	sad because what you wanted did not happen
embarrassed	*I sometimes feel a bit **embarrassed** when I make stupid mistakes in English.*	shy, worried or uncomfortable about what other people think of you
frightened	*I was **frightened** when the plane took off.*	SYNS **afraid, scared**
furious	*Dad was **furious** when I lost his key.*	very angry
miserable	*You look **miserable.** What's wrong?*	unhappy and depressed SYN **fed up** *inf*
pleased	*I was **pleased** everyone enjoyed the party.*	happy about a particular situation SYN **glad**
relaxed	*I usually feel **relaxed** after a holiday.*	calm and not worried
upset	*Sarah was **upset** because no one spoke to her on the first day of the course.*	sad and angry because of sth that has happened

SPOTLIGHT *alone, on your own, lonely*

If you are **alone** or **on your own**, you are not with other people. If you are **lonely**, you are unhappy because you are not with other people.

- *Why are you sitting here **on your own**? Where are the others?*
- *Sarah was upset because nobody spoke to her. She felt very **lonely**.*

1 Positive or negative feelings? Write *P* or *N*.

▶ frightened N
1 anxious ....
2 furious ....
3 relaxed ....
4 embarrassed ....
5 lonely ....
6 delighted ....
7 calm ....
8 disappointed ....
9 upset ....
10 pleased ....
11 miserable ....

2 Write synonyms for these words and phrases.

▶ quiet and not excited calm
1 worried ....
2 fed up ....
3 scared ....
4 on your own ....
5 on your own and unhappy ....
6 calm and not worried ....
7 very angry ....

3 ABOUT YOU How would you feel in these situations? Write your answers using words from the table, or ask another student.

▶ Someone hits your car because they were driving badly. I'd be furious .
1 You've just passed an important exam. I'd be .... about it.
2 Your boyfriend/girlfriend is away and hasn't phoned or texted you. I'd be ....
3 Your lovely old dog has just died. I'd be ....
4 A man walks up to you in the street and puts a knife in front of your face. I'd be ....
5 You're on holiday, but you can't go out because you've got a bad cold. I'd be ....
6 It's Friday evening and you have a free weekend ahead of you. I'd be ....
7 You thought it would rain, but it was sunny for your lunch in the garden. I'd be ....
8 You are going somewhere by plane and you don't like flying. I'd be ....
9 You didn't get a job you wanted. I'd be ....

TEST YOURSELF

B How emotional are you?

YOU AND YOUR **EMOTIONS**

		Are you like this?
a)	I'm an **emotional** person and I like to **show my feelings.**	*Yes/No*
b)	I don't often **get stressed.**	*Yes/No*
c)	I feel **guilty** if I **upset** people.	*Yes/No*
d)	I think I get **jealous** quite easily.	*Yes/No*
e)	I get **annoyed** when people **get things wrong.**	*Yes/No*
f)	I get **nervous** before big **occasions.**	*Yes/No*
g)	My **mood** doesn't change much.	*Yes/No*

GLOSSARY

emotional	having strong feelings, and often showing them **emotion** *n*
show your feelings	express what you feel openly OPP **hide your feelings**
stressed	feeling worried because of problems in your life
guilty	If you feel **guilty**, you feel bad and sorry that you have done sth that you know is wrong.
upset	make sb unhappy or angry **upset** *adj*
jealous	**1** angry or sad because you are afraid of losing sb's love **2** angry or sad because you want what another person has
annoyed	a little angry
get sth wrong	make a mistake
nervous	worried or afraid, often in a particular event or situation
occasion	a special event, ceremony, etc, e.g. a race, a wedding
mood	the way you feel at a particular time: ***be in a good/bad mood***

SPOTLIGHT *get*

In the structure **get** + adjective, **get** means 'become'.

- *I **get** annoyed/stressed/jealous, etc.*
- *I **get** angry/upset when people don't listen to me.*

4 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ If you're ***in a bad mood***, you're not happy. T
1 If you ***hide your feelings***, people can see you're very emotional. ....
2 If you do something wrong to somebody else, you may feel ***guilty*** about it. ....
3 If you're in a good mood, you're ***annoyed.*** ....
4 If you're ***nervous,*** you're feeling a bit worried or afraid. ....
5 If you're ***jealous*** of another person, it's because you like them. ....
6 If you're very ***emotional,*** you might shout or cry. ....
7 If you're ***stressed***, you feel excited about something. ....
8 A big ***occasion*** is when something important happens. ....

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct word.**

▶ I get a bit nervous if I have to speak in front of a lot of people.
1 I feel very .... if I eat a whole bar of chocolate at once.
2 I'm feeling .... at the moment because I have a lot of exams.
3 I sometimes .... my parents when I don't tell them what I'm doing or I don't spend time with them. They can get quite .... with me.
4 The day you get married is a very big .... in your life.
5 I'm often in a bad .... if I haven't slept very well the night before.
6 I don't show my .... in front of my parents.
7 I get a bit .... if my friends have a lot more money than me.
8 I get very .... when I have to say goodbye to friends who I won't see for a long time.

6 ABOUT YOU **Complete the right-hand column in the questionnaire above, or ask another student. Then look at Exercise 5 again. Are the sentences true for you? Do you agree with them?**

TEST YOURSELF

9 Personal qualities

A Positive

My cousin Zara is **incredibly talented**: she's a gymnastics **champion**, and is **currently** the best runner in the country in her age group.

I think my brother Luke is so **brave**. He lost a leg in a motorbike accident five years ago, but now runs marathons to **raise money** for **charity**. I'm very **proud of** him.

My gran has many great **qualities**: she's one of the **kindest**, **gentlest**, and most **loving** people I've ever met. She never has a bad word to say about anyone and is always there to help you if you need it.

GLOSSARY	
incredibly	extremely
talented	having a natural ability to do sth well **talent** *n*
champion	the person who is the best at a sport or game
currently	now; at the moment **current** *adj*
brave	ready to do dangerous or difficult things without fear
raise money	get money from other people for a special purpose
charity	an organization that collects money to help people who need it
proud (of sb)	pleased about sth you or others have done
quality	a thing that is part of sb's character, especially sth good
kind	friendly and good to other people OPP **unkind**
gentle	quiet and kind
loving	feeling or showing love and care

1 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

▶ Gentle people are quiet and kind.

1 You raise money for other people because they .... it.

2 A .... father is kind and caring.

3 You feel proud if you've done something ....

4 If you are a champion, you are the ....

5 Brave people are prepared to do .... things.

6 Charities usually collect .... to help other people.

7 If something is currently true, it's true at the ....

8 A talent is a natural ....

9 If something is incredibly easy, it is .... easy.

10 If you're unkind, you aren't .... to people.

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶	Amelia is wonderful with her children.	~ Yes, she's a very loving mother.
1	Does she have a natural ability?	~ Yes, she's very ....
2	Is Carlos good at tennis?	~ Yes, he's the national .... for 16-year-olds.
3	Does Shelter collect money for homeless people?	~ Yes, it's a national ....
4	Has your father helped you?	~ Yes, he's been .... helpful.
5	Your sister has been very kind.	~ Yes, it's one of her best ....
6	Does the charity need more money?	~ Yes, they need to .... another £50,000.
7	Are there many students in the school?	~ Yes, there are .... about 400, and more each year.
8	Tom seems to have no fear at all.	~ No, he's very ....
9	It's amazing what Zoe has achieved already.	~ I know, we're all very .... of her.

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

▶ Do you have a natural talent for something? If so, what is it? I think I have a talent for writing.

1 Have you ever been a champion at anything? ....

2 Have you ever raised money for anything? If so, what? ....

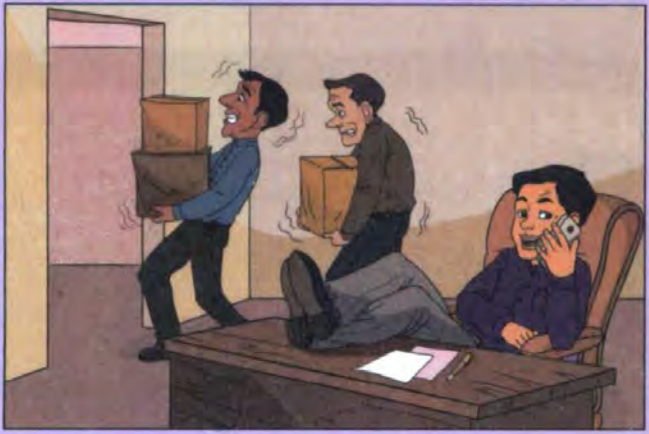
3 Think of something you are proud of. ....

4 Would you describe yourself as gentle? ....

5 What's one of your best qualities? ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Negative



When anyone asks my colleague Otto for help, he always **pretends** to be busy and **makes up** an **excuse** for not having enough time. It's very **annoying** because it's part of his job to help us.

My boss can be very **difficult** as well. She has very **high standards,** which is good, but sometimes she **expects** too much of other people, and she can be a bit **cruel.**

My brother can be quite **unpleasant**. He doesn't **mean to** be, but he just sounds rather angry a lot of the time. People think he's a bit **odd.**

GLOSSARY	
pretend	try to make sb believe sth that is not true
make sth up	tell sb sth that is not true SYN **invent**
excuse	a reason you give to explain why you have done sth wrong, or not done sth you should have done
annoying	making you a little angry
difficult	A person who is **difficult** is not easy to please, or will not do what you want.
high standards	wanting people to reach a high level of quality and ability
cruel	very unkind **cruelty** *n*
unpleasant	unfriendly and not nice OPP **pleasant**
mean (to do sth)	intend (to do sth)
odd	strange or unusual

SPOTLIGHT *expect*

In the text above, **expect** means 'demand that somebody does something because it is their job or responsibility'.

- *She **expects** a lot of people who work for her.*

It can also mean 'think that something will happen or that somebody will come'.

- ***I expect** my mother will be here soon.*

4 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ annoying
1 pretend
2 excuse
3 difficult
4 standard
5 expect
6 cruel
7 pleasant
8 unpleasant

5 *Yes or No?*

▶ He's a difficult person. Do you think he'll do what you want? No
1 He pretended to be asleep. Was he? ....
2 He made it up. Was it true? ....
3 He meant to do it. Did he intend to do it? ....
4 He was pleasant. Was he nice? ....
5 He was annoying. Were you angry? ....
6 He's cruel. Is he kind? ....
7 You expect something to happen. Do you think it will? ....
8 He just made up an excuse. Was he telling the truth? ....
9 He has high standards. Is he easy to please? ....
10 She's odd. Is she normal? ....

6 Complete the texts.

▶ The animals are locked up 24 hours a day. I think that's very cruel.
1 Petra is late for class most days, but always has a different .... I think she's got a few problems at the moment. She .... to be OK, but in actual fact, she isn't.
2 When students are late for class they are sometimes honest, but often they .... an excuse about the buses not being on time, or that the traffic was terrible.
3 I can't keep the flat as clean and tidy as my flatmate, but that's because she has very high .... , and I don't. She puts my things away where I can't find them, which can be .... , and I sometimes get a bit angry with her. She doesn't .... to be unkind or anything. She's just incredibly tidy.
4 My little sister has lots of problems and .... a lot of help from me. But when I can't solve her problems, she can be quite .... to me. She's a .... person.

TEST YOURSELF

10 Friendship

A What's a friend?

WHAT'S IMPORTANT IN **friendship**?

Do you need to:

- **get on well**?
- **trust** each other?
- **have things in common**?
- always **keep in touch**?
- have a similar **sense of humour**?
- have similar **attitudes**?
- have the same **likes** and **dislikes**?
- know you can **rely on** them in a difficult situation?
- know they will **support** you?
- know they will **tell** you **the truth** and be **honest** with you?

GLOSSARY	
friendship	the relationship between people who are friends: ***make friends (with sb)*** = become friends (with sb)
get on (well/badly with sb)	have a good/bad relationship with sb
trust	believe sb is good and won't do anything to hurt you
have sth in common	have some similar interests
keep/be in touch (with sb)	meet, write, phone or text sb regularly
sense of humour	the ability to laugh and find sth funny
attitude	the way you think or feel about sth
dislike	a thing that you do not like OPP **like: *likes and dislikes***
rely on sb	feel sure that sb will do what they say they will do **reliable** *adj*
support	give sb help when they need it
tell the truth	say what is true OPP **tell lies**
honest	A person who is **honest** tells the truth and does not steal or cheat.

① Find six more phrases in the box.

tell ✓	keep	get on	tell	have something	in touch	make
lies ✓	sense	the truth	in common	with someone	friends	of humour

▶ tell lies ....

....

② Complete the sentences.

▶ Both brothers have a great sense of humour .

1 You can depend on my brother to help if you need it. He's very ....

2 I really .... Marcel – that's why I feel I can tell him anything.

3 It's a difficult time for Olivia, but I'm sure her friends will .... her.

4 When Ed is at work, he works. At the weekend, he doesn't think about work at all. I think that's the right .... to work, don't you?

5 I used to .... very well with my cousin, but recently we've argued a lot.

6 Sasha and I don't really have anything in .... any longer. We've both changed.

7 I manage to keep in .... with most of my old school friends.

8 Pascal can be very ....: I don't trust him.

9 Scarlett and I are very similar: we both have the same likes and ....

10 I think .... is just as important as family.

③ Rewrite the sentences using the word at the end in the correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ He never tells lies. TRUTH He always tells the truth.

1 He forms friendly relationships easily. FRIENDS ....

2 We don't phone or write to each other. TOUCH ....

3 I don't have a good relationship with my father. GET ON ....

4 Kate can laugh at things and find things funny. HUMOUR ....

5 Jo and Ellen have a lot of similar interests. COMMON ....

6 Phoebe always does what she says she will do. RELY ....

TEST YOURSELF

B When things go wrong

Perfect Weekend

Channel Six Wednesday 9pm –11pm

This is a TV drama about a group of five young people who **got to know one another** at university, and now, five years later, **get together** for a weekend break. But things soon **go wrong.** Jack **no longer** gets on with Dan, and now **realizes** they have nothing in common, while Harry is sorry that he he **broke up with** Amy, the girl he used to **go out with.** Now Amy **fancies** Dan, but he is **in a** serious **relationship** with Sophie, who used to be Amy's best friend. And that's just the beginning ...

GLOSSARY	
get to know sb	meet sb a number of times and become friends
one another	used for saying that sb does the same thing as another person SYN **each other**
get together	(of two or more people) meet for a social reason
go wrong	used when a problem happens in a situation or relationship
no longer	not now; not as before SYN **not any longer**
realize	begin to understand sth that you didn't know before
break up (with sb)	stop being in a romantic relationship (with sb)
go out with sb	have sb as a boyfriend/girlfriend
fancy *inf*	like sb and want to be their boyfriend/girlfriend
in a (serious) relationship	having a boyfriend/girlfriend for a long time

4 One word is missing from each sentence. What is it and where does it go?

▶ Shall we together for a drink? Shall we get together for a drink?
1 Hanna is a serious relationship. ....
2 Lian broke with Chen last week. ....
3 Paula and I met another at university. ....
4 How did you get know Anya? ....
5 We used to meet but not longer. ....
6 She went with him for two years. ....

5 Complete the text.

Milo and I got to ▶ know each **(1)** .... when we worked together during the summer. We had a lot in common and I really **(2)** .... him (he's very good-looking), but unfortunately, he was in a serious **(3)** .... at the time. Then it all went **(4)** .... He and his girlfriend Inez had a big argument and **(5)** .... up. Soon after that, we started to **(6)** .... out with **(7)** .... another. But after a couple of weeks, Milo **(8)** .... that he still wanted to be with Inez, and that our relationship was a big mistake.

6 Complete the words in the sentences. ABOUT YOU

▶ How did you get to know your best friend? ....
1 How long have you known one ....? ....
2 How often do you get ....? ....
3 Is there anything you used to do that you don't do any ....? ....
4 Is your friend in a serious ....? ....
5 If 'yes', who is it with? If 'no', is he/she .... with anyone? ....
6 If so, how did they .... to .... each other? ....

7 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

11 Families

A A family history

Marilyn Monroe, also known by the **nicknames** MM or The Blonde Bombshell, was an **only child** from a **single-parent family**. She had an unhappy **childhood** and spent much of it with **foster parents**. One couple wanted to **adopt** her, but it wasn't possible, and at the age of 16, she **got married**. In fact, in her short life (she died at 36), she had a **complicated** love life: she married three times, and **got divorced** three times. **According to** Hollywood **sources**, she also had many **romantic** relationships with people such as Marlon Brando and Frank Sinatra.

GLOSSARY

nickname	an informal name, not your real name, which may be connected with your personality or appearance
only child	a child with no brothers or sisters
single parent	a mother or father who looks after her/his children alone: ***a single-parent family***
childhood	the time when you are a child
foster parent	sb who takes care of another person's child in their home for a period of time
adopt a child	take sb's child into your family and legally make them your child
married	having a husband or wife: ***get married (to sb)*** SYN **marry (sb)** *v*
complicated	difficult to understand because it has a lot of different parts
divorced	no longer married: ***get divorced*** SYN **divorce** *v*, ALSO *n*
according to sb/sth	as sb or sth says (NOT ~~according to me~~)
source	sb or sth that provides information, often for a piece of work or the news
romantic	about love; full of feelings of love

1 **Cover the text above. True or False? Write *T* or *F*. If the sentences are false, correct them.**

▸ Marilyn Monroe's nickname was MM. T

1 Her other nickname was The Blonde Baby. ……………

2 She was an only child. ……………

3 She grew up with her parents. ……………

4 She was adopted. ……………

5 She had a happy childhood. ……………

6 She got divorced twice. ……………

7 People say she had a romantic relationship with Frank Sinatra. ……………

8 She died at 36. ……………

2 **Match the words from the boxes.**

foster ✓	a child	get	single	get	according	only
divorced	parent	to somebody	adopt	child	parents ✓	married

▸ foster parents …………… …………… ……………

…………… …………… ……………

3 **Complete the text.**

My mother is a ▸ single parent. She had me a year after she got married, but got **(1)** …………… two years later, and didn't have any more children, so, I am an **(2)** …………… child. But, I had a happy **(3)** …………… and **(4)** …………… to my aunt, who lived with us some of the time, I never talked about my father. My aunt had a very different childhood. She was **(5)** …………… by my grandparents when she was five. Her name is Gloria, but everyone knows her by her **(6)** ……………, which is Gigi. She was married to a man called Enzo, but she wasn't happy with him, and she got **(7)** …………… after about five years. I was told by one **(8)** …………… (I won't say who that is) that Gigi had a number of **(9)** …………… relationships with several pop stars when she was a young woman. I don't know if these stories are true, but her love life was very **(10)** ……………

TEST YOURSELF

B Coincidences

I'm a **twin** (with an **identical** twin sister). My twin sister is married, and last year she **gave birth to** identical twin boys. Is that just a **coincidence**?

My sister's husband, my **brother-in-law**, has two **siblings** (who are sisters). Their husbands are from London, but **previous generations** of their families **originally** came from the same city in Poland. Another coincidence?

I also have a younger brother. His girlfriend **is related to** a family who lived in the same house as my parents, ten years before they did. Is this just another coincidence?

GLOSSARY	
twin	one of two people who have the same mother and were born at the same time
identical	exactly the same
coincidence	when two things happen in the same way or at the same time, both of them surprising
brother-in-law	**1** the husband of your sister **2** the brother of your husband or wife ALSO **sister/mother/daughter-in-law,** etc.
sibling *formal*	a brother or sister
previous	coming or happening before or earlier
generation	all the people in a family born at about the same time
originally	in the beginning, before other things happened
be related (to sb)	be in the same family as sb **relative/relation** *n*

SPOTLIGHT *birth*

When a woman **gives birth**, she has a baby, and the day that baby **is born** is their **date of birth**, e.g. 07/05/1998. Every year, on the day of their birth, people celebrate their **birthday**.

4 *Yes* or *No*?

- ▶ Is your mother-in-law your mother? No
- 1 Is your son your sibling? ....
- 2 Are your cousins your relatives? ....
- 3 Is your daughter-in-law your son's wife? ....
- 4 Is it a coincidence when one thing happens after another thing? ....
- 5 Are you and your father from the same generation? ....
- 6 Is your date of birth the day you were born? ....
- 7 Do identical twins look exactly the same? ....
- 8 Can a father give birth to a baby? ....

5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I have two sisters who are identical twins.
- 1 Three .... of my family have lived in the same house: my grandparents, my parents, and now my brother and his wife.
- 2 Some of my .... live abroad: my father's parents are in Naples, and two of my cousins live in Paris.
- 3 What's your .... of birth?
- 4 My ....-in-.......... is always giving me advice. My wife finds him a bit annoying.
- 5 My sister gave .... yesterday to a baby boy, weighing just over three kilos.
- 6 Both of my parents had the same family name before they got married. That's an incredible ...., isn't it?

6 Complete the words in these questions.

ABOUT YOU

- ▶ Have you got a brother- or sister -in-law ? ....
- 1 Have you got any s.......... ? ....
- 2 Do different g.......... of your family live in the same home? If so, who? ....
- 3 Are you r.......... to any people who live in a different country? If so, who? ....
- 4 Where did your family come from o.......... ? Do you know? ....
- 5 Where do/did the p.......... generations of your family live? ....
- 6 Do you know any tw.......... ? Are they i.......... ? ....

7 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

- ▶ Have you got a brother- or sister-in-law?
  Yes, I've got a sister-in-law called Caitlin. My brother married her two years ago.

TEST YOURSELF

12 Marriage and divorce

A Weddings

In the UK, it is the **custom** for many couples to **get engaged** before they get married. For the **wedding** itself, couples can choose a **religious ceremony**, for example in a church, or a **civil ceremony**, in a **registry office** or some other building. On the day of the wedding, the woman is called the **bride**, and the man is the **groom.** After the wedding, most married couples have a **reception**, followed by a **honeymoon**. During the reception, several people **make speeches** and wish the couple a happy **marriage.** On the same day every year after that, the couple **celebrate** their wedding **anniversary.**

bride
groom

GLOSSARY

custom	sth that people in society or a community usually do: *It's a* ***custom*** *for people to give presents to a couple getting married.*
get/be engaged	If two people **get engaged** or **are engaged**, they have agreed to get married.
wedding	a time when two people get married
ceremony	a formal public event. A **religious ceremony** takes place in a church, mosque, temple, etc. A **civil ceremony** is a non-religious ceremony which often takes place in a **registry office.**
(wedding) reception	a meal and/or party after a wedding
honeymoon	a holiday for a couple who have just got married
make a speech	give a formal talk to a lot of people at a special event
marriage	the period when two people are married
celebrate	do sth to show you are happy about a special day
anniversary	a day that is exactly a year after a special event

1 Put these words in the correct order.

the reception ....
the wedding ....
▶ the couple meet 1
the honeymoon ....
the anniversary ....
get engaged ....

2 Underline the correct word.

▶ They got ***engaged / married*** last week. The wedding is planned for June.
1 Jake and Emma's ***wedding / marriage*** is next Saturday.
2 Jake is the ***groom / bride.***
3 It's a ***civil / religious*** ceremony in St Peter's Church.
4 The reception will be ***before / after*** the wedding ceremony.
5 Speeches are a custom during the ***ceremony / reception.***
6 On their honeymoon, Jake and Emma will be ***bride and groom / husband and wife.***

3 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

▶ Do couples usually get engaged before they get married? ....
1 Can couples have a religious ceremony or a .... ceremony in a .... office? ....
2 Does the .... usually wear a dress of a particular colour? If so, what colour? ....
3 Is there usually a .... after the ceremony? ....
4 Do people often .... speeches? If so, who does it? ....
5 Is it the .... for the wife to wear a wedding ring on her left hand? ....
6 Do couples often go on a .... after the wedding? ....
7 Do couples usually .... their wedding .... every year? ....
8 Do most .... last forever in your country? ....

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student. Are there any other customs you have during weddings in your country?

TEST YOURSELF

B Divorce

Although most couples say they 'marry for life', recent **statistics** do not support this **belief.** Currently about 42% of married couples in the UK **separate** and get divorced, with the average marriage lasting about thirty years. Reasons for deciding to live **apart vary,** but certainly include money problems – which cause **pressure** in a relationship – **lack of** communication, one partner having a **sexual** relationship (an **affair**) with another person, **constant** arguments, and lack of **equality** in the relationship, e.g. if one person does all the housework, or one person makes all the decisions.

SPOTLIGHT *separate* v, adj

The verb **separate** means 'stop being together'. The adjective **separate** means 'away; not together'.
Listen to the APP for the different ways they are pronounced.

- *My parents **separated** when I was a child.* (SYN **split up**)
- *The older children are **separate from** the younger ones in the school.*

GLOSSARY

statistics	a collection of numbers that give information about sth
belief	a strong feeling that sth is true or real
apart	not together: ***live apart*** = live in separate homes
vary	be different from each other, or change according to the situation
pressure	a feeling of worry and stress because of what you have to do
lack (of sth)	not having sth or not having enough of sth
sexual	connected with sex
affair	a sexual relationship between two people that is normally secret because at least one person in the relationship is married
constant	happening all the time, or again and again ALSO **continuous** happening all the time: ***continuous noise***
equality	being the same or having the same rights **equal** *adj*

5 **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ separate / sexual S
1 equality / pressure ....
2 vary / lack ....
3 statistics / split ....
4 equality / constant ....
5 affair / statistics ....
6 belief / pressure ....
7 separate (*adj*) / affair ....

6 ***Yes* or *No*?**

▶ If two people live ***apart***, they don't live with each other. Yes
1 If something is ***constant***, it happens from time to time. ....
2 ***Equality*** is about how good or bad something is. ....
3 A ***lack*** of something is when you haven't got enough of something. ....
4 ***Statistics*** give you information through numbers. ....
5 When couples ***separate***, they stay together. ....
6 If things ***vary***, they don't change. ....

7 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ In some cultures, there is a general belief that marriage is for ever.
1 They were only married for four years, but now they live ....
2 You can get lots of figures from ...., but they don't tell the whole truth.
3 If you have money problems, it can put .... on any relationship.
4 A .... of communication has been a .... problem for them. They just don't talk to each other.
5 Sophie's parents .... when she was a teenager; she stayed with her mum.
6 In an .... relationship, there is less chance that a marriage will come to an end.
7 His parents got divorced last year and now live in .... houses, but they're only about a hundred metres from each other.
8 Reasons for divorce .... enormously.

8 ABOUT YOU **Cover the text above and write down five reasons why couples get divorced. Can you also think of at least two more reasons why people get a divorce?**

TEST YOURSELF

13 Geography

A Geographical features

waterfall/falls

desert

mountainous region (the Alps)

jungle (the Amazon)

One of the most important **geographical features** in South America is the Iguazu Falls, which are the **waterfalls** of the Iguazu River. They are **located** on the border between Argentina and Brazil in the **southern** part of South America. The falls **divide** the river into the upper and lower Iguazu. The river **flows mostly** through Brazil, but the falls are **mainly** on the Argentinian side.

GLOSSARY

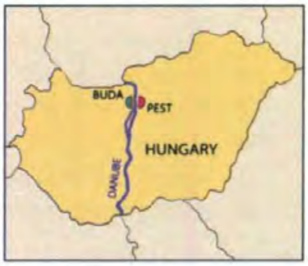
geographical	relating to the Earth and everything on it, such as mountains, rivers, etc. **geography** *n*
feature	an important part of something
located	in a place **location** *n*: *The house is in a lovely **location**.*
southern	connected with, in or from the *south* ALSO **northern**, **eastern**, **western**, plus **south-eastern**, **north-western**, etc.
divide	cut or separate sth into smaller parts
flow (of water)	move in a continuous way in one direction **flow** *v*
mostly	almost all SYN **mainly**

1 *Yes* or *No*?

▶ Are waterfalls usually on lakes? No
1 Can you swim up a waterfall? ....
2 Is the Alps a mountainous region? ....
3 Are deserts full of water? ....
4 Do rivers flow? ....
5 Do rivers sometimes divide? ....
6 Is a jungle like a desert? ....
7 Is *mainly* the same as *always*? ....
8 Does the location of something tell you where it is? ....

2 Complete the text.

Budapest is ▶ located in the **(1)** .... part of Hungary. The River Danube **(2)** .... through the city from the north, and **(3)** .... the city into two parts: hilly Buda on the **(4)** .... side and the much larger and flatter Pest on the **(5)** .... side. The city has a population of nearly 2 million, which lives **(6)** .... in Pest. The bridges and castles are two of the most famous **(7)** .... of Budapest.



3 Do this quiz.

GEOGRAPHY QUIZ

▶ London is located on the south-eastern side of England.
1 The Amazon jungle is in ....
2 The River Nile flows through the continent of ....
3 The Alps is a mountainous region in the continent of ....
4 Niagara Falls is a series of three waterfalls on the border between .... and ....
5 The Sahara is a desert in ....
6 Patagonia is in the southern part of ....
7 In 1993, Czechoslovakia was divided into two countries: the .... Republic and ....
8 The Urals are an important geographical feature of western ....

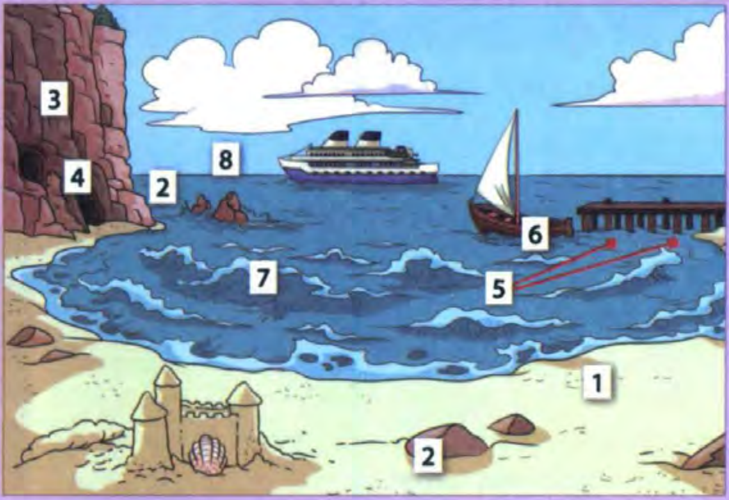
4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **What are some of the main geographical features in your country, and where are they located? Write your answer, or tell another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B The coast

Wanscombe, near the **port** of Padstow, has a lovely **bay.** Its **beach**[1] is **sandy** with a few **rocks**[2] quite near the **shore.** There's a **cliff**[3] behind the beach, and children often play in the **caves**[4] there.

At one end of the beach, there's a small **harbour**[5]. When the weather's bad and the sea is **rough,** it **protects** the **sailing boats**[6] from the high **waves**[7]. You can sometimes see large ships **on the horizon**[8].



GLOSSARY

port	a town or city that has a large area of water where ships load goods, etc; an area where ships stop to let goods and passengers on and off
bay	a part of the coast where the land goes in to form a curve ◡
sandy	covered in the white/yellow material you find in deserts and on beaches **sand** *n*
shore	the land along the edge of the sea or a lake
rough	A **rough** sea has big waves. OPP **calm**
protect sb/sth (from sth)	keep sth/sb safe from sth **protection** *n*

5 Find the end of each word.

cave | rocksandysailingbayhorizonprotectportshorebeachwaveroughharboursandcliff

6 Which words are being defined?

▶ (of the sea) not calm rough
1 the line in the distance between the land and the sky ....
2 a large piece of stone ....
3 the land at the edge of the sea where it meets the beach ....
4 a high area of rock near the sea ....
5 a place where ships or boats are kept and protected from the sea ....
6 an area of sand or small stones beside the sea where people sit and relax ....
7 a large hole in a cliff or under the ground ....
8 A type of boat you see in a harbour ....

7 Complete the sentences.

▶ It was a nice day, so we went to the beach .
1 When it's stormy, the sea gets very ....
2 A huge .... hit the boat, and I almost fell out.
3 The harbour .... the boats in bad weather.
4 Hamburg is a major .... in Germany where about 9,000 ships call a year.
5 You have to climb down the .... to get to the beach.
6 I looked out to sea and I could just see a boat on the ....
7 We didn't swim, but we walked along the .... with our feet in the water.
8 The beach is great for children because it's .... and they can play there safely.

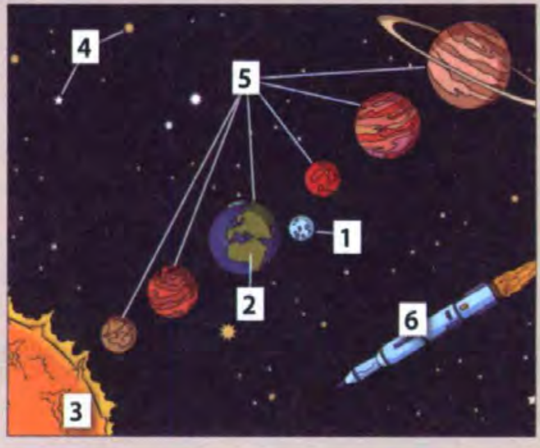
8 ABOUT YOU **Do you often have holidays on the coast? Do you go to a particular bay? How do you get there? What's the beach like? Write your answers, or tell another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

14 The universe and science

A The universe

- The **moon**[1] is a **satellite** of the **earth**[2]; **in other words**, it **circles** around the earth. This takes **approximately** 28 days.
- The earth **revolves** around the sun every 365 days.
- The **sun**[3] is a star, but seems much larger than other **stars**[4] because it is so close to the earth. Light from the sun takes approximately 8 minutes to **reach** the earth.
- 9 **planets**[5] revolve around the sun. We call the sun and all its planets the **solar system.**
- 100 years ago, sending **rockets**[6] into **space** seemed **incredible**, but now it is a fact of life and we have learned **a great deal** about the **universe** since then.



GLOSSARY

satellite	an object that moves round a bigger object in space
in other words	used for saying sth in a different way
circle	go round sth in a circle SYN **revolve (around sth)**
approximately	about, more or less SYN **roughly**
reach	arrive somewhere
space [U]	the area beyond the earth round the planets and stars
incredible	difficult to believe
a great deal	a lot SYN **a good deal**
universe	the whole of space and everything in it, including the planets and stars

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word.

▶ The ~~sun~~ circles the earth. moon
1 The planets are in the solar space. ....
2 The earth revolves around the moon. ....
3 The sun is a planet. ....
4 Man first walked on the sun in 1969. ....
5 Mars is a star. ....
6 We can send planes into space. ....
7 We've learned a big deal about space. ....
8 The world is the whole of space and everything in it. ....

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ There are billions of stars in the universe.
1 Is it important to send rockets into ....?
2 Mars, Jupiter and Venus are all ....
3 As far as we know, all human life lives on ....
4 For many people, the idea of human life in other parts of the universe is ....
5 It takes rockets .... 260 days to .... Mars.
6 The earth .... around the sun every 365 days.
7 One of the .... crashed when it landed.
8 The moon is a .... of the earth.
9 The sun and all its planets are known as the .... system.
10 We still don't know a great .... about life on other planets.
11 The earth revolves around the sun: in other ...., the earth is a planet in our solar system.

3 Cover the text and glossary. Look at the picture. Name five things you can see.

▶ Mars ....
....

TEST YOURSELF

B Scientific exploration

Why go to Mars?

Scientists have already sent **spacecraft**, including **satellites**, to **explore** the surface of Mars, and **carried out experiments** to see if they can **discover** any signs of life. **So far**, they haven't found any, but an **analysis** of the **solid** rocks brought back from Mars has **confirmed** that they were created by the presence of water and wind, so perhaps life could have **existed previously** on the planet.

SPOTLIGHT *discover or invent?*

If you **discover** something, you learn about or find something for the first time. **discovery** *n*

If you invent something, you create something that didn't exist before. **invention** *n*

- *They've **discovered** a new plant.*
- *Who **invented** the telescope?*

GLOSSARY

scientist	a person who studies the physical world **science** *n* **scientific** *adj*
spacecraft	a vehicle that travels into space, e.g. a rocket
satellite	electronic equipment that is sent into space and moves around a planet
explore	travel round a place in order to learn about it **exploration** *n*
carry out sth	do and complete a task
experiment	a scientific test in order to learn/find out sth
so far	up to now
analysis	the careful study of sth in order to explain it **analyse** *v*
solid	with no holes or spaces inside: ***solid rock***
confirm	say or show that sth is true or definite **confirmation** *n*
exist	If sth **exists**, it is present in the real world. **existence** *n*
previously	in a way that happened before or earlier

4 Circle the correct word.

▶ There was an [✓ ***experiment***] / ***exploration*** to test the levels of sugar in the blood.
1 These animals only ***explore / exist*** in South America – nowhere else.
2 They're going to ***explore / analyse*** the area to see what they can find.
3 The ***discovery / invention*** of the electric light bulb changed people's lives.
4 Scientists have ***carried out / confirmed*** experiments on animals.
5 Who ***invented / discovered*** the ancient city of Machu Pichu in Peru?
6 We've got the information, so now we need to ***analyse / explore*** it.

5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

▶ Television was an incredible invention........ . INVENT
1 There's a report from a group of .... SCIENCE
2 The .... of penicillin was of major importance. DISCOVER
3 We're waiting for .... of the results. CONFIRM
4 They will .... the findings in the laboratory. ANALYSIS
5 The 60s and 70s were an exciting period for space .... EXPLORE
6 Humans are always looking for the .... of new life forms. EXIST

6 Complete the words in the sentences.

▶ Who discovered........ the planet Venus?
1 At the moment there is no evidence that life e........................ on Mars.
2 They left camp and went to e........................ the countryside to see what they could find.
3 With the use of s........................, TV can show news from anywhere in the world.
4 Doctors believe they will have to c........................ o........................ further experiments with the drug.
5 We have analysed the s........................ rocks brought back from the planet, but s........................ f........................ we haven't found anything interesting.
6 Scientists have now c........................ that climate change is really happening.
7 We are still waiting for an a........................ of the results before we reach a conclusion.
8 There is now s........................ evidence that the ice cap is getting smaller.
9 Do you know if life existed p........................ on other planets in the solar system?
10 Scientists are developing a s........................ which will take paying passengers to the moon and back.

TEST YOURSELF

15 Weather conditions

A Normal weather

Word	Example	Meaning
pour (with rain)	*It's **pouring (with rain)** outside!*	rain a lot
shower	*We had a **heavy shower** this morning.*	rain for a short period of time, which can be **heavy** (= a lot) or **light** (= a little)
rainfall	***Rainfall** is low in the summer.*	the total amount of rain in a place over a period of time
the cold	*I hate **the cold.***	cold weather
freezing	*It was **freezing (cold)** yesterday.*	very cold
thunder and lightning	*We had a lot of **thunder and lightning** during the storm.*	a loud noise in the sky when there is a storm, and then a sudden bright light in the sky
sunshine	*We sat outside in the **sunshine.***	the light and heat from the sun
fog	*There was **thick fog** on the motorway this morning.*	**Fog** is cloud close to the ground which is difficult to see through. **Thick fog** is very difficult to see through. **foggy** *adj*
mild	*This has been a very **mild** winter.*	not very cold, and therefore pleasant
horrible	*The weather has been **horrible** this week.*	very bad or unpleasant SYN **dreadful, awful, terrible**

1 Tick the *wet* weather conditions.

▸ rainfall ☑ sunshine ☐ foggy ☐ pouring ☐ cloudy ☐ shower ☐ freezing ☐ mild ☐

2 Match 1–6 with a–g.

▸ don't like ...c...
1 thick ....
2 a heavy ....
3 horrible ....
4 freezing ....
5 a mild ....
6 pour ....

a weather
b with rain
c the cold ✓
d cold
e shower
f fog
g day

3 Complete the words in the texts.

1 When I woke up it was quite cloudy but ▸ mild........ , for the time of year. Then on the way to work, it suddenly got very dark and we had some t........ and l........ , and it started p........ with r........ . I got really wet.
2 Yesterday was fantastic. It was incredibly hot, and we had about ten hours of s........ .
3 We've had d........ weather this week. It's been so f........ in the morning that you could hardly see, followed by heavy s........ almost every day, and f........ cold as well.

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

1 When do you get the heaviest rainfall? ....
2 Do you get a lot of sunshine? If so, when? ....
3 Is spring generally cold or mild? ....
4 Do you get much fog? If so, when? ....
5 Is it often freezing cold? If so, when? And do you like the cold? ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Extreme weather

1

2

3

4

These natural **disasters occur** quite **regularly** in certain parts of the world.

Hurricane[1]: a **sudden** and **violent** storm with very strong winds, which often **destroys** buildings and brings down **branches** and trees.

Flood[2]: too much water, often the result of heavy rain, which **floods** the land and **damages** roads, bridges, buildings, etc.

Tidal wave[3]: a very large ocean wave, often caused by an **extreme** storm or **earthquake**, which destroys things when it reaches land.

Drought[4]: a long period with no rain. **Crops** die, and people may **starve to death.**

GLOSSARY	
disaster	sth very bad that happens causing harm or death
occur	happen
regularly	If sth happens **regularly**, it happens again and again with the same amount of time in between.
sudden	happening very quickly **suddenly** *adv*
violent	very strong and usually causing damage
destroy	break sth completely so it cannot be used again **destruction** *n*
branch	one of the parts of a tree that grow out from the thick main part
damage	break or harm sth **damage** *n*
extreme	very great or strong
earthquake	a sudden strong movement of the ground, which often opens up
crops	plants that are grown for food, e.g. *rice, potatoes*
starve (to death)	die because you do not have enough food to eat

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ flood / moon D
- 1 crop / occur ....
- 2 occur / earthquake ....
- 3 disaster / starve ....
- 4 violent / tidal ....
- 5 drought / bought ....
- 6 drought / out ....
- 7 damage / branch ....
- 8 disaster / regularly ....
- 9 flood / destruction ....

6 Match 1–5 with a–f.

- ▶ disaster d
- 1 flood ....
- 2 tidal wave ....
- 3 drought ....
- 4 earthquake ....
- 5 hurricane ....

- **a** a long period of very dry weather
- **b** sudden movement of the ground
- **c** very strong winds
- **d** a very bad thing that causes harm or death ✓
- **e** a very large movement in the ocean
- **f** become filled or covered with water

7 Complete the texts.

- ▶ When the tidal wave reached land, it was over ten metres high.
- 1 48 hours of heavy rain has brought more .... to the south-west of England. Many roads have been badly .... and winds have also brought down .... and entire trees. Two bridges have been completely .... and will need to be rebuilt.
- 2 With no rain for months, the .... in Ethiopa is the worst for ten years. Food is in short supply because most of the .... have died, and now tens of thousands of people are .... and could die unless help arrives very soon. It is one of the worst natural .... in living memory.
- 3 We are getting reports of a violent earthquake in Western China. It .... without warning, has caused a huge amount of .... and has completely .... whole villages.
- 4 California is experiencing more .... weather conditions. After the recent floods, a .... storm is now reaching the west coast of the state. It is accompanied by winds of over 100mph. Weather experts say that these .... are now occurring ....: at least one a year over the past ten years.

TEST YOURSELF

16 Climate change

the North Pole
the Earth
ice
the South Pole

rainforest

Global warming is the **gradual** increase in the average temperature of the earth's **atmosphere,** and is caused by an increase of **harmful gases** in the **environment.** Many scientists believe that most of this **pollution** is the result of **human** activities. Here are some of the **effects**:

- As the **ice** at the **poles melts**, sea levels could **rise** by almost a metre in the next century.
- There will be more extreme and **unpredictable** weather, e.g. **heatwaves** or floods.
- The earth will become even warmer because **rainforests** are **disappearing.**
- **Famine** and **disease** will **spread**, and this will **affect** people, especially in poor countries. They will have to import **grain,** which will be too expensive.

GLOSSARY

climate change	changes in the earth's weather, especially the increase in the temperature of the earth's *atmosphere*
global	covering or affecting the whole world: ***global issues/warming***
gradual	happening slowly over a long period of time **gradually** *adv*
the atmosphere	the gases around the Earth, planets, etc.
harmful	causing damage, injury or illness **harm** *v*
gas	a substance like air, e.g. *oxygen, hydrogen, carbon dioxide*
the environment	the natural world; the air, land and water in which people, plants and animals live **environmental** *adj*
pollution	gases, chemicals, etc. that harm the environment **pollute** *v*
human	connected with people
melt	If you heat ice, it **melts:** it changes from a **solid** to a **liquid**. ALSO **solid** *adj*, **liquid** *adj*
rise	increase, go higher **rise** *n* OPP **fall** *v, n*
unpredictable	If sth is **unpredictable**, you can't say how it will change in the future. OPP **predictable**; **predict** *v*
heatwave	a period of unusually hot weather
disappear	If sth or sb **disappears**, they go away and people cannot see them.
famine	**Famine** happens when many people die because there is not enough food in a country.
disease	illness in people, animals or plants
spread	reach more people or places
grain	the seeds of a plant that we eat, e.g. *rice, corn, wheat*

SPOTLIGHT *effect* n, *affect* v

An **effect** is a change which is caused by something.

- *What are the **effects of** global warming?*

Affect means 'change something in a particular way'.

- *Climate change will **affect** all our lives.*

1 Complete the words.

- ▶ h _u_ m _a_ n
- **1** pr ___ d ___ ct ___ ble
- **2** dis ___ ___ ___ ear
- **3** f ___ m ___ ne
- **4** atmo ___ ___ ___ ere
- **5** d ___ s ___ ___ se
- **6** env ___ ro ___ m ___ nt
- **7** p ___ ll ___ t ___ ___ n
- **8** h ___ rmf ___ l
- **9** l ___ qu ___ d
- **10** gr ___ d ___ al

2 Good or bad news? Write *G* or *B*.

- ▶ This gas won't harm anyone. G
- **1** Some kinds of animals are disappearing. ……
- **2** The animals aren't affected by the floods. ……
- **3** Famine is spreading. ……
- **4** This liquid is harmful. ……
- **5** There's less disease in the city now. ……
- **6** The earth's temperature is rising. ……
- **7** The ice at the poles is gradually melting. ……
- **8** The river is polluted. ……
- **9** It's not a local problem: it's global. ……
- **10** We have a lot of grain. ……

3 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ If something rises, it goes [✓ ***up***] / ***down.***
- **1** Ice is ***solid / liquid.***
- **2** How does the situation ***effect / affect*** you?
- **3** It's all very ***predictable / unpredictable***: you never know what's going to happen.
- **4** My brother is studying the effect of the problem on ***the environment / the pollution.***
- **5** Global warming is caused by ***people / human*** activity.
- **6** There was snow in the mountains, but now it's ***spreading / melting.***
- **7** If there is a gradual change in something, it happens ***slowly / quickly.***
- **8** Water is a ***liquid / gas.***
- **9** The rainforest is gradually ***disappearing / melting.***
- **10** There are harmful gases in the ***atmosphere / effect.***

4 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ The earth is gradually…… getting warmer.
- **1** We had a lot of extreme weather last year: a long h…… in the summer and then rain and floods in the autumn. I think it's all part of c…… change.
- **2** If you freeze water, it changes from l…… to s…… .
- **3** The beach was p…… with oil, which seriously a…… the sea birds and animals.
- **4** Environmentalists p…… that there will be a r…… in sea levels in the future.
- **5** With g…… warming, some kinds of plants and animals are d…… very fast.
- **6** Certain diseases s…… from person to person very quickly.
- **7** P…… has a very h…… effect on the environment.
- **8** After many months without rain, there will be only small quantities of g…… to feed people, so there is a real danger of f…… in this part of Africa.
- **9** What are the main e…… of global w…… ?
- **10** Doctors fear the d…… could soon s…… as far as Europe.

5 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- **1** How worried are you about global warming? ……
- **2** Do you have rainforests in your country? If so, what is happening to them? ……
- **3** Has the climate changed in recent years in your country? If so, how? ……
- **4** Which human activities do you think are harming the environment most? ……
- **5** What kind of pollution is common in your country? ……

TEST YOURSELF

17 Saving the environment

A What can governments do?

Governments around the world need to do the following:

- **set targets** to **reduce** the levels of **carbon dioxide** in the atmosphere
- get **developing countries** to **sign up to** environmental targets
- **convince** certain countries that they must **take** climate change **seriously**
- introduce public information **campaigns**
- reduce air travel, which is a major **source** of pollution
- increase the use of **renewable energy**.

GLOSSARY	
set	decide what sth will be: ***set** a date for a meeting*
target	a result that you want to reach or achieve
reduce	make sth smaller or less in quantity, size, etc.
carbon dioxide	a gas breathed out by people and animals (CO_2)
developing country	a country that is poor and is just starting to have modern industry OPP **developed country**
sign up (to do sth)	agree formally to do sth
convince	make sb believe sth
take sth seriously	show that you understand sth is important
campaign	a plan to do a number of things to get a special result
source	where sth comes from
renewable energy	energy provided by the sun, wind and water

① **All the underlined letters in these words have the same sound, except one. Which is the odd one out? Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

carbon developing convince country seriously renewable energy

ANSWER: ....

② **True or false? Write *T* or *F*. Correct the false answers.**

▶ If you ***reduce*** something, you make it bigger. F – If you reduce something, you make it smaller.
1 ***A campaign*** is part of the countryside. ....
2 If you ***convince*** somebody, you tell them something that isn't true. ....
3 The ***source*** of something is where it comes from. ....
4 If you ***sign up to*** something, you formally agree to do it. ....
5 Coal and gas are examples of ***renewable energy***. ....
6 A ***target*** is something you want to reach or achieve. ....
7 A ***developing country*** is rich with lots of modern industry. ....
8 ***Carbon dioxide*** is solid. ....

③ **Cover the text at the top of the page and complete these dialogues.**

▶ What does CO_2 stand for? ~ It stands for carbon dioxide.
1 What should governments do? ~ They need to set .... for reducing pollution.
2 What kind of targets? ~ They need to .... the levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.
3 Has everyone signed up to these targets? ~ We still need the support of more .... countries.
4 Which governments do we still need to .... that climate change is happening? ~ Quite a few.
5 Why is that? ~ Because not all of them take it ....
6 What kind of public .... will help? ~ Something which gives people more information.
7 What should we try to increase? ~ Different forms of renewable ....
8 Why should we reduce the number of flights? ~ Because they're a major .... of pollution.

TEST YOURSELF

B What can individuals do?

As **individuals**, we can also have an **impact** by making a few changes in our daily lives:

- walk or cycle **instead of** getting into our cars.
- **save** water, e.g. by turning off the **tap**[1] when you are cleaning your teeth.
- don't **waste energy**, e.g. **switch off**[2] lights when you leave a room.
- don't **throw away rubbish: recycle it whenever** and **wherever** possible.
- don't **water** your grass in summer. It doesn't need it, and it will grow back.

1

2

PLASTIC
PAPER
CANS
recycling bins

GLOSSARY

individual	one person **individual** *adj*
impact	the effect that sth has **impact on sth** *v*
instead of sth	in place of sth
save	use less of sth
waste	use too much of sth or use it badly
energy	the power from electricity, gas, coal, etc.
switch sth off/on	SYN **turn sth off/on; Switch** is only used with electrical things, not taps.
throw sth away	put sth that you do not want in the bin
rubbish	things that you do not want any more
recycle	do sth to materials such as paper and plastic so that they can be used again **recycling** *n*
water	give sth water

SPOTLIGHT *whenever, wherever, whatever*

Whenever = at any and every time:
- *Save energy **whenever** you can.*

Wherever = at, to or in any place:
- *Think about the environment **wherever** you are.*

Whatever = anything or everything:
- *We must do **whatever** we can to help.*

4 **Match 1–5 with a–f.**

▶ save c .... — **c** water ✓
1 switch off .... **a** rubbish
2 don't waste .... **b** the grass
3 recycle .... **c** water ✓
4 water .... **d** taps
5 turn off .... **e** lights
f energy

5 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ We must do ▶ whatever .... we can to help the environment.
1 You can s.................... a lot of water if you have a shower i.................... of a bath.
2 You can save e.................... if you put on a jumper and turn the heating off.
3 You can r.................... most forms of plastic, so don't just t.................... that bottle away.
4 Climate change i.................... on all countries, but also on each i.................... in society.
5 It is important to save water and energy w.................... and w.................... it is possible.
6 It is important to believe that individuals can have an i.................... on the environment.
7 Do you think r.................... bins are a good idea? Do you recycle most of your r.................... ?

6 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

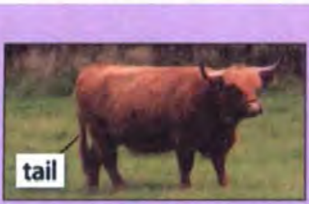
What other things, as individuals, can we do:

• to save water? • to save energy? • to increase recycling? • to save the environment?

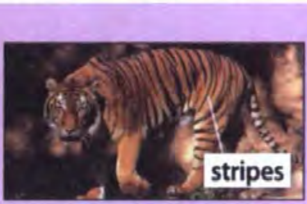
TEST YOURSELF

18 Animals, insects and birds

A Animals, insects and birds

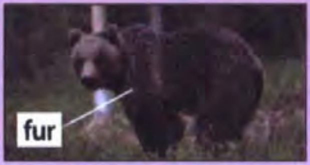


bull

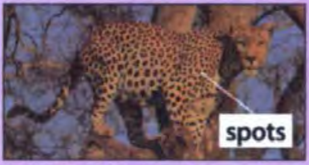


tiger

camel



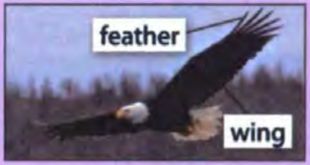
bear



leopard

wolf

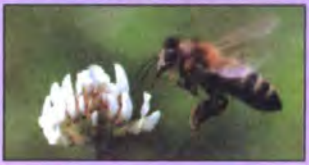
crocodile



eagle

spider

butterfly



bee

mosquito

Many of these **creatures** live **in the wild**, which means they live in nature and not with people, e.g. tigers. You can see many of them in a **zoo.** A **bee**, a **butterfly** and a **mosquito** are all **insects**: small creatures with six legs and usually wings.

① **Write the names of these creatures in order from big to small.**

bear butterfly eagle camel ✓ bee leopard mosquito

big ▶ camel .... small

② ***Yes* or *No*?**

▶ Can lions and tigers swim? Yes
1 Do leopards have spots? ....
2 Do bulls have feathers? ....
3 Do eagles have feathers? ....
4 Can mosquitos make you ill? ....
5 Do bears have fur? ....
6 Do camels have wings? ....
7 Do tigers have a tail? ....
8 Do wolves have fur? ....
9 Do butterflies have wings? ....
10 Do spiders fly? ....
11 Do some butterflies have spots? ....

③ **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Bees make honey, don't they?
1 They say .... can go for months without drinking.
2 There are a lot of .... in the zoo: animals, insects and fish.
3 You can see lots of animals in the .... in parts of Africa.
4 Did you see any tigers when you went to the ....?
5 A spider has eight legs (not six), so it's not an ....
6 The bird had a problem with one of its .... and it couldn't fly.
7 I love the .... on tigers – they're beautiful.
8 Thick .... keeps bears warm in cold winters.

④ ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

In your country, which of the creatures at the top of the page do people kill, and why?

▶ People kill spiders because they don't want them in their homes, or because they're afraid of them.

TEST YOURSELF

B Unusual facts about animals

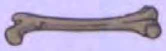
Snakes

There are about 2,600 different kinds of snake. About 400 are **poisonous**, but many are **harmless.** In size, they **vary** enormously: the smallest are 12 centimetres long, the biggest are **up to** ten metres and **weigh** 250 kilos. Snakes don't need energy from food (the sun heats their bodies), so they can **survive** for months without eating.

Sharks

The **average lifespan** of a shark is about 25 years but some can live to be 100. They are unusual in that they have no **bones** in their body, and large sharks may have up to 4,000 teeth. They are very dangerous when they **hunt**, but only a few **attack** humans: more people die from bee **stings** than from shark attacks.

GLOSSARY

poisonous	If an animal or insect is **poisonous,** it produces a dangerous substance (**poison**) that can kill or harm you.	**average**	normal or typical
harmless	not causing damage, injury or illness OPP **harmful; harm** *n, v*	**lifespan**	the time that sth is likely to live (For people, we say **life expectancy**.)
vary	(of a group of similar things) be different from each other	**bone**	
up to	used when saying the most an amount can be	**hunt**	go after sth, usually an animal, to catch and kill it
weigh	have a certain **weight** *n*, which is how heavy sth is	**attack**	try to hurt sb/sth by using physical force **attack** *n*
survive	continue to live in a difficult situation **survival** *n*	**sting**	a sudden pain caused by poison sent into the skin **sting** *v* Bees **sting,** but mosquitos and snakes **bite.**

5 True, false or both according to the text? Write *T* or *F*. If the sentences are false, correct them.

▶ The average lifespan of a snake is 25 years. F – The average lifespan of a shark is 25 years.
1 Most snakes are poisonous. ....
2 Most sharks are harmless to humans. ....
3 Snakes can survive without the sun's heat. ....
4 Snakes can weigh up to 250 kilos. ....
5 Sharks have 400 bones in their body. ....
6 Sharks sting when they attack. ....

6 Answer the questions. Do you know ...?

▶ if *attack* is a noun, a verb, or both? both
1 the noun from the verb *survive*? ....
2 the time that people are likely to live? Life ....
3 the noun from the verb *weigh*? ....
4 the adjective from *poison*? ....
5 the two adjectives from the noun *harm*? ....
6 the verb from the noun *sting*? ....

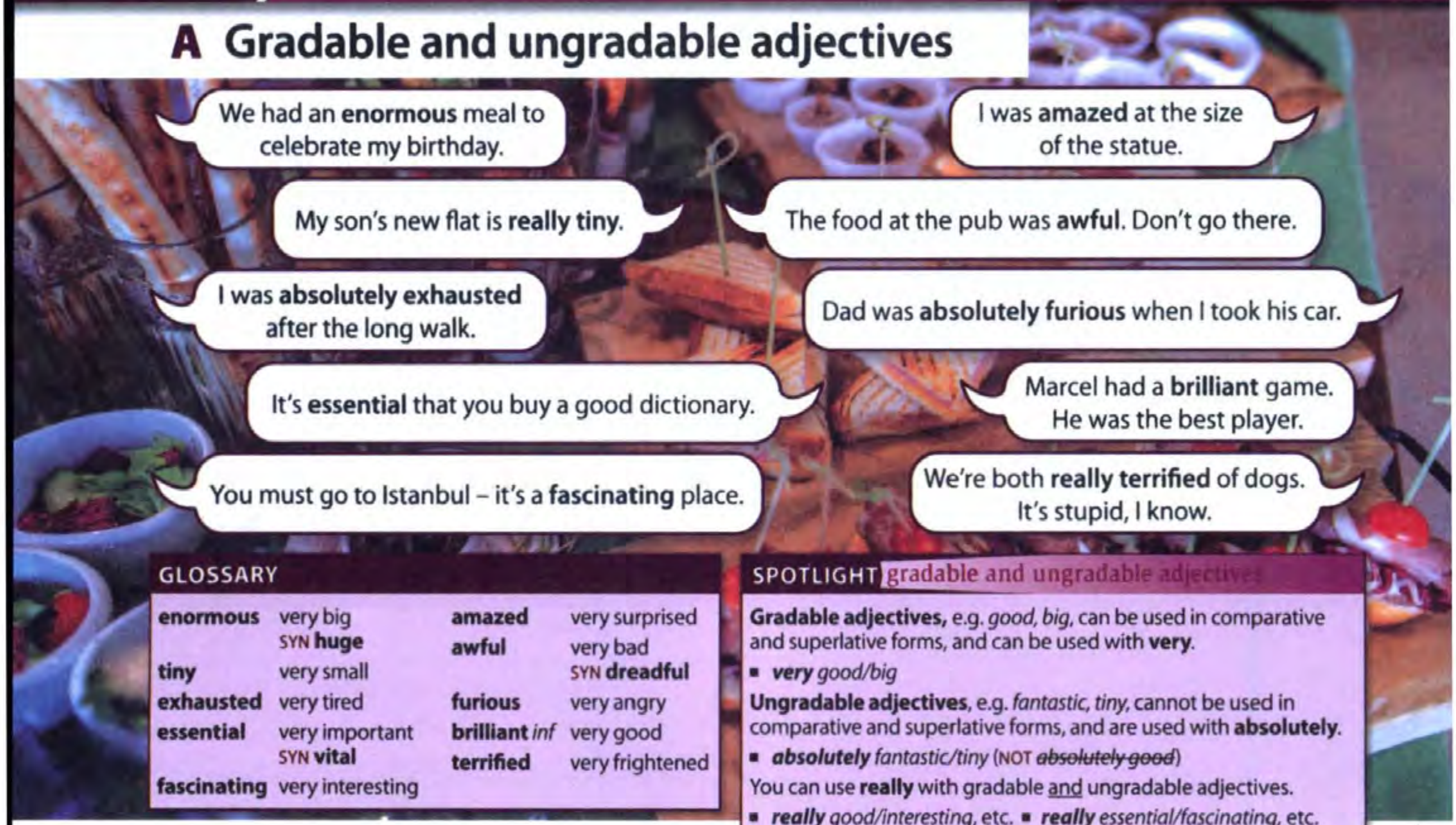
7 Complete the words in these animal facts.

▶ The average lifespan of most bees is 30-35 days.
1 Some snakes can s........ for almost a year without food.
2 Nobody knows the a........ lifespan of a snake, but in zoos they can reach 30.
3 People h........ sharks for their meat and skin, but also for sport.
4 Over 100 people a year die from a bee s........ .
5 Snakes can grow u........ to nine metres long.
6 The size of sharks can v........ from the size of your hand to the size of a bus.
7 P........ from some snakes can kill you.
8 Some snakes can w........ as much as 250 kilos.

TEST YOURSELF

19 Adjectives (1)

A Gradable and ungradable adjectives



We had an **enormous** meal to celebrate my birthday.

I was **amazed** at the size of the statue.

My son's new flat is **really tiny**.

The food at the pub was **awful**. Don't go there.

I was **absolutely exhausted** after the long walk.

Dad was **absolutely furious** when I took his car.

It's **essential** that you buy a good dictionary.

Marcel had a **brilliant** game. He was the best player.

You must go to Istanbul – it's a **fascinating** place.

We're both **really terrified** of dogs. It's stupid, I know.

GLOSSARY

enormous	very big SYN **huge**	**amazed**	very surprised
tiny	very small	**awful**	very bad SYN **dreadful**
exhausted	very tired	**furious**	very angry
essential	very important SYN **vital**	**brilliant** *inf*	very good
fascinating	very interesting	**terrified**	very frightened

SPOTLIGHT gradable and ungradable adjectives

Gradable adjectives, e.g. *good, big*, can be used in comparative and superlative forms, and can be used with **very**.

- ***very** good/big*

Ungradable adjectives, e.g. *fantastic, tiny*, cannot be used in comparative and superlative forms, and are used with **absolutely**.

- ***absolutely** fantastic/tiny* (NOT ~~*absolutely good*~~)

You can use **really** with gradable and ungradable adjectives.

- ***really** good/interesting*, etc. ▪ ***really** essential/fascinating*, etc.

1 Match the gradable adjectives from Box A with the extreme adjectives from Box B.

A	angry ✓	small	tired	interesting	good	bad	important	big	frightened
B	enormous	dreadful	vital	furious ✓	tiny	terrified	fascinating	brilliant	exhausted

▶ angry/furious ....

....

....

2 Underline the correct answer. Be careful: both answers may be correct.

▶ I thought the film was very ***good*** */ awful*.
1 He was absolutely *frightened / terrified* at sea.
2 I was very *tired / exhausted* by the end of the day.
3 The orchestra was really *good / brilliant*.
4 Matt was absolutely *angry / furious* when he found us in the garage.
5 Her books about India are really *interesting / fascinating*.
6 A dictionary is absolutely *important / essential*.
7 We were really *surprised / amazed* at how many people were there.
8 The programmes on Central Asia were very *good / brilliant*.

3 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Was it a bad film? ~ Yes, absolutely awful .
1 Did you find the book interesting? ~ Yes, really ....
2 Was it a big place? ~ Yes, absolutely ....
3 It was a good match, wasn't it. ~ Oh yeah, really ....
4 I expect you were tired at the end of the day. ~ Yes, absolutely ....
5 Were you frightened in the hospital? ~ Yes, absolutely ....
6 I think he's a bad actor. ~ I agree – really ....
7 It's a very small car, isn't it? ~ Yes, absolutely ....
8 Were you surprised your brother was there? ~ Yes, really ....

TEST YOURSELF

B *-ed / -ing* adjectives

-ed / -ing adjectives	Examples	Meaning
amazed	*I was **amazed** at the quality of the dancing.*	very surprised, often in a positive way;
amazing	*(The quality of the dancing was **amazing**.)*	very surprising SYN **astonished; astonishing**
confused	*I was **confused** by the train timetable.*	unable to think clearly;
confusing	*(The train timetable was **confusing**.)*	not clear
disappointed	*I was **disappointed** with my exam results.*	upset because sth was not as good as you expected;
disappointing	....	upsetting
embarrassed	*I was **embarrassed** when I forgot his name.*	feeling uncomfortable because of sth stupid you have done;
embarrassing	....	making you feel uncomfortable
fascinated	*I was **fascinated** by the painter's use of colour.*	very interested;
fascinating	....	very interesting
frightened	*I was **frightened** watching that film.*	afraid, scared;
frightening	....	making you afraid/scared
relaxed	*I felt very **relaxed** on holiday.*	able to rest and not feel worried;
relaxing	....	making it possible to rest
worried	*I was **worried** when Kiko didn't arrive.*	unhappy because you think sth bad will happen or has happened;
worrying	....	making you unhappy

SPOTLIGHT the suffixes *-ed* and *-ing*

Adjectives that end with *-ed* describe feelings. Adjectives that end with *-ing* describe the person or thing that makes you have these feelings.

- *I was **bored** in the lesson.*
- *The lesson was **boring**.*
- *I'm **interested** in photography.*
- *Photography is **interesting**.*

4 **Circle the correct answer.**

▶ Some of the beaches on Corfu were absolutely *[✓ amazing] / amazed.*

1 I think everyone felt *relaxing / relaxed* at the party.

2 Marcel was a bit *confusing / confused* during the lesson.

3 The hotel didn't have a restaurant, which was rather *disappointing / disappointed.*

4 I was *astonishing / astonished* by his reaction.

5 I thought China was a *fascinating / fascinated* place to visit.

6 I think Jose felt a bit *embarrassing / embarrassed* about the cost of the meal.

7 We were all a bit *worrying / worried* when the storm started.

8 It was a bit *frightening / frightened* when the window got broken.

5 **Complete the dialogues with adjectives from the table.**

▶ Were you frightened?	~ Yes, absolutely terrified .
1 Did you know which direction you were going in?	~ No, I was a bit ....
2 You wore jeans to a formal party?!	~ Yes, I felt a bit ....
3 The weather was awful for the whole holiday.	~ Oh, that's very ....
4 Did you say you lost your passport in Australia?	~ Yes, it was very ....
5 It's hard to believe the children are only 8 or 9.	~ I know. They're ....
6 Were you afraid?	~ Yes, it was a bit ....
7 Do you like sitting in the sun?	~ Yes, I find it very ....
8 Was your father pleased with the hotel?	~ No, he was a bit .... , actually.

6 **In the table above there are two examples for the first two adjectives. Write a second example for the other adjectives.**

▶ *I was amazed at the quality of the dancing.* The quality of the dancing was amazing.

TEST YOURSELF

20 Adjectives (2): opposites

A Describing qualities

People have **mixed feelings** about the new city hotel. Here are some comments:

The rooms were **pleasant** but I didn't like the **artificial** flowers.

I quite like the **modern** design – simple but **effective.**

Most of the staff were **temporary,** but they seemed very good.

Our room was nice, but we thought the **public** areas were a bit dull.

They put chocolates in our room, which was very **unexpected.**

We were **pleased** our room was at the back, where it was quiet.

Being in the centre of town, it was very **convenient.**

GLOSSARY	
mixed feelings	both **positive (+)** and **negative (-)** feelings about sth
pleasant	(of a place) nice, attractive
artificial	made by people and used instead of sth natural OPP **real** OR **natural**
modern	of the present time OPP **old-fashioned**
effective	successful and giving the result you want OPP **ineffective**
temporary	only continuing for a short time OPP **permanent**
public	free for anybody to use OPP **private**
pleased	happy about a particular event or situation OPP **unhappy**
unexpected	If sth is **unexpected,** it surprises you because you didn't know it was going to happen. OPP **expected**
convenient	near to a place or easy to get to OPP **inconvenient**

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶ an old-fashioned f
1 mixed ....
2 a private ....
3 a temporary ....
4 an unexpected ....
5 natural ....
6 modern ....

a worker
b result
c party
d light
e architecture
f dress ✓
g feelings

2 Replace the underlined adjective with an opposite.

▶ I had negative feelings. positive
1 They had old-fashioned furniture. ....
2 It's a really convenient location. ....
3 I wanted to meet in a private place. ....
4 Is that real snow? ....
5 We were unhappy with the meal. ....
6 It was an effective method. ....
7 The visit was expected. ....
8 It's a temporary arrangement. ....

3 Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives.

▶ She's only a temporary member of staff. I think she's leaving next week.
1 I have .... feelings about working abroad: part of me wants to, but I'd miss my family.
2 The doctor gave me tablets for the pain, but they weren't very .... My back still hurts.
3 I was very .... with the decorators. They did a great job.
4 She wears clothes that make her look like something from the 1990s – they're very old ....
5 My sister's going to have a baby. It was completely .... , but we're all very happy about it.
6 My flat is very .... for the station – it's only a five-minute walk away.
7 A lot of people don't like .... art because they don't understand it.
8 Sometimes Ava is very positive, but she can also be quite ....
9 I had a temporary contract, but they've made it .... now, which is good.
10 My son hasn't worked hard so he isn't .... to pass the exam.

TEST YOURSELF

B Pairs of opposites

TELL US ABOUT YOU AND YOUR OPINIONS!

- Do you like books or films about **imaginary** worlds?
- Do you prefer wearing **baggy** jeans or **tight** jeans?
- Do you prefer **indoor** swimming pools or **outdoor** pools?
- Do you own anything which is **rare**?
- When you drive somewhere, do you always look for the most **direct** route?
- In English law, you are **innocent** until proven **guilty**. Do you agree with that idea?
- Is it always good to be a **careful** driver?
- What's the most **useful** piece of advice anyone has given you?

GLOSSARY	
imaginary	not real; only in your mind OPP **real**
baggy	If clothes are **baggy**, they are big and loose. OPP **tight**
indoor	done or used inside a building OPP **outdoor**
rare	If sth is **rare**, you do not find or see it often. OPP **common**
direct	as straight as possible, without turning or stopping OPP **indirect**
innocent	If you are **innocent**, you have not done anything wrong. OPP **guilty**
careful	thinking about what you are doing so that you do not make a mistake or have an accident OPP **careless**
useful	good and helpful for doing sth OPP **useless**

SPOTLIGHT adjectives ending in *-ful* and *-less*

Some adjectives are formed by adding *-ful* to the noun, with the meaning 'full of' or 'having a lot of', e.g. ***careful, useful, painful, powerful.*** The opposite is sometimes formed by adding *-less* (= without) to the noun, e.g. ***careless, useless, powerless*** and ***painless.*** This is not always true, e.g. ***wonderful*** (NOT ~~*wonderless*~~).

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ baggy / imaginary D
1 careful / rare ....
2 guilty / tight ....
3 common / wonderful ....
4 powerful / wonderful ....
5 imaginary / innocent ....
6 innocent / useless ....
7 useful / careful ....

5 Good news or bad news? Write *G* or *B*.

▶ We've got a real problem. B
1 He's got a rare illness. ....
2 The injection was painless. ....
3 It's a direct route. ....
4 This tin opener is useless. ....
5 They found her innocent. ....
6 They found her guilty. ....
7 The book was useful. ....

6 Replace the underlined word with an opposite.

▶ an indoor game an outdoor game
1 a tight shirt ....
2 a common mistake ....
3 a direct route ....
4 a powerful group ....
5 real people in a book ....
6 a careless driver ....
7 an innocent man ....

7 Complete the sentences.

▶ Will is a common name these days. I know lots of people called Will.
1 Mika needs to check his work more: he makes lots of .... mistakes.
2 This belt is very .... : it's difficult to breathe.
3 The teacher said that George stole the pen, but George says he's ....
4 It's not a very cold climate, so it's .... to have temperatures below zero degrees.
5 I want to take a .... train so that I get there as quickly as possible.
6 They found him .... of several crimes. He'll be in prison for four years.

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions at the top of the page, or talk to another student.

▶ Yes, I do – especially films, such as The Shape of Water.

TEST YOURSELF

21 Adverbs (1): degree and frequency

A Some other ways of saying 'very'

All the adverbs underlined below mean 'very', 'very much' or 'a lot'. They are used with particular adjectives or verbs.

Jack was **seriously injured** in a car accident.

It's **highly unlikely** the boys will get here on time – they're nearly always late.

The children were **terribly sorry** they couldn't come to the party.

It's **vitally important** to revise vocabulary you learn – otherwise you forget it.

I love Lucy, but she's **completely mad.**

This author's first book was **totally different** to this one.

I **strongly believe** that political party is wrong about immigration.

I **absolutely love** Chinese food.

My boss has **travelled widely** in Asia.

Prices have **risen sharply** in the last year.

GLOSSARY

seriously	badly and in a serious way: ***seriously injured/ill/damaged***
injured	If you are **injured**, your body is hurt, often from an accident.
highly	very, very much: ***highly likely/unlikely***
unlikely	If sth is **unlikely**, it probably will not happen. OPP **likely**
terribly	very: ***terribly sad/sorry***
vitally	extremely: ***vitally important***
mad *inf*	stupid, but sometimes in a funny way SYN **crazy**
strongly	in a way that shows serious opinions: ***strongly believe; feel strongly***
widely	in or to a lot of places: ***travel widely***
rise *pt* **rose** *pp* **risen**	go up; increase
sharply	suddenly and by a lot: ***rise/fall sharply***

SPOTLIGHT *completely, absolutely, totally*

Completely, absolutely and **totally** are used with a range of ungradable adjectives (see Unit 19).

- ***completely/absolutely/totally*** *unnecessary/sure*
- ***I completely/absolutely/totally*** *agree/understand.*

Sometimes we use **completely/totally** with certain adjectives, but not **absolutely**.

- ***completely/totally*** *wrong/different* (NOT ~~absolutely wrong/different~~)

1 Add a suitable adverb to each sentence.

▶ It's / important to go. vitally/terribly/highly
1 He's been ill. ....
2 I love his new musical. ....
3 That man is mad. ....
4 I feel we should change. ....
5 He's likely to move to another city. ....
6 It's a sad film. ....
7 It was unnecessary to do that. ....
8 My gas bill has risen. ....

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

▶ I absolutely love the music you hear in the street.
1 I think he's right. I completely .... with him.
2 Smoking can seriously .... your health.
3 I'm terribly .... I completely .... to bring my homework.
4 He .... widely when he was in South America.
5 We both .... strongly that the government should change its policy on forests.
6 I'm not totally .... that he knows what he's doing with that camera.
7 They're highly .... to be on holiday now – it's a normal working week.
8 My bag has completely .... Have you seen it anywhere?
9 The price of printing has .... sharply – that's fantastic news.

3 Replace *very* with a different adverb in each sentence.

▶ She's ~~*very*~~ sorry about the mistake. terribly
1 A good dictionary is *very* important. ....
2 It's *very* unlikely that he'll come. ....
3 He's been *very* ill. ....
4 It used to be quiet round here, but it's *very* different now. ....
5 A bigger flat is *very* unnecessary. ....
6 That story of the missing girl is *very* sad. ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Frequency and degree

Axel Do you and Mac still go to concerts **regularly**?

Harry No, we **rarely** see each other these days. The last time was **roughly** a year ago.

Axel Oh. Why's that?

Harry I **mainly** get about by bike, and that's too far to cycle.

Axel But you still go to concerts, don't you?

Harry No, not so **frequently** – I think I'm getting **slightly** old for rock concerts. **Generally**, I listen to music at home now.

Axel Don't you miss the excitement of live concerts?

Harry No, not really. I find the noise and hysteria **rather** annoying, actually.

GLOSSARY

regularly	happening quite often, with the same amount of space or time in between
rarely	not often SYN **seldom**
roughly	about, not exactly SYN **approximately**
mainly	mostly
frequently	often
slightly	a little SYN **a little bit**
generally	usually, most of the time SYN **on the whole**

SPOTLIGHT *quite, fairly, rather, pretty*

These words all mean 'not very; to a certain degree'. **Pretty** is more informal.

- *It's **quite** warm today.*
- *He's **fairly/rather** lazy.*
- *The film was **pretty** good.*

If you use **rather** with a positive adjective, you are often surprised and pleased.

- *It's a very cheap restaurant, but the food is **rather** good.*

4 Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ The town is mostly industrial. / The town is mainly industrial. S
1 They rarely work at weekends. / They regularly work at weekends. ....
2 Generally, it's very quiet here. / On the whole, it's very quiet here. ....
3 He's slightly ill. / He's seldom ill. ....
4 They seldom work late. / They rarely work late. ....
5 There were roughly 40. / There were generally 40. ....
6 The book was rather good. / The book was pretty good. ....

5 Replace the underlined word with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

▶ I go to the gym regularly. quite often
1 Generally, I walk into town if the weather's nice. ....
2 The students were mostly Italian. ....
3 There were roughly 30 people at the party. ....
4 The dictionary was quite useful. ....
5 We seldom go out during the week. ....
6 My family often get together for a meal. ....
7 I expected your sister to be short, but actually she's quite tall. ....
8 On the whole, the weather was quite good. ....

6 Cover the sentences in Exercises 5 and look at your answers. Write a synonym for each of your answers, then look at the sentences to see if you're right.

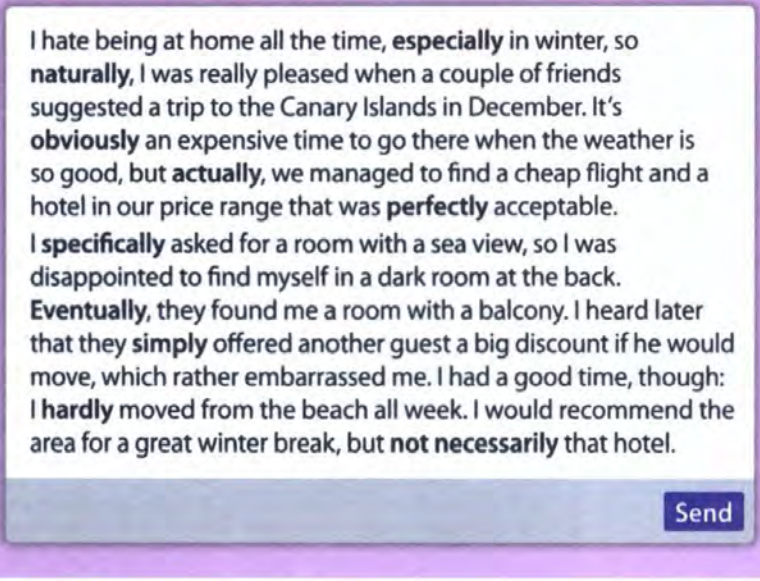
7 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers, or talk to another student.

▶ Something that you do frequently. I frequently go for a long walk on Sunday morning.
1 Something that is generally true for you. ....
2 Something that you rarely do now, but often did in the past. ....
3 Something that you do regularly. ....
4 Something you have seen or read recently that was pretty good. ....
5 Something that you have seen or read recently that was fairly boring. ....
6 Something that you find slightly annoying. ....

TEST YOURSELF

22 Adverbs (2): emphasizing and manner

A Emphasizing



I hate being at home all the time, **especially** in winter, so **naturally**, I was really pleased when a couple of friends suggested a trip to the Canary Islands in December. It's **obviously** an expensive time to go there when the weather is so good, but **actually**, we managed to find a cheap flight and a hotel in our price range that was **perfectly** acceptable.

I **specifically** asked for a room with a sea view, so I was disappointed to find myself in a dark room at the back. **Eventually**, they found me a room with a balcony. I heard later that they **simply** offered another guest a big discount if he would move, which rather embarrassed me. I had a good time, though: I **hardly** moved from the beach all week. I would recommend the area for a great winter break, but **not necessarily** that hotel.

GLOSSARY	
especially	more than usual or more than others SYN **particularly**
naturally	in a way that you expect SYN **of course**
obviously	in a way that is easy to see or understand SYN **clearly**
actually	a word you use to introduce a surprising fact SYN **in (actual) fact**
perfectly	completely
specifically	If you ask **specifically** for sth, you want one particular thing and not any others: *I **specifically** asked him to get brown bread, not white bread.*
eventually	after a long time, and often after some difficulty
simply	a word you use when you want to show how easy sth is; just
hardly	almost not; only just
not necessarily	possibly but not definitely or always true

1 Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ They were perfectly happy. / They were eventually happy. D

1 He was obviously keen to go. / He was clearly keen to go. ....
2 The food was actually quite good. / The food was naturally quite good. ....
3 The house is actually very nice. / In fact, the house is very nice. ....
4 The food was good, especially the fish. / The food was good, particularly the fish. ....
5 We eventually waited for them. / We specifically waited for them. ....
6 We hardly left the building. / We eventually left the building. ....
7 Naturally, everyone spoke English. / Of course, everyone spoke English. ....
8 You simply add sugar. / You obviously add sugar. ....

2 Complete the sentences.

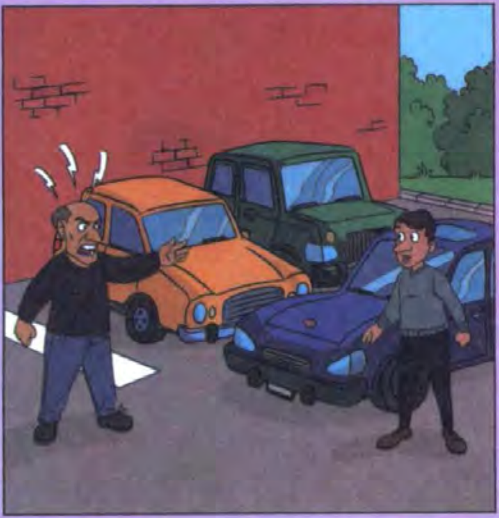
▶ It's easy to get cheap tickets: you simply need to book a month before you travel.
1 It took us about two hours, but .... we found the place.
2 Is it always busy? ~ Not .... It can be very quiet sometimes.
3 We loved all the animals we saw, but .... the elephants.
4 It was a very long day, so .... we were pretty tired by the end of it.
5 They told us entry was free, but .... we had to pay £10 each.
6 I .... asked the waiter if there were any nuts in the food because I have an allergy.
7 You don't look well. Are you OK? ~ Yes, I'm .... all right.
8 Maria is doing well. Last year she could .... speak a word of English.

3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

▶ We hadn't eaten all day, so naturally we were very hungry.
1 Marie was an hour late, so obviously I ....
2 He said he'd bought the car this year, but in actual fact he ....
3 I enjoy most Olympic sports, but especially ....
4 They said it was a ten-minute walk, but actually ....
5 With the snow in my face I could hardly ....
6 Ethan and Ed were a couple of hours late, but eventually ....
7 It's easy to get drinks from the machine. You simply ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Manner



He shouted at me **angrily** when I refused to move my car.

My parents are **happily** married.

Ollie's horse died **suddenly**, so we were all quite shocked.

When we left the house, it was raining **heavily.**

He spoke very **calmly** about his wartime experience, which was surprising.

The new marketing team are now working quite **effectively.**

She speaks very **clearly,** so I can understand most of what she says.

The photocopier isn't working **properly** – I must speak to the engineer.

Sofia completed her studies **successfully.** Now she wants a good job.

Brad always asks very **politely** if he wants something.

The meeting was **badly** organized.

They did everything very **secretly**, so nobody knew about it.

SPOTLIGHT adverbs of manner

Some adverbs tell you how something happens. They are often formed from the related adjective *-ly*.

polite/politely ***bad/badly*** ***angry/angrily***

They usually go after a verb, but can go before past participles.

- *I drove **carefully**.*
- *She spoke **quietly**.*
- *The food was **well** cooked.*

GLOSSARY

suddenly	quickly and when you do not expect it
heavily	a lot
calmly	in a way that shows you are not excited, nervous or upset
effectively	in a way that gives a positive result
clearly	in a way that is easy to see, hear or understand
properly	well or correctly
successfully	having got or done what you wanted
secretly	without other people knowing SYN **in secret**

4 ***Yes or No?***

▶ If somebody asks you a question politely, are you pleased? Yes

1 If it rains heavily and you haven't got an umbrella, are you pleased? ....

2 If something works effectively, are you angry? ....

3 If something happens suddenly, are you surprised? ....

4 If you do something successfully, are you pleased? ....

5 If you respond angrily, are you happy? ....

6 If something works properly, are you pleased? ....

7 If you do something secretly, do other people know about it? ....

8 If you hear something clearly, do you hear it well? ....

5 **Complete the sentences with a suitable adverb.**

▶ When I was a child, we lived happily.......... without mobile phones.

1 It was raining .... when we left the cinema.

2 The storm was a shock because it started so ....

3 Remember to speak .... so people can hear you and understand what you're saying.

4 They've got a new system, and it's working very .... , which is great.

5 It's incredible. My brother can carry on working .... when people around him are shouting.

6 He spoke very .... when he was leaving the room – he was so annoyed with his colleagues.

7 They organized the party .... , so it was a big surprise for their father.

8 That radio hasn't worked .... for ages: there's a buzzing noise all the time.

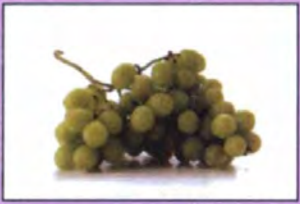
9 There was ice on the road so mum drove very ....

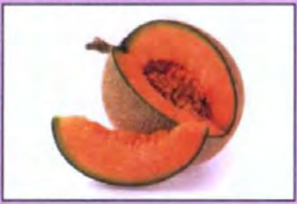
10 My essay was so .... written that my teacher told me to do it again.

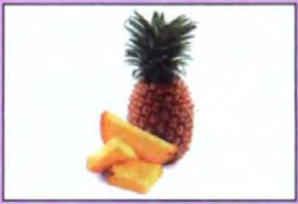
TEST YOURSELF

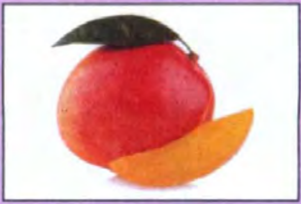
23 Fruit, vegetables and herbs

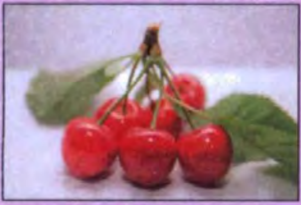
fruit

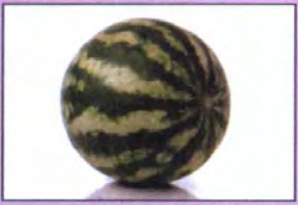

(a bunch of) grapes

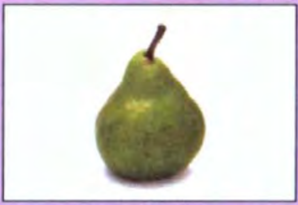

melon

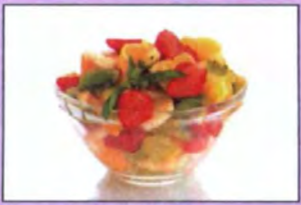

pineapple


mango

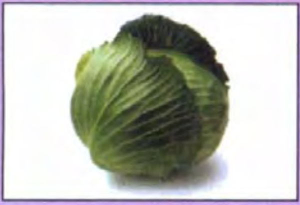

(a bunch of) cherries

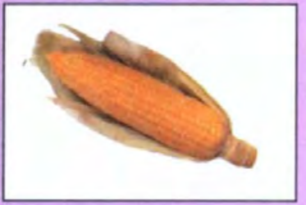

watermelon

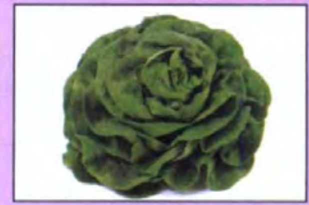

pear

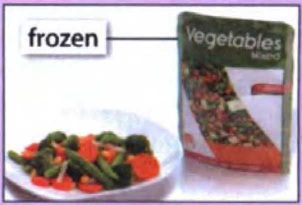

fruit salad

vegetables, salad and herbs

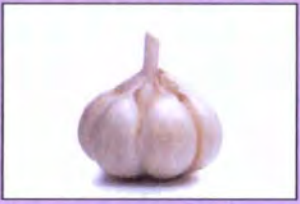

cabbage

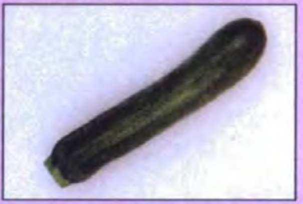

sweetcorn

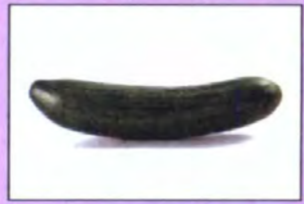

lettuce

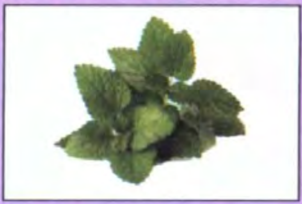


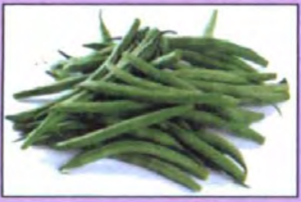
mixed vegetables (fresh or **frozen**)

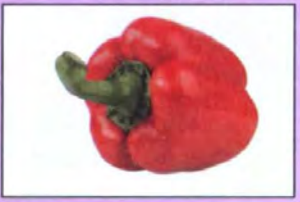

garlic

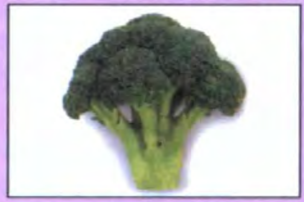

courgette

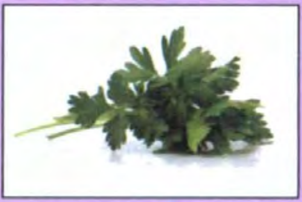

cucumber


mint


green beans
(ALSO **French beans**)


red pepper


broccoli


parsley

Mint and **parsley** are **herbs**.

1 **Cover the pictures. Tick the items that are usually green on the outside.**

▶ parsley ✓
1 cherries ....
2 green beans ....
3 lettuce ....
4 garlic ....
5 broccoli ....
6 watermelon ....
7 cucumber ....
8 cabbage ....
9 sweetcorn ....
10 mint ....
11 mango ....

2 **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ fruit salad / courgette D
1 cabbage / garlic ....
2 lettuce / cucumber ....
3 cucumber / bunch ....
4 melon / sweetcorn ....
5 mango / broccoli ....
6 parsley / garlic ....
7 courgette / vegetable ....
8 pear / herbs ....
9 beans / sweetcorn ....
10 pineapple / mixed vegetables ....
11 frozen / mango ....

3 **Circle the odd one out in each group. Write why they are different.**

▶ a) peach b) watermelon c) [✓ mint] d) pineapple A, b and d are types of fruit.
1 a) red pepper b) broccoli c) lettuce d) pear ....
2 a) garlic b) melon c) grapes d) fruit salad ....
3 a) cabbage b) green beans c) parsley d) cucumber ....
4 a) sweetcorn b) herbs c) courgette d) cabbage ....
5 a) mango d) pineapple c) bunch d) cherries ....

4 **Cover page 56 and complete the words.**

▶ p a r s l e y
1 m___ ___ ___n
2 c___ ___ ___a___e
3 w___term___l___n
4 g___ ___p___s
5 br___c___ ___l___
6 p___ ___ ___a___ ___ ___e
7 l___tt___ ___e
8 g___ ___ ___n b___ ___ ___s
9 m___ ___g___
10 c___ ___rg___ ___ ___e
11 s___ ___ ___tc___ ___ ___
12 c___ ___rr___ ___s
13 p___ ___rs
14 g___ ___l___c
15 r___d p___ ___ ___ ___r
16 c___c___m___ ___ ___

5 **Write the words in Exercise 4 in the correct column.**

FRUIT		VEGETABLES		
....	....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....	....
....				

6 **Which of the words in the table do people usually eat with their fingers?**

▶ pear, ...

7 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

Do you like these foods? If so, how often do you eat them?

grapes Yes, I like grapes and eat them a lot in the summer.
mint No, I don't like mint, and I never add it to anything I eat.
mixed vegetables ________
courgettes ________
watermelon ________
garlic ________
parsley ________
cherries ________
fruit salad ________
pears ________
sweetcorn ________
mango ________
frozen green beans ________

TEST YOURSELF

24 Containers and quantities

A Containers

a **tin of** crab

a **can of** fizzy drink

a **packet of** peanuts

a **packet of** cocoa powder

a **jar of** honey

a **carton of** juice

a **vase of** flowers

a **basket of** fruit

a **tube of** glue

GLOSSARY

container	a thing you can put other things in, e.g. a packet, a tin **contain** *v: The packet* ***contains*** *Italian biscuits.*
fizzy	(of a drink) containing many small **bubbles** (= balls of air or gas). A **fizzy drink** is a non-alcoholic sweet drink with bubbles in it.
powder	a dry substance like flour that is made of very small pieces: ***soap powder, chilli powder***
cocoa	a dark brown powder made from cocoa beans and used for making chocolate

SPOTLIGHT *tin and can*

In British English, we usually say **tin** when there is food inside, and we say **can** if it contains liquid (water, drinks, etc.).

- ***a tin of tuna/beans***
- ***a can of cola/beer***

1 Study the pictures for one minute, then cover them. Did you see these things? Write *Yes* or *No*.

▶ a jar of peanuts no
1 a tin of beans ....
2 a fizzy drink can ....
3 a packet of soap powder ....
▶ a carton of juice yes
4 a jar of jam ....
5 a tube of glue ....
6 a tin of crab ....
7 a can of cola ....
8 a vase of flowers ....
9 some containers ....
10 a basket of oranges ....

2 True or false? Write *T* or *F*. If the sentences are false, correct them.

▶ A jar is made of metal. F – It is made of glass.
1 Bees make honey. ....
2 A carton can contain liquids. ....
3 A fizzy drink doesn't contain bubbles. ....
4 Peanuts are kinds of containers. ....
5 You put apples in a vase. ....
6 A tin usually contains food. ....
7 You can eat soap powder. ....

3 Put the items in the correct column below. Some words can go in more than one column.

coffee ✓ beer milk tomatoes a fizzy drink crisps peanuts olives
toothpaste jam fruit juice tuna cola chilli powder glue flowers

CAN	TIN	CARTON	JAR	TUBE	PACKET	VASE
....	....	....	....	....	▶ coffee	....
....	....	....	....	....	....	
....	....		....		....	

4 Complete the shopping list.

▶ a tin of crab
a .... of milk (1 litre)
two .... of tuna
a .... of cocoa ....
a .... of toothpaste
a .... of raspberry jam

a large .... of crisps
a .... of fizzy ....
a .... of cola
a .... of peanuts
a .... of glue

TEST YOURSELF

B Quantities

a **slice of** bread

a **loaf of** bread

a **roll**

a **spoonful of** sugar

two **sheets of** paper

a couple of pens

several biscuits

a small **quantity of** oil

I **measured** the material. I needed **approximately** 2m (= **metres**), and it was **more or less** the right **length.** It **measured** 1.95 m.

I **weighed** the rice. I needed the **exact amount.** It **weighed** 404g. (= **grams**)

GLOSSARY

several	more than two, but not many
quantity	how much of sth that there is SYN **amount**
approximately	about, not exactly SYN **more or less**; **approximate** *adj*
exact	correct, accurate **exactly** *adv*
length	how long sth is

SPOTLIGHT transitive and intransitive verbs

Measure and **weigh** can be used transitively (= with an object) or intransitively (= without an object).

- *She **measured** the bed.* = She used a ruler to find out the size of the bed.
- *It **measured** 2 m by 1 m.* = The size of the bed was ...
- *I **weighed** the baby.* = I measured the baby to see how heavy it was.
- *The baby **weighed** 8 kg.* = The baby's weight was ...

5 Find the end of each word or phrase.

roll | severalamountweighlengthapproximateloafexactlyacoupleofmoreorless

6 Is the meaning the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ I bought several rolls. / I bought a few rolls. S
1 Did you measure yourself? / Did you weigh yourself? ....
2 I need two sheets of paper. / I need a couple of sheets of paper. ....
3 The picture measures 20 cm by 30cm. / The picture is 20 cm long and 30 cm wide. ....
4 We had a roll for lunch. / We had a slice of bread for lunch. ....
5 That car weighs exactly 2,000 kg. / That car weighs approximately 2,000 kg. ....
6 They had a large amount of money. / They had a large quantity of money. ....

7 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

▶ Could you let me have a / of paper? sheet
1 The room approximately 4 metres by 3 metres. ....
2 I only take one of sugar in my coffee, thanks. ....
3 Sergio Aguero is 1.7 m tall, or less. ....
4 There are a of men standing outside. Oh, it's Yusuf and Omer! ....
5 He had a sandwich with two of ham in it and a tomato. ....
6 Could you buy a small of bread at the supermarket? Thanks. ....
7 We only need a small of butter to make this cake. ....
8 The height of Burg Khalifa in Dubai is 828 m – no more and no less. ....
9 I think there were 30 people at the meeting, but I didn't count them. ....
10 What is the of an Olympic swimming pool? ~ I think it's 50 m. ....

TEST YOURSELF

25 Cooking

A Advice for cooks

- **Recipes** aren't always perfect, but the most important thing is to have good **ingredients** and **plenty of flavour**.
- Develop your **skills** and learn to **slice** vegetables in the **proper** way. Always **invest in** good quality knives, and keep them **sharp**.
- You **have a responsibility to** look after people who are **dieting** to **lose weight**, or who **are on a** special **diet**.

GLOSSARY

recipe	a set of instructions that tells you how to cook sth
ingredient	one of the items of food you need to make sth to eat
plenty of sth	a large amount; as much of sth as you need
flavour	how food or drink tastes
skill	the ability to do sth well, especially when you have practised it
slice	cut meat, vegetables, bread, etc. into thin, flat pieces
proper	right, suitable or correct
invest in sth	buy sth, especially sth that you will need and use a lot
sharp	with an edge or point that cuts or makes holes easily OPP **blunt**
responsibility	sth that you must do to look after sb or sth, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong

SPOTLIGHT *diet*

A person's **diet** is the food they eat. It can be a **balanced diet** (all the right food the body needs), or a **bad diet** (too much of the wrong food). Some people **diet, go on a diet** or **are on a diet**, which means eating less to **lose weight**.

1 Good or bad? Write *G* or *B*.

▶ a sharp knife G
1 a balanced diet ....
2 plenty of water ....
3 blunt scissors ....
4 you have skills ....
5 the proper knife for the job ....
6 not much flavour ....
7 fresh ingredients ....
8 a sharp pencil ....

2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase from the box.

have a responsibility to ‍ sliced ✓ ‍ invest in ‍ lose weight ‍ proper
flavour ‍ a recipe ‍ skills ‍ go on a diet

▶ The bread was cut into thin pieces. sliced
1 If you want to get thinner, don't eat sugar. ....
2 I'll make a lasagne, but I need cooking instructions. ....
3 You'll need a frying pan, so buy yourself a good one. ....
4 As a parent, you have to feed your children healthily. ....
5 Do you know how to slice salmon in the correct way? ....
6 Do you have the ability and knowledge to cook in a restaurant? ....
7 I'm going to stop eating food that makes me fat ....
8 I don't like the taste of this sauce. ....

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word. ABOUT YOU

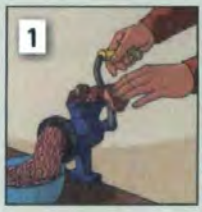
▶ I think diets are a very bad idea. ....
1 You need great cooking .... to work in a local family restaurant. ....
2 It's very important to cook chicken ...., or it can be bad for you. ....
3 I use a lot of .... when I'm cooking. ....
4 I don't usually use a .... – I prefer to cook my own way. ....
5 I eat a very balanced .... with a lot of fresh food. ....
6 I drink .... of water. It's good for you. ....
7 I like food with a strong ....

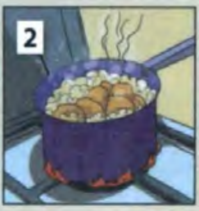
4 ABOUT YOU Are sentences 3–7 in Exercise 3 true for you? Write *Yes* or *No*, or tell another student.

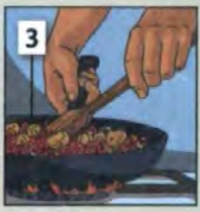
TEST YOURSELF

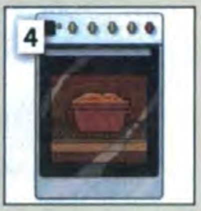
B Cooking

Recipe for Cottage pie









Ingredients

300g **minced**[1] beef
300g potatoes
1 large onion
1 carrot
2-3 chopped tomatoes
300 ml beef **stock**
1 large spoonful of **flour**
butter, salt and pepper

Method

First **boil** the potatoes in a **pan**[2] until just cooked. **Mash** them with butter.

Chop the onion and carrot. Then, **fry**[3] the meat quickly **along with** the vegetables, **add** the flour and cook for a minute.

Add the stock, tomatoes, salt and pepper, and let it all cook slowly for 20 minutes.

Put it in a large dish and cover with the mashed potato and some butter. **Bake**[4] in a hot oven for 20 minutes.

GLOSSARY	
stock	water with added flavour of meat, fish or vegetables
flour	a soft white or brown powder used in making bread, cakes, etc.
method	a way of doing sth
boil	cook sth in water, usually in a **pan/saucepan**[2]
mash	press and mix food to make it soft
chop	cut sth, e.g. onions, carrots, etc. into pieces with a knife **chopped** *adj*
fry	cook sth in oil, usually in a **frying pan**[3]
along with sth	in addition to sth SYN **together with sth**
add	put sth together with sth else
bake	cook sth in the oven without oil or fat (with oil or fat = **roast**)

5 Which word is being defined?

▶ use a machine to cut meat into very small pieces ......mince......
1 cut into many pieces ....
2 put something with another thing ....
3 press and mix until soft and smooth ....
4 cook in water ....
5 cook in the oven without oil or fat ....
6 cook in the oven with oil or fat ....
7 a liquid with added flavour used in soups ....
8 a container that you boil food in ....
9 a way of doing something ....

6 Complete the words in each sentence.

I made a lovely fish soup the other day. First, I made some ▶ stock............ with fish bones. I **(1)** c............ some tomatoes and peppers, and then **(2)** f............ some onions, along **(3)** w............ some garlic in a little olive oil. I put all this **(4)** t............ with the stock in a big **(5)** p............ . I then **(6)** a............ salt and pepper and cooked it gently for half an hour – you mustn't let it **(7)** b............ . Finally, I put some pieces of fish in the **(8)** f............ pan and cooked them for a couple of minutes, then put these in the soup. Delicious!

This is a very simple **(9)** m............ of making a pasta sauce using **(10)** m............ beef, onions, garlic and tomatoes. Put some oil in a large **(11)** s............ and **(12)** f............ the beef until it's brown. Move it to another dish while you cook the vegetables. Finally, put it all together and add some **(13)** s............ and wine. Cook it slowly for about 45 minutes.

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Complete with food that is typical in your country.**

1 minced ......beef, lamb, pork......
2 fried ....
3 roast ....
4 boiled ....
5 baked ....
6 mashed ....

TEST YOURSELF

26 Shopping

A Spending habits

YOUR SPENDING HABITS

- Do you usually try to buy **goods** that are **reduced** in price?
- If there is something wrong with the goods, do you ask for a **discount**?
- Do people who sell goods in markets ever **charge** you too much money?
- Do you ever buy **used** goods online?
- Have you ever **placed an order** for anything very **valuable** online?
- Do you ever feel that what you have bought is not **worth** the money you paid?

GLOSSARY

goods *pl*	things that you buy and sell
reduce	make sth less or smaller in quantity, price, size, etc: ***reduce the price of sth***
discount	money that sb takes off the price of sth to make it cheaper: ***get/ask for a discount***
charge (sb for sth)	ask sb to pay a certain price for sth **charge** *n*
used	sth that has belonged to another person before SYN **second-hand**
order	a request asking for sth to be sent: ***place an order***; **order** *v*
valuable	worth a lot of money **value** *n*; *What's the **value** of that ring?*

SPOTLIGHT *worth*

1 having a particular value:
*The ring cost £200, but in fact it's **worth** £2,000.*

2 used as a way of recommending or advising. **Worth** is usually followed by a noun or an *-ing* form:
*The local market is **worth a visit**.*
*It's **not worth** asking Anna for money: she hasn't got any.*

1 **In each sentence, one word is missing, or there is one word too many. Correct them.**

▶ He charged me / the petrol. for
1 What the watch worth? ....
2 They reduced down the price. ....
3 We placed order for a new car. ....
4 Did she charge to you for the coffee? ....
5 I bought a second-of-hand car. ....
▶ I got ~~for~~ a discount. ....
6 I ordered to some new glasses. ....
7 We asked a discount. ....
8 Is the market worth to seeing? ....
9 There was no for drinks: they were free. ....

2 **Rewrite the questions using the words in capital letters. The meaning must stay the same.**

▶	What's the car worth?	VALUE	What 's the value of the car ?
1	Did you ask him to take some money off the coat?	REDUCE	Did .... ?
2	Is the furniture worth a lot?	VALUABLE	Is .... ?
3	Were the things you bought expensive?	GOODS	Were .... ?
4	Is the car second-hand?	USED	Is it .... ?
5	Did you order the new printer this morning?	PLACE	Did you .... ?
6	What's the value of Julio's flat?	WORTH	What .... ?
7	Did they ask you to pay for the repairs?	CHARGE	Did .... ?
8	Did the shop assistant bring the price down?	DISCOUNT	Did .... ?

3 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questionnaire at the top of the page, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Making complaints

I had to **make a complaint** last week about a kitchen **gadget** that I bought in town. When I got home it didn't **work** properly, so I **took it back** to the shop and asked for a **refund**. As I didn't have the **receipt**, the manager refused, but said that he would **exchange** it for another one.

I ordered a **set** of glasses online, but when the **package** was **delivered**, two of the glasses were broken. I **sent them back** and the company sent me a new set immediately.

SPOTLIGHT *take/send something back*

take sth back return to a shop with sth because you are not happy with it:

- *I'm going to **take** these shoes **back** to the shop. They're uncomfortable.*

send sth back return sth by post because you are not happy with it:

- *She **sent** the shirt **back** to the seller and asked for a refund.*

GLOSSARY

complaint	When you **make a complaint**, you say that you do not like sth or are not happy with it. **complain** *v*
gadget	a small machine or useful tool
work	If a machine **works**, it goes correctly or does what it should do.
refund	money that is paid back to you because you are not happy with the goods you bought, or you have paid too much **refund** *v*
receipt	a piece of paper or an electronic document that shows you have paid for sth
exchange sth (for sth)	give one thing and get another thing for it
set	a group of things of the same kind that belong together: ***a set of** keys*
package	sth that is wrapped in paper, cardboard or plastic **parcel**
deliver	take goods, letters, etc. to the person they have been sent to

4 Circle the correct word.

▶ I made a ***complain /*** [✓ ***complaint***] in the market about the quality of the fruit.
1 The computer keyboard doesn't ***deliver / work*** very well.
2 When did they deliver the ***receipt / package***?
3 The shop is quite near here, so I'll ***take / send*** the phone back.
4 I had to ***complain / complaint*** about the service. It was terrible.
5 The postman ***refunded / delivered*** the parcel this morning.
6 Leo's got a complete ***parcel / set*** of Harry Potter books – all seven of them.
7 The customer ***exchanged / complained about*** the goods.
8 This ***gadget / parcel*** doesn't work very well. I'll have to send it back.

5 Complete the dialogues.

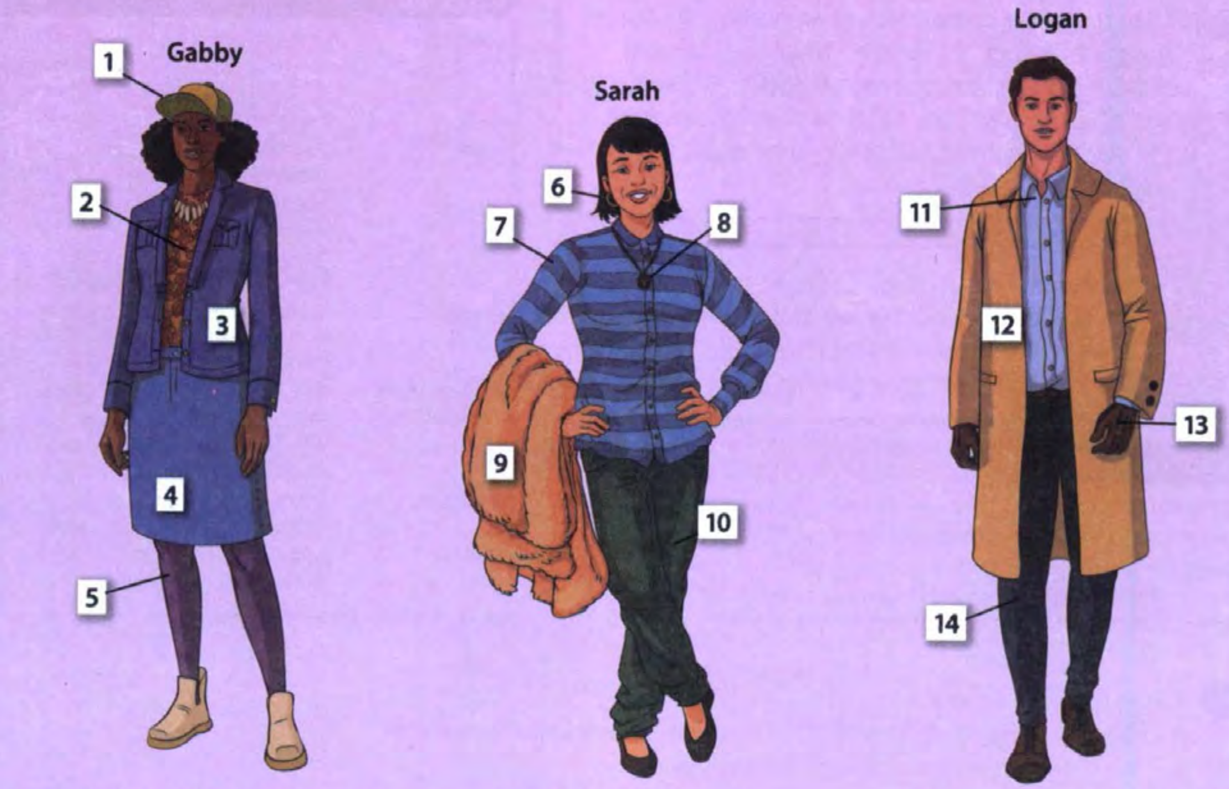
▶	Can you prove you bought the jeans there?	~ No, I haven't got a receipt .
1	Has the postman come with your parcel yet?	~ Yes, it was .... this morning.
2	Are there six knives and forks in the box?	~ Yes, it's a complete ....
3	What does Molly want for her birthday?	~ Oh, some electronic .... for editing photos.
4	Could you turn the heater on, please?	~ I'm sorry, it isn't ....
5	Did you say you were unhappy with the service?	~ Yes, actually I've made a ....
6	Did you return the package to the seller?	~ Yes, I've ....
7	Did you ask for your money back?	~ I did, and the seller has given me a ....
8	Did you take the jeans back to the shop?	~ Yes, and they .... them for a bigger size.

6 ABOUT YOU True or false? Write *T* or *F*. If false, change the sentences to make them true for you.

▶ Some of my gadgets don't work properly. F – I only have a few gadgets and they work OK.
1 I've never made a complaint in a shop. ....
2 I always take goods back if I'm not happy with them. ....
3 I've got a lot of gadgets, but they aren't always useful. ....
4 I always lose receipts when I buy things. ....
5 I don't like having to ask for a refund. ....
6 If I buy something online, it's always delivered very quickly. ....

TEST YOURSELF

27 Clothing



Gabby's *dressed in* casual clothes.

1	**cap**
2	**patterned** top **pattern** *n*
3	**wool/woollen** jacket
4	**denim** skirt
5	**coloured tights**

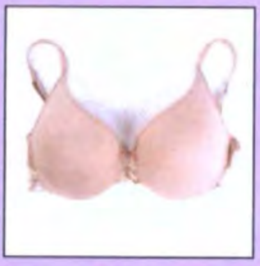
Sarah's *got* earrings *on*.

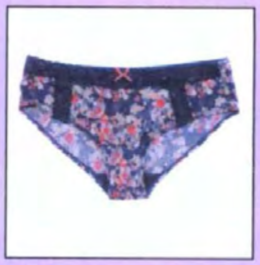
6	**earrings**
7	**a striped cotton blouse** **stripe** *n*
8	**necklace**
9	**fur** jacket
10	**baggy trousers**

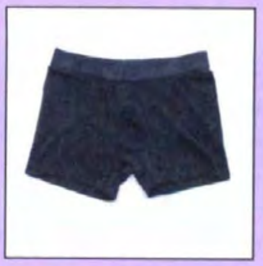
Logan's *got* gloves *on*.

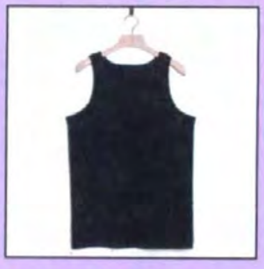
11	**a plain** shirt
12	**raincoat**
13	**gloves**
14	**tight** jeans

underwear [U]:


1 **bra**


2 **knickers** *pl*


3 **underpants** *pl* / **pants** *pl inf*


4 **vest**

SPOTLIGHT getting dressed and wearing clothes

have/have got sth on be wearing sth:
- *Gabby **has / has got** a cap **on**.*

be dressed (in sth) wearing clothes of a particular type or colour:
- *Sarah**'s dressed in** brown.*

get dressed put your clothes on:
- *Sarah **got dressed** quickly this morning.* OPP **get undressed**

do sth up fasten a jacket, blouse, etc.:
- *Sarah **did** her blouse **up**.* OPP **undo sth**

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ undo / wool D
1 earrings / underwear ......
2 tight / stripe ......
3 gloves / coloured ......
4 plain / patterned ......
5 pants / bra ......
6 knickers / necklace ......
7 fur / underpants ......

2 Complete the words.

▶ kn i ck e rs
1 __ nd __ rw __ __ r
2 ti __ __ ts
3 d __ __ __ m
4 bl __ __ se
5 pa __ __ er __
6 w __ __ l
7 v __ __ t
8 r __ __ nc __ __ t
9 pl __ __ n
10 ba __ __ y

3 Cover the words on page 64 and look at the pictures. True or false? Write *T* or *F*. If false, correct the sentences.

▶ Gabby's wearing earrings. F – Sarah's wearing earrings.
1 Logan's got a cap on. ......
2 Gabby's dressed in coloured tights. ......
3 Sarah's wearing a blouse with stripes on. ......
4 Gabby's got a patterned woollen jacket on. ......
5 Gabby's wearing denim jeans. ......
6 Logan's dressed in jeans and a raincoat. ......
7 Sarah's dressed in tight trousers. ......
8 Logan's wearing a plain shirt. ......
9 Sarah's wearing a necklace. ......
10 Sarah's got a fur jacket on. ......

4 Complete the sentences.

▶ You can have a fur or a wool jacket.
1 If it's wet outside, you will need to put your ...... on.
2 Trousers can be tight or ....
3 Tights can be black, skin colour or ....
4 You can do your jacket up or ...... it.
5 You can take your clothes off or ....
6 A blouse can be ...... (with no design), or ...... (e.g. ......).
7 If you ...... gloves on, it means you're wearing them.
8 If you're ...... in white, it means you're wearing white.
9 A woman usually wears a ...... and ...... under her clothes, and sometimes a ....
10 A man usually wears ...... under his trousers, and if it's cold, he might have a ...... on.

5 Complete the questions with words from the box.

underwear denim tight necklace woollen cap ✓
raincoat undressed earrings fur plain dressed

ABOUT YOU

▶ Do you ever wear a cap ? If so, when and why? ......
1 In the spring, do you wear cotton or ...... jumpers? ......
2 When you get ...... in the morning, what do you put on first? ......
3 Do you prefer baggy jeans or ...... jeans? ......
4 How many pairs of ...... jeans have you got? ......
5 Where you do buy your ...... (e.g. knickers or pants)? ......
6 Have you ever owned a ...... jacket or coat? ......
7 Are you wearing any jewellery today, e.g, a ...... or ...... ? ......
8 Is it wet enough in your country to wear a ...... a lot? ......
9 Do you prefer patterned socks or ...... socks? ......
10 When you get ...... at night, what do you take off first? ......

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 5, or ask another student.

TEST YOURSELF

28 Fashion

A Fashion advice

THREE GOLDEN RULES for fashion

Fashion experts say that every **stylish** woman should have a 'capsule wardrobe' – a set of a few **essential** items for every **occasion.** The main **elements** are: a little black dress, the perfect jeans, a leather handbag, a fine wool jumper, white shirt, black skirt, etc. Being stylish is about what **suits** you and your body shape. Here are three golden rules:

- Spend as much as possible on the essential items (your capsule wardrobe) and don't worry too much about **fashionable** clothes. Buy good quality **brands** whenever you can.
- Choose safe colours: black, cream, white and dark blue. These look **smart**, and are easy to **match**.
- A simple **outfit** can be improved with the **latest** bags and accessories.

GLOSSARY	
stylish	attractive and fashionable **style** *n*
essential	completely necessary
occasion	a time when sth happens; a special time
element	one important part of sth
suit	If something **suits** you, it looks good on you.
brand	one or more products sold under a particular name, e.g. Nike, Zara
smart	wearing clean, tidy and fashionable clothes
match	If one thing **matches** another, or if two things **match**, they are the same or similar, and look good together.
outfit	a set of clothes that you wear together
latest	new or very recent

SPOTLIGHT *fashion* and *fashionable*

Fashion means a popular style of clothes or hair, at a particular time or place. Clothes can be **in fashion** (= popular now) or **out of fashion** (= unpopular now).

- *Long skirts are **in fashion** now. Long hair has **gone out of fashion**.*
  fashionable *adj* OPP **unfashionable**

1 Circle the correct answer.

▶ I don't like the [✓ *style*] / *fashion* of these boots. They look very ugly.
1 You should buy that blouse – it ***suits / matches*** your skirt.
2 She wore a very ***fashionable / stylish*** jacket but it looked awful.
3 I need to get a new ***element / outfit*** for my brother's wedding.
4 This coat is the latest ***brand / fashion***, but I don't particularly like it.
5 I think that dress really ***matches / suits*** you.
6 A good pair of boots is an ***essential / unfashionable*** part of your capsule wardrobe.

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ Jamelia never wears red – it doesn't suit her.
1 I bought this sweater because it .... my blue skirt.
2 I'd love to be like Maria; she looks so .... whatever she wears.
3 I want a pair of those trousers – they're the .... fashion.
4 I need a new outfit for the ceremony. It's a very important ....
5 Is there a .... of trainers that you usually wear? ~ Yes, Adidas.
6 People used to wear big sunglasses, but they're .... these days.
7 What are the most important .... of a capsule wardrobe?

3 Complete the sentence on the right so that it means the same as the sentence on the left.

▶ Lou's birthday was a happy special day.	Lou's birthday was a happy occasion .
1 This is an item I really need.	This is an .... item.
2 Her bag's the same colour as her shoes.	Her bag .... her shoes.
3 People don't wear denim jackets now.	Denim jackets are ....
4 These boots are the latest fashion.	These boots are .... at the moment.
5 Her clothes are so attractive and fashionable.	Her clothes are very ....
6 I need a new skirt and jacket for work.	I need a new .... for work.

TEST YOURSELF

B Attitudes to fashion

I don't understand why people buy such **poor quality** items of clothing, wear them a few times and then throw them away. It's terrible for the environment.

I hate the fashion **trade.** I read somewhere that companies can sell a dress for £5, but they don't make any **profit.** They're just **aiming to attract** more **consumers** to their websites so that they'll spend more money.

My brother's a fashion **designer**, but I think **designer labels** are **a waste of money.** I just shop in **high street** stores and I only buy **casual** clothes.

GLOSSARY	
poor quality	being cheap and not well made (NOT ~~bad quality~~) OPP **high/good quality**
trade	a particular type of business: ***the fashion/building/tourist trade*** **trade** *v*
profit	money that you get when you sell sth for more than it costs to buy or make
aim to do sth	try or plan to do sth
attract	make sb/sth come to you or a particular place
consumer	a person who buys or uses sth
designer	sb whose job is to make drawings to show how sth will be made **designer** *adj*
label	a piece of paper attached to sth that gives information about it, e.g. the price, the designer's name: ***a designer label*** **label** *v*
a waste of money	a situation in which money is not spent in a good or useful way **waste** ***v***
the high street	the main street in a town where most shops, banks, etc. are
casual	not formal

4 **Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ profit

1 casual
2 designer
3 attract
4 quality
5 label
6 consumer

5 **Complete the texts.**

I know that I ▶ waste .... a lot of money on clothes, but I love going shopping in the **(1)** .... street. I really love **(2)** .... like Ralph Lauren and Tommy Hilfiger; I always try to buy good **(3)** .... clothes that will last a long time. I have to wear smart outfits for work and even wear them at the weekend, so I don't really have any **(4)** .... clothes, apart from a pair of jeans.

A British company selling trainers have made an enormous **(5)** .... of over £90 million this year. They aim to **(6)** .... more young people with special offers on big brands. I don't understand why these designer **(7)** .... are so popular, though.

6 **Complete the sentences.**

ABOUT YOU

▶ Giorgio Armani is my favourite fashion ▶ designer ....
1 I don't wear formal outfits very often. I tend to wear .... clothes. ....
2 I think .... are changing their habits and spending less on clothes. ....
3 I always .... to recycle clothes as much as possible. ....
4 A lot of clothes in the shops are very poor .... these days. ....
5 The fashion .... is very important to the economy of my country. ....
6 Expensive trainers are a waste of ....

7 ABOUT YOU **Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 6? Write your answers, or tell another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

29 Illness and accidents

A Symptoms

1

have a temperature

2

cough

3

a sore throat

The chemist asked me about my **symptoms. I had a high temperature**[1], as well as a **cough**[2] and a **sore throat**[3], plus my neck was very **painful.**

I ate some fish which didn't taste good, and it gave me **an upset stomach.**

I went to see my doctor for a **check-up** because I felt extremely tired and **lacked** energy. **At times** I felt **confused**, and my husband thought I looked very **pale** too.

GLOSSARY

symptom	sth that shows you have an illness
check-up	a general examination by a doctor to see if you are healthy
lack	If you **lack** sth, you have none, or you don't have enough of it. **lack** *n a* ***lack of*** *energy/time/money*
at times	sometimes, but not often
confused	not able to think clearly
pale	with not much colour in your face, perhaps because you are ill
an upset stomach	an illness in the stomach that makes you sick or needing to go to the toilet very often

SPOTLIGHT *sore* and *painful*

If a part of your body is **sore**, it hurts, especially because of infection or too much exercise.

- *a* ***sore throat***
- *My feet are* ***sore*** *after walking all day.*

If something is **painful**, it hurts or gives you **pain**. OPP **painless**.

- *My back was* ***painful.***
- *It was a* ***painful*** *injury.*

① **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ symptom / think S
1 throat / confused ....
2 upset / stomach ....
3 stomach / lunch ....
4 pale / painful ....
5 sore / door ....
6 cough / enough ....
7 temperature / check-up ....
8 throat / board ....

② **Circle the correct word.**

▶ Do you have a *big* / [✓ *high*] temperature?
1 The little girl looked very ***pale / painful***. I think she was quite ill.
2 I don't feel well if I have a ***lack / lot*** of sleep.
3 My grandfather's memory isn't so good, and he's often a bit ***confused / painful.***
4 Most people feel tired and have no energy at ***time / times.***
5 Some types of cheese can give me an ***unhappy / upset*** stomach.
6 People sometimes make a lot of noise when they have a ***sore throat / cough.***
7 Danni spoke to the doctor about her ***symptoms / energy***, such as feeling tired all the time.

③ **Complete the words in the questions.**

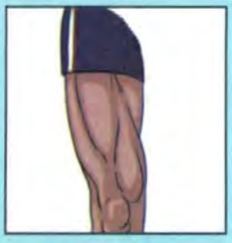
ABOUT YOU

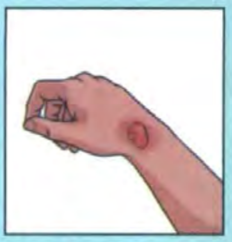
▶ Do you look pale................ if you are very cold? ....
1 Do you l........................ energy early in the morning? ....
2 Do you know what the s........................ of flu are? ....
3 Is any part of your body p........................ at the moment? ....
4 Is there any kind of food that gives you an u........................ stomach? ....
5 What do you do if you have a s........................ throat? ....
6 If you have a high t........................, what do you do about it? ....
7 When you've got a cold, do you often get a c........................ as well? ....
8 Do you ever feel c........................ when you wake up suddenly? ....
9 When did you last go for a c........................ at the doctor's? ....

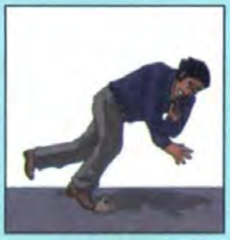
④ ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

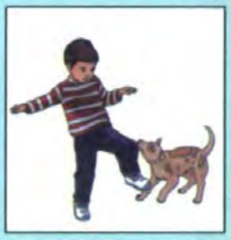
TEST YOURSELF

B Injuries and emergencies


muscles


burn *n, v*
(*pt/pp* **burnt**)


trip (over)


bite *v, n*
(*pt* **bit** *pp* **bitten**)

Have you ever …

injured a **muscle**[1] by doing too much exercise?

suffered from a serious **burn**[2]?

tripped over[3] and broken a bone?

been **bitten**[4] by a dog or cat?

accidentally eaten something **poisonous**?

had a bad **reaction to** milk or cheese?

had **bleeding** from your nose or ear?

GLOSSARY

injure	hurt yourself or sb else, especially in an accident **injured** *adj* **injury** *n*	**poisonous**	Something **poisonous** will make you very ill or kill you if you eat or drink it. **poison** *n, v*
suffer from sth	feel pain, sadness or another bad feeling	**reaction**	If you **have a reaction to** sth you have eaten or drunk, it makes you ill.
accidentally	in a way that was not planned or intended SYN **by accident** *I hit him* ***by accident.***	**bleeding**	losing blood from your body **bleed** *v* (*pt/pp* **bled**)

5 True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ You have muscles in your arms. T
1 A burn is a type of injury. ....
2 You can't suffer from a headache. ....
3 A bite is not painful. ....
4 You press hard on a bad cut to stop the bleeding. ....
5 People trip over by accident. ....
6 You can have a bad reaction to certain medicines. ....
7 Poison is good for you. ....
8 If you do something accidentally, you want to do it. ....

6 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

▶ Julia had a very bad / to the drugs the doctor recommended. reaction
1 I over in the street and hurt my knees. ....
2 The boy was from a nasty cut on his arm. ....
3 Potatoes are when they go green, and they can make you ill. ....
4 Nobody was killed, but three people were in the accident. ....
5 My sister has from a serious illness all her life. ....
6 I was by a cat when I was young, so I don't go near them now. ....
7 I need to do exercises to make the in my arms stronger. ....
8 The fire started by and three people were badly burnt. ....

7 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questionnaire at the top of the page, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

30 Hospital

X-ray

scan

operation

patient

Going into hospital

	go into hospital go for treatment and stay there for a night or more **go to (the) hospital** go there for treatment, but not stay in **go to the hospital** go as a visitor
• You go to your doctor feeling very **unwell**.	**unwell** not well; ill
• She **examines** you, and **arranges** for you to see a **consultant**.	**examine** look carefully at sb or sth to see if there is anything wrong **arrange** organize or plan sth **consultant** a senior doctor in a hospital who knows a lot about a particular medical subject
• You may have **tests, X-rays**[1], or **scans**[2] and the nurses may take blood **samples**.	**test** a medical examination on part of your body, e.g. an **eye test**, a **blood test** **sample** a small amount of sth that is looked at, tested, examined, etc. to find out what the rest is like
• The consultant decides how to **treat** you.	**treat** give medical help to make sb better **treatment** *n*
• You may **have an operation**[3] immediately if it is an **emergency**.	**operation** In an **operation**, the doctor cuts open the body **(operates)** to take out or repair a damaged part. **emergency** a sudden dangerous situation when sb needs help quickly
• The consultant explains the **benefits** and **risks** to you, the **patient**[4].	**benefit** sth that has a good or helpful result **risk** a danger that sth bad may happen
• After the operation, nurses **care for** you while you **recover**.	**care for sb** look after sb SYN **take care of sb** **recover from sth** become well after you have been ill SYN **get over sth**
• The operation is **successful**.	**successful** If sth is **successful**, it has gone well.
• When you are **well enough**, you can go home to recover completely.	

SPOTLIGHT *enough*

You can use ***enough*** after adjectives and adverbs. It means as much or as many as you need. In negative sentences, it means less than you need.

- *He's* ***strong enough*** *to get up.* = He has the strength he needs to get up.
- *She's* ***not well enough*** *to go out.* = She needs to feel better before she can go out.

You can also use ***enough*** before uncountable and plural nouns.

- *I've got* ***enough*** *money.* = I've got all the money I need.
- *There* ***aren't enough*** *doctors.* = We need more doctors.

① Complete the table with the words below according to their stress patterns. Use the APP to help you. Pratise saying the words.

recover ✓ treatment benefit unwell get over operate patient
sample arrange successful hospital consultant enough take care of

decide	doctor	remember		personal
....	....	▶ recover	....	....
....	....	....	....	....
....	....	....		....

② Circle the correct answer.

▶ The [✓ *patient*] / *nurse* has the operation.
1 The *consultant / patient* goes into hospital.
2 The *consultant / patient* arranges the tests.
3 The *consultant / patient* may have to have an X-ray.
4 The *nurse / patient* may take a blood sample.
5 The *doctor / patient* may need treatment as an emergency.
6 The *doctor / patient* explains the benefits of the treatment.
7 The *patient / nurse* cares for the person after the operation.
8 The *consultant / patient* gets over the operation.
9 The *nurse / patient* is strong enough to leave hospital.

③ Which words are being defined?

▶ a person who is ill and having medical treatment patient..........
1 give sb medical help to make them better ....
2 a danger that sth bad might happen ....
3 sth that has a good or helpful result ....
4 look after sb, especially if they are ill ....
5 a small amount of sth that shows what the rest is like ....
6 a sudden situation where sb needs help ....
7 ill ....
8 photos or pictures of the inside of a body ....
9 cut sb's body open to repair sth or take out a part ....
10 getting the result you want ....

④ Complete the words in the text.

A Hi, Safieh. How are you?
B Well, I'm a bit worried, actually. I've just been to the ▶ hospital.......... to see a consultant about my eye. He **(1)** e.................... me to see what was wrong, and then arranged for some **(2)** t.................... too. I've got a problem at the back of my eye, and I need to have an **(3)** o.................... .
A Oh, dear. Is it **(4)** an e.................... ?
B Yes, I have to have it done immediately – in fact, I've got to go **(5)** i.................... hospital tomorrow.
A And are there any **(6)** r.................... with the treatment?
B I don't think so. It's quite a simple operation, and it's usually very **(7)** s.................... : 98% of people can see better afterwards.
A And when will you be well **(8)** e.................... to start work again?
B He said I'll need a week to **(9)** g.................... o.................... the operation. My sister is going to **(10)** t.................... c.................... of me at home.
A Well, good luck! I hope it goes well.

⑤ ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

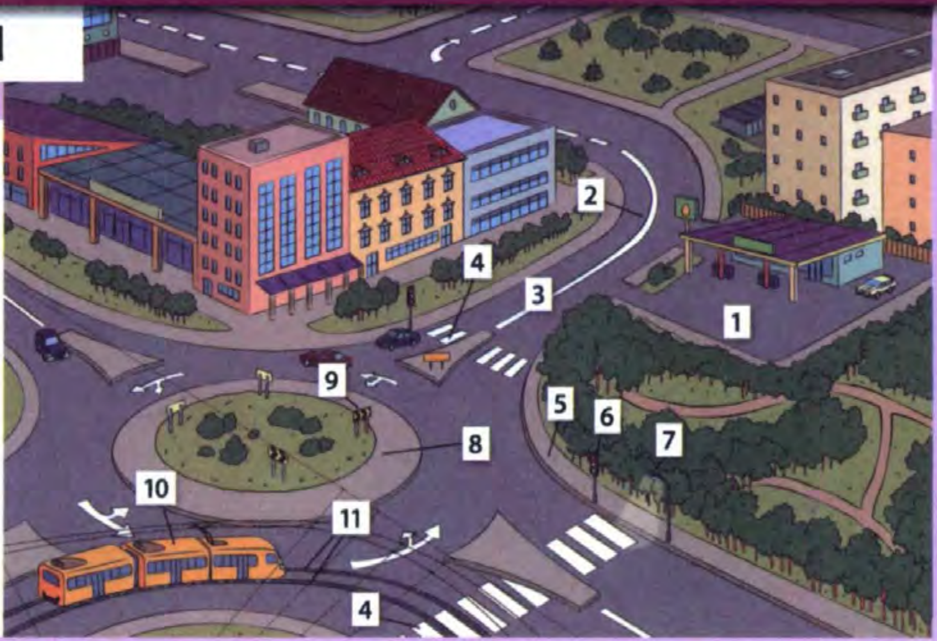
1 When did you last go to hospital, and why? ....
2 Have you ever been into hospital for a few days or longer? When? ....
3 In your country, when patients are in hospital, do the nurses take care of them, or does the family look after them too? ....
4 Can you see a consultant immediately in your country, or do you have to wait? ....
5 Do you have to see your doctor first before you go and see a consultant? ....
6 Where do patients usually go to recover after an operation? ....

TEST YOURSELF

31 Roads

A On the road

1 **petrol station**
2 **bend** *n, v*
3 **main road**
4 **crossing**
5 **pavement**
6 **traffic lights**
7 **street light**
8 **roundabout**
9 **road sign**
10 **tram**
11 **tracks**



The **main road** is **straight** coming into the town centre, but **bends** at the **petrol station.** It then **divides** at the **roundabout.**

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ straight / main S
1 divide / sign ....
2 roundabout / road ....
3 station / petrol ....
4 pavement / straight ....
5 light / sign ....
6 petrol / bend ....
7 tracks / tram ....

2 Circle the correct word.

▶ road [✓ *sign*] / *camera*
1 traffic *station / lights*
2 main *sign / road*
3 *street / tram* tracks
4 petrol *station / sign*
5 street *bend / light*

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ If a road changes from straight to a curved shape, it bends .
1 You fill your car up at a ....
2 If it's dark at night, there are .... so that you can see where you're going.
3 If a road is straight, it doesn't have a .... in it.
4 A .... is a big road in a town or between towns.
5 Cars drive in a circle at a ....
6 People should walk on the ...., not in the road.
7 If a road goes into two parts, it ....
8 You have to stop at the .... until they go green.
9 A .... in the street gives drivers information and instructions.
10 A .... must go down this street – there are tracks.

4 ABOUT YOU From your home, which of these can you see? Tick the boxes, or ask another student.

a road sign ☐
a road which divides ☐
tram or train tracks ☐
traffic lights ☐
street lights ☐
a petrol station ☐
a straight road ☐
a roundabout ☐
a pavement ☐
a bend in a road ☐
a main road ☐
a crossing ☐

TEST YOURSELF

B A road accident

Here is the latest travel news ...

There has been a **serious** accident on the A31 outside Winchester. It **occurred** just after 7.00 a.m., when a **sports car**[1] **skidded** on the wet road **surface** in the slow **lane**, and hit a **cyclist**[2] with great **force**.

Emergency services are at the **scene** of the accident, and an **ambulance**[3] has taken the injured cyclist to hospital. He is thought to be in a **serious condition.** The road is still **blocked**, and drivers are being advised to **avoid** the area.

GLOSSARY

serious	very bad: *a **serious accident/injury***
occur *formal*	happen, especially in a way that has not been planned
skid	suddenly move forwards or sideways without any control
surface	the top layer of sth
lane	one part of a wide road: ***the fast/slow lane***
force	the physical strength shown by one thing hitting another
emergency services	the police, ambulance, and/or fire service
scene	the place where sth happened, e.g. an accident or a crime
condition	the state that sb/sth is in: *be in **a serious condition**; a road **in very bad condition***
block	make it difficult for anything to pass a road, etc.
avoid	stay away from sb/sth

5 **Find the missing letter and write the correct word.**

▶ conditon condition
1 amblance ....
2 sene ....
3 serius ....
4 emegency ....
5 ocur ....
6 bloc ....
7 avid ....
8 sport car ....
9 forc ....

6 **Replace the underlined words with other words or phrases that have the same meaning.**

▶ Was it a bad accident? serious
1 The top of the road was very icy. ....
2 You should stay away from the area: it's very busy. ....
3 When did the police arrive at the place where the accident occurred? ....
4 The car went sideways out of control on the icy road. ....
5 The police and an ambulance arrived within minutes. ....
6 The accident happened late last night. ....
7 The accident made it difficult for cars to pass on the road. ....
8 The physical state of the road through the mountains is terrible. ....

7 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ There was oil on the surface of the road, which made the driver skid.
1 We couldn't get through to the village because a tree had fallen and .... the road.
2 The .... of the waves pushed me over.
3 My brother had a .... injury from an accident on his motorbike.
4 You should move into the fast .... to pass a slower car on a motorway.
5 Some people have been injured. Please call for an ....
6 Rinka has an expensive bike, and I believe she's a very good ....
7 Someone came past me in a little low .... car.
8 I think the driver must have .... on the wet road.

TEST YOURSELF

32 Driving

A Driving tips

TIPS FOR SAFER DRIVING

- Always **be prepared for** bad road conditions, and **concentrate** 100% of the time.
- Remember that **alcohol has a** serious **effect on** your ability to drive safely.
- Never drive when you're very tired, or you **risk falling asleep** and causing an accident.
- Be aware of other drivers around you as well as the road **ahead.**
- **Keep** to the **speed limit** and don't drive too **close to** the vehicle in front.

GLOSSARY	
tip	a piece of practical advice
be prepared for sth	be ready and able to deal with any problems
concentrate (on sth)	give all your attention to sth
alcohol	drinks such as beer and wine that can make people drunk **alcoholic** *adj*
effect	a change that happens because of sth **have an effect (on sb/sth)** SYN **affect sth/sb**
risk (doing) sth	put yourself or sth in danger **risk** *n*
fall asleep	start sleeping
ahead	in front
keep	continue or stay in a particular place or condition; **keep to the speed limit** stay at or below the speed limit; **keep left** stay on the left
speed limit	the highest legal speed you can drive on a road
close (to sth/sb)	near sth/sb

① Good or bad? Write *G* or *B*.

▸ I've been given some tips on motorway driving. G

1 You're risking your life in that car. ....

2 She's concentrating on driving. ....

3 She had an alcoholic drink before driving. ....

4 She fell asleep while driving. ....

5 I wasn't aware of the speed limit. ....

6 The road ahead is empty. ....

7 The poor light affected his driving. ....

8 He always keeps to the speed limit. ....

② Complete the dialogues.

▸ Would you like some wine? ~ No, thanks. It's bad to drink alcohol before driving.

1 Did the accident affect you? ~ Yes, it had a very big .... on me.

2 Megan talks a lot in the car. ~ I know. She doesn't .... when she's driving.

3 What caused the accident? ~ The driver .... asleep for a few seconds.

4 Did Mo give you any advice on the driving test? ~ Yes, she gave me some useful ....

5 Were you looking behind you? ~ No, I was looking ....

6 Did you see what was going to happen? ~ No, I wasn't .... for it.

7 What's the matter? ~ You're driving too .... to the car in front of us.

8 Were you driving too fast? ~ No, I .... to the speed limit.

③ ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are the tips in this unit useful, or did you know them already? ....

2 What is the speed limit in towns in your country? ....

3 Do people usually keep to it? ....

4 Do you have to be prepared for bad weather on the roads in your country? How? ....

5 Apart from alcohol, what other things can have a negative effect on drivers? ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Driving problems

I'm a terrible driver. The first time I **took my driving test**, I forgot to **fasten my seat belt**, so I **failed.** The second time, I didn't **signal** when I was turning left, and I failed again. When I finally **passed** and **got my driving licence**, a police officer stopped me for **speeding.** A few weeks later, I went through **a red light** and hit another car. **Luckily**, the other car wasn't **damaged**, but I had to pay £350 on my **insurance** to get my car **fixed.** And then I **ended up** getting a **fine** for driving through the red light.

fasten your seat belt / do your seat belt up

SPOTLIGHT compounds with *driving*

When people learn to drive, they often have **driving lessons** before they **take their driving test.** If they pass, they **get a driving licence** (=a document which shows that you are allowed to drive).

GLOSSARY

fail	do badly in a test or an exam OPP **pass**	**damage**	break or harm sth **damage** *n*
signal	When you are driving and you **signal**, you show that you want to turn left/ right, etc. **signal** *n*	**insurance**	an agreement where you pay money to a company, so that it will give you money if sth bad happens
speeding	driving faster than the legal speed limit **speed** *v*	**fix**	repair sth
red light	a signal telling a driver to stop *go through a* ***red light*** = not stop	**end up**	get into in a place or situation when you did not plan it
luckily	= it is lucky that ... SYN **fortunately; luck** *n*	**fine**	money that you must pay because you have done sth wrong

4 Circle the correct words or phrases. Be careful: in two questions, both answers are correct.

▶ The driver ***got / [✓ went]*** through a red light, but a police officer stopped him.

1 My cousin was stopped by the police for ***speeding / signalling***.

2 Fortunately I passed, so I've got my ***driving test / driving licence*** now.

3 She never remembers to ***do up / fasten*** her seat belt.

4 You have to have ***insurance / a fine*** to drive a car in this country.

5 The driver ***signed / signalled*** to turn left, but in fact he turned right.

6 We were planning to go home, but we ***ended / ended up*** at Milly's house.

7 It was a long journey, but ***luckily / fortunately*** we got home before the snow.

8 I wasn't injured, but my bicycle was badly ***damaged / hurt*** in the accident.

9 Did you have to pay ***insurance / a fine*** when the police officer stopped you?

10 I fell asleep for a few seconds and it was just ***luck / luckily*** that I didn't hit anything.

5 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

I was a very slow learner, and I had driving / for two ▶ lessons
years before I the driving test. I was very nervous, 1 ....
and I went through a light, which was extremely 2 ....
dangerous, and, of course, I the test. The second time, 3 ....
I was less nervous and did better: I and got my 4 ....
driving. I bought an old car from a friend and 5 ....
paid a lot of money for to protect the car. 6 ....
However, it had a lot of problems: I couldn't the 7 ....
seat belt, and I couldn't to turn left or right. 8 ....
It also had some to the passenger door from 9 ....
an earlier accident my friend had, so I up having 10 ....
to pay a garage to some of the faults. 11 ....

TEST YOURSELF

33 Trains and buses

A Train and bus journeys

If there is a **direct train**, it is usually the fastest way to travel from A to B in Britain. A **stopping train** stops at a lot of smaller stations between **main stations**. An **express (train)** provides a faster **service** to your **destination**, and avoids the problem of **traffic jams** on the bus services.

For **rail travel**, you might need a single or a return ticket. Many people buy a **travel card**, which allows them to travel on any bus or train in a specific area for a period of time for less money. A **bus pass** lets you do the same for bus routes. You can buy rail tickets online, from a **ticket machine** or at the **ticket office / booking office** in the station.

If you get a train or bus **in time**, you **catch** it. If you are late, you may **miss** it. You may need to **change** trains or buses.

GLOSSARY

service	a system or organization that provides the public with sth that it needs: ***a bus/train service***
destination	the place where sb/sth is going
traffic jam	a long line of cars, buses, etc. that cannot move or that moves very slowly
in time	not late, early enough
change trains/buses	get off one train/bus and get on another one

SPOTLIGHT *journey, trip, travel*

A **journey** is used to talk about going from one place to another.

- *my **journey** to school*
- *a **journey** through Asia*

A **trip** is used to describe the whole visit, including your stay in a place.

- *I've been on a **trip** to Spain for three weeks.*

Travel [U] is used to talk about the activity of moving from one place to another. **travel** *v*

- *Rail **travel** is slower than flying, but I prefer it.*
- *Do you enjoy **travelling** by train?*

You **go on a journey/trip** (NOT ~~go on a travel~~).

1 Circle the correct word.

▶ direct *fare* / [✓ *train*]
1 booking *machine / office*
2 *traffic / travel* jam
3 *express / rail* train
4 main *station / travel*
5 ticket *machine / pass*
6 *in / at* time
7 go on a *trip / travel*
8 *stopping / journey* train
9 *travel / bus* card
10 bus *pass / machine*
11 rail *destination / travel*

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ A direct train only stops at your destination.
1 You can buy a ticket at a booking office or a ....
2 A stopping train usually stops often between the ....
3 The bus company provides a very good .... for its customers.
4 It takes five hours from London to Strasbourg, so it's a long ....
5 Flying is generally the fastest way to ....
6 If you don't want to pay for your bus ticket each time, get a ....
7 If you arrive in time for your train, you will .... it, but if you are late, you will .... it.
8 Too many cars and buses on the road might mean there will be a ....

3 Complete the text with words from the box in the correct form.

miss rail travel time destination booking change journey trip ✓

Last year my sister Cally and I went on a ▶ trip to Madrid. My sister loves **(1)** .... travel, so we decided to take the train from London to Atocha Station in Madrid. It's a very long **(2)** .... – it takes all day, really. You have to **(3)** .... trains twice, once in Paris and again in Barcelona. We were surprised to find that train tickets are incredibly expensive, and Cally spent hours at the **(4)** .... office trying to find the cheapest tickets. On the day we left, it snowed and we didn't get to the station in **(5)** .... to catch the train, and then we **(6)** .... another train in Paris, so we had problems for the rest of the day. We finally got to our **(7)** .... after midnight. I've told Cally I don't enjoy **(8)** .... by train any more.

TEST YOURSELF

B Train problems

The train **broke down**, and we didn't arrive at our destination until after midnight.

Sorry, I **was held up**. My train was **due** at 9.42, but it didn't **get in** until 10.25.

I **commute** to the city every day, but the train I catch **is** often **cancelled** without **warning.**

My train to London got in late, so I **missed** my **connection** to Brussels.

My sister **was meant to pick** me **up** at the station, but she forgot.

GLOSSARY	
break down	If a train/car, etc. **breaks down**, it stops working.
hold sb up	(*often passive*) make sb slow or late **hold-up** *n* SYN **delay**
due	expected to arrive or happen
get in	(usually of a train or plane) SYN **arrive** OPP **leave, depart**
commute	travel a long way from home to work every day
cancel	decide that sth that has been planned will not happen
warning	a piece of information that sth bad may happen
connection	a train, plane, etc. that leaves soon after another arrives, so that people can change from one to the other ***miss a connection***
be meant to (do sth)	If sb **is meant to do sth**, they have been asked to do it and have a responsibility to do it.
pick sb/sth up	go to a place and collect sb/sth, usually in a car

4 Good or bad? Write *G* or *B*.

▶ I caught my connection to Rome. G
1 The train was cancelled. ....
2 The train's due in a minute. ....
3 I commute two hours every day. ....
4 Dad picked me up at the airport. ....
5 Our car broke down. ....
6 They didn't get held up. ....
7 We had a delay on the way to the station. ....
8 We had no warning about the accident. ....
9 There weren't any hold-ups on the journey. ....
10 When I got there, the train had departed. ....

5 Complete the sentences.

▶ My husband was meant to meet me, but he missed the train.
1 They've just said the train is .... in five minutes, so that's good.
2 The plane to Paris was late, so I missed my .... to Bordeaux.
3 We had problems at the border: we were .... for two hours.
4 Our teacher arrived late because the train company .... two trains this morning.
5 I used to .... from Cambridge to London every day for work.
6 What time does your train .... in?
7 My father has gone to the airport to .... his brother ....
8 I waited an hour for the train, then it was cancelled without ....
9 There was a long .... at the airport and we didn't leave until midnight.
10 Our train .... just outside Milan. We sat there for two hours until it was fixed.

6 ABOUT YOU True or false? Write *T* or *F*. Write your answers, or tell another student.

▶ Some of my family have to commute to work. T – My father and brother both commute to Warsaw.
1 Trains are often cancelled where I live because of the weather. ....
2 I often get held up when I'm travelling by train. ....
3 I've never missed a connection. ....
4 I've never been on a train that broke down. ....
5 You are meant to have a ticket to go on the station platform. ....
6 I was once delayed for over three hours on a train journey. ....

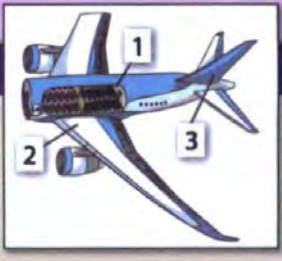
TEST YOURSELF

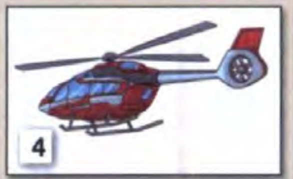
34 Air travel

A Flying

FLYING QUESTIONNAIRE

1 Do you always look for the cheapest **airfare**? ....
2 At the airport **check-in**, are there often long **queues**? ....
3 What kinds of things do you do in the **departure lounge**? ....
4 On a flight, do you prefer **take-off** or **landing**? ....
5 In the **cabin**[1], do you prefer to sit near the **wing**[2] or the **tail**[3]? ....
6 Do you keep your seatbelt fastened **throughout** the flight? ....
7 Have you ever been **airsick**? ....
8 Did the last flight you took leave and arrive **on schedule**? ....
9 Have you ever flown in a **helicopter**[4]? If not, would you like to? ....





GLOSSARY

airfare	the money you pay to travel by plane
check-in	the place where you go to in an airport to leave your suitcases and show your ticket **check in** *v*
queue	a line of people waiting to do sth **queue** *v*
departure	leaving a place. OPP **arrival** You wait in **departures / the departure lounge** before you get on the plane. OPP **arrivals**
take-off	the moment when an aeroplane starts to fly **take off** *v*
landing	coming down onto the ground in a plane **land** *v*
throughout	during the whole period of time of sth
airsick	feeling that you are going to vomit when you are on a plane ALSO **travel-sick/seasick/carsick**
schedule	a plan of activities and when they will happen. If a plane leaves **on schedule**, it leaves at the time it was expected to leave. SYN **on time**

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ throughout / bathroom S
1 queue / throughout ....
2 departure / match ....
3 check-in / chemist ....
4 schedule / school ....
5 lounge / change ....
6 helicopter / arrival ....

2 Write the words in the table.

tail ✓ be airsick check-in queue wing take-off landing arrivals cabin departure lounge

IN THE AIRPORT BUILDING		IN OR ON THE PLANE	
....	....	▶ tail	....
....	....	....	....
		....	....

3 Replace the underlined phrases with a word or phrase. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ A bird flew into the part of the plane where passengers sit. cabin
1 We arrived at the airport and went to the desk with our bags and tickets. ....
2 Children were making a lot of noise during the whole of the flight. ....
3 The money we paid for the plane ticket was very cheap. ....
4 We sat and talked in the place where you wait before getting on the plane. ....
5 The plane left the ground and started to fly in heavy rain. ....
6 We landed in Lima at the planned time. ....
7 My brother was waiting for me in the place where people get off the plane. ....
8 I stood in a long line of people for an hour at the airport. ....
9 Passengers should check in ninety minutes before they leave. ....
10 Have you checked the plane timetable? ....

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.

TEST YOURSELF

B Choosing your seat

WHICH SEAT IS BEST?

It doesn't matter if you travel for business or **pleasure**, the choice of ticket is an important one. Most of us **can't afford to** travel **first class**, but **business class** is less expensive and has certain **advantages** over **economy class**. Pay more, and you get the following benefits:

- **board** more quickly
- enjoy a higher **standard** of food
- enjoy greater **luxury**
- be served by very **experienced** flight attendants
- have more **private** space
- **have access to** a greater variety of **entertainment**

SPOTLIGHT *experience/experienced*

If you **have experience** [U] of something, you know about it and have done it before.

- *I **have** a lot of **experience** with children.*

An **experience** [C] is something that has happened to you.

- *Living in India was an interesting **experience**.*

Experienced *adj*

- *She's a very **experienced** teacher.*

GLOSSARY	
pleasure	the feeling of being happy and enjoying sth
afford	If you **can afford** sth, you have enough money to pay for it.
first class	the part of the plane which is more expensive to travel in **business class** (cheaper than first class) **economy class** (the cheapest class of air travel)
advantage	sth that helps you or is useful OPP **disadvantage**
board (a plane, boat, etc.)	get on (a plane, boat, etc.)
standard	how good sb or sth is
luxury	a way of living where you have all the beautiful and expensive things you want
private	for one particular person or small group only
have access to sth	have the opportunity to use sth
entertainment	anything that people think is interesting or funny: films, concerts, theatre, etc.

5 **Underline the main stress on these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ experience
1 access
2 private
3 advantage
4 pleasure
5 standard
6 economy
7 business
8 entertainment
9 luxury
10 disadvantage

6 **Complete the dialogues.**

▶ Have you got on the plane yet? ~ Yes, we've just boarded.
1 Can I go in this part of the plane? ~ No, I'm sorry, it's p.................
2 There are plenty of things to watch on the flight. ~ Yes, there's lots of e.................
3 They've worked for the airline for many years. ~ Yes, they are very e.................
4 First class is too expensive for me. ~ I agree. I can't a................. it either.
5 Can you use the internet on this flight? ~ Yes, we have a................. to it.
6 Flying is something that makes you very happy. ~ Yes, it gives me a lot of p.................
7 On long night flights, you can sleep. ~ Yes, that's a big a.................
8 The service on the plane was excellent. ~ Yes, it was of a very high s.................

7 **Complete the sentences.** ABOUT YOU

▶ I can afford to fly first class. ....
1 I've had lots of interesting .... when travelling. ....
2 I've always had a high .... of service when flying. ....
3 I usually have .... to the internet and entertainment on a flight. ....
4 Flying is no .... for me: I hate it. ....
5 I hate queueing to .... a plane or train. ....
6 I would love the .... of first class travel, but unfortunately I've never had it. ....

8 ABOUT YOU **Are the sentences in Exercise 7 true for you? If not, change them to make them true.**

▶ I can afford to fly first class. I certainly can't afford to fly first class. I can't even afford economy class!

TEST YOURSELF

35 Holidays

A Camping

tent
backpack

Advice for campers

- When you're **camping**, don't try and **put up** a tent **unless** the ground is completely **level**.
- Choose **campsites** with a good variety of **facilities** and entertainment **in case** the weather is terrible and you can't spend much time **outdoors**.
- If you want to explore the **countryside** and you're **hiking** during the day, **be sure to** have a small **backpack** for water, maps, lunch, etc.

GLOSSARY

camp	stay in a tent for a short time **(go) camping** *n*
put sth up	build sth such as a tent, a wall or fence
unless	if not; except if
level	flat; with no part higher than any other
campsite	a place where people on holiday stay in tents, usually with toilets, water, etc.
facilities	a building, service, piece of equipment that makes it possible to do sth, e.g. showers, a swimming pool, sports equipment
in case	because of the possibility of sth happening
countryside	land outside towns and cities with fields, woods, etc.
hike	go for a long walk in the country, often for pleasure
be sure to do sth	used to tell sb to do sth

SPOTLIGHT *outdoor(s) and indoor(s)*

Outdoors is an adverb and means 'not inside a building'. OPP **indoors** Notice the underlined stress.

- *It's sunny - let's go **outdoors**. It's raining – let's go **indoors**.*

Outdoor and **indoor** are adjectives.

- ***outdoor/indoor** sports*
- *an **outdoor/indoor** swimming pool*

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ unless
1 indoors
2 backpack
3 campsite
4 level
5 outdoor
6 camping
7 countryside
8 facilities
9 indoor
10 outdoors

2 Complete the second sentence. The meaning must stay the same as the first sentence.

▶ I love hiking on the hills and in the fields. / I love hiking in the countryside .
1 Remember to check the weather forecast. / Be ______ to check the weather forecast.
2 Make sure that the ground is flat and not on a hill. / Make sure that the ground is ______ .
3 The campsite has no water, services or sports equipment. / The campsite has no ______ .
4 Do you like sleeping in a tent on holiday? / Do you like ______ ?
5 Take a jacket because it might be cold. / Take a jacket in ______ it's cold.
6 Don't go out. / Stay ______ .
7 I don't like swimming pools in the open air. / I don't like ______ pools.
8 We walked ten kilometres across the hills. / We ______ ten kilometres across the hills.

3 Complete the text.

I love the ▶ outdoor life, and I'd been thinking of going to the Black Forest in Germany, because the **(1)** c______ there looks spectacular. I found a **(2)** c______ which had good **(3)** f______ : hot showers, a café and a small food store. Unfortunately, I arrived at night and had to **(4)** p______ up my **(5)** t______ in the dark. I knew I wouldn't sleep well **(6)** ______ I took a sleeping pill, but I still had a cold and uncomfortable night. In the morning, I decided that I would **(7)** h______ to the nearest town which was 15 kilometres away. I tried to jump across a small river, but I fell and dropped my **(8)** b______ in the water, so I lost my sandwiches and water bottle. It was a miserable day.

TEST YOURSELF

B A seaside break

My friend Carol and I decided to have a short **break** at the **seaside** for a few days. We **made a reservation** at a **hostel** in South Wales where the prices were very **reasonable**. We were **looking forward to** a few days of **sunbathing**, seeing the **sights** and eating delicious food. However, it **turned out** that the hostel was in a very **remote** location with no beaches, cafés or facilities nearby. Seeing the heavy rain, we **headed** home the following day.

GLOSSARY

break	a short holiday: ***a short/weekend break***
seaside	an area or place next to the sea where people often go on holiday **seaside** *adj*: ***a seaside holiday***
reservation	a room, restaurant table, train seat, etc. that you have asked sb to keep for you: ***make a reservation***
hostel	a place like a cheap hotel where you can stay: ***youth hostel***
reasonable	(of prices) not expensive
look forward to (doing) sth	be happy and excited about sth that is going to happen
sunbathing	lying in the sun so that your skin becomes darker **sunbathe** *v*
sights *pl*	interesting places that are often visited by tourists
turn out	happen in a particular way, especially one that you did not expect
remote	far away from other towns, cities and people
head	move in a particular direction

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ break / reservation S

1 remote / location ....

2 seaside / head ....

3 sunbathe / break ....

4 hostel / look forward to ....

5 reasonable / remote ....

6 seaside / sights ....

5 True or false? Write *T* or *F*. If they are false, write true sentences.

▶ Making a reservation at a hotel is the same as booking a room there. T

1 Your skin usually changes colour when you sunbathe. ....

2 A break is a long holiday. ....

3 In a holiday location, a police station is one of the usual sights. ....

4 You would be happy if the price of something was reasonable. ....

5 If a place is remote, there are a lot of people there. ....

6 If you're looking forward to an event, you want to go to it. ....

7 A hostel is a place where you can sleep. ....

8 If you head home, you are leaving home. ....

6 Complete the questions using words from the box in the correct place.

break sunbathing seaside make out sights remote forward youth ✓

ABOUT YOU

▶ Have you ever stayed in a / hostel? youth ....

1 Do you like at the seaside? ....

2 Do you prefer to stay in a town or a more location? ....

3 When you go on holiday, do you always a reservation? ....

4 Do you enjoy going to see the in a new city? ....

5 In the summer, do you prefer to have a holiday? ....

6 Do you ever go away on a weekend? ....

7 Do you look to travelling, or do you worry about it? ....

8 Do your holidays always turn as you expected? ....

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

▶ Have you ever stayed in a youth hostel? Yes, quite often. I travelled in Europe when I was a student and stayed in several. They were great, and I met a lot of people.

TEST YOURSELF

36 Verb + preposition

Some of the verbs are explained in the glossary, others are explained in different parts of the book. Use the APP or the Word List to help you if necessary.

concentrate	**ON**
depend	
rely	

believe	**IN**
succeed	
participate	

apologize	**FOR**
apply	
vote	

Let me **concentrate on** this book.

Do you **believe in** ghosts?

I **apologized for** being late.

She **suffers from** asthma.

He only **cares about** money.

The car **belongs to** my father.

Her house **smells of** herbs.

You can't **compare** dogs **with** cats.

suffer	**FROM**
benefit	
prevent sb	

care	**ABOUT**
complain	
dream	
worry	

belong	**TO**
talk/speak	
listen	
refer	
complain	

compare sb/sth	**WITH**
agree	
argue	
disagree	

smell	**OF**
consist	
taste	

SPOTLIGHT verb + preposition

Some verbs can be followed by different prepositions.

argue with sb:

- *I **argued with** my brother.*

argue about sth:

- *We **argued about** the holiday.*

You **talk/speak/complain to sb**, but **talk/speak/complain about sth** or **sb**, and **agree/disagree with sb** but **agree/disagree about sth**.

GLOSSARY مرجع زبان ایرانیان

concentrate (on sth)	give all your attention to sth
rely on sb/sth	**1** need sb or sth: *She **relies on** her parents.* **2** be sure that sb or sth will do what they say they they will do: *You can **rely on** him for help.* SYN **depend on sb/sth**
participate (in sth) *formal*	do sth together with other people
apologize (for sth) *formal*	say sorry for sth
benefit (from sth)	get sth good or useful from sth
suffer (from sth)	feel pain, sadness or another unpleasant feeling because of sth
prevent sb from (doing) sth	stop sb doing sth
care (about sth/sb)	think that sth/sb is important
consist of sth	be made from two or more things
refer to sb/sth	talk about sb/sth: *In the interview, he **referred to** his old science teacher.*

1 **Underline the main stress in these verbs. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

- ▶ depend
- **1** participate
- **2** apologize
- **3** concentrate
- **4** succeed
- **5** benefit
- **6** disagree
- **7** compare
- **8** prevent
- **9** complain
- **10** apply
- **11** rely

2 **Circle the correct preposition.**

- ▶ Do you ever listen [✓ ***to***] / ***from*** the radio?
- **1** We compared our exam results ***from / with*** the other class's.
- **2** Martha still depends ***of / on*** her parents a lot.
- **3** I don't think she cares ***about / for*** the money.
- **4** Do you believe ***on / in*** life after death?
- **5** I can't concentrate ***on / in*** my work when it's noisy.
- **6** This soap smells ***from / of*** honey.
- **7** Emma is worried ***for / about*** her brother.
- **8** Edward succeeded ***on / in*** passing all his exams.
- **9** This soup tastes ***with / of*** cheese, and it's delicious.

3 **Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.**

- ▶ British people often talk about.......... the weather.
- **1** Does the group always agree .... you?
- **2** I often dream .... my dog.
- **3** Both my brothers suffer .... migraines.
- **4** Does this book belong .... anyone?
- **5** Ava is going to apply .... that job.
- **6** We had to complain .... the food – it was terrible.
- **7** Marcus wasn't referring .... you when he said some students were lazy.
- **8** I didn't want to participate .... the discussion.
- **9** The book consists .... three sections.
- **10** I'm not sure who will benefit .... the changes in the law.
- **11** Olivia wants to concentrate .... criminal law when she finishes her degree.
- **12** A good education will help you to succeed .... finding an interesting job.

4 **Complete the sentences with the correct verb and preposition.**

- ▶ If you compare.......... this phone with.......... the other one, you can see this one is much better.
- **1** The job advert looked interesting, so I'm going to .... it.
- **2** I'm afraid I .... my wife all the time – she does everything for me.
- **3** Did George .... being late?
- **4** Who did you .... in the last election?
- **5** He locked the door, and that .... us .... leaving.
- **6** I'm afraid my sister and I never .... each other – we argue all the time.
- **7** He doesn't .... other people: he's only interested in himself.
- **8** Somebody gave me some toothpaste that .... apples. It was very odd.
- **9** The service was very slow so I .... the manager.

5 **ABOUT YOU** **Finish these sentences in a way that is true for you. If possible, compare with another student.**

- ▶ I often listen to music on my phone when I'm going to work.......... .
- **1** I think I rely ....
- **2** In the past I have complained ....
- **3** I will never vote ....
- **4** I sometimes dream ....
- **5** My family sometimes argue ....
- **6** I sometimes have to apologize ....
- **7** I sometimes worry ....
- **8** I often disagree ....
- **9** I don't want to depend ....

TEST YOURSELF

37 Noun + preposition

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Is there an **alternative to** prison for serious crime or less serious crime?
- Should young people have **experience of** working when they are still at school?
- What do you think about the **rise in** the number of women in politics?
- What are the **advantages of** living in a big city?
- Do you think young people should have more **respect for** older people?
- Is there a **need for** more and better roads in your country?
- What is the **connection between** drugs and crime?
- What is the main **cause of poverty** in our society?
- Do you have any **doubts about** the safety of the food we produce?

GLOSSARY

alternative (to sth/sb)	a thing that you can choose instead of another thing
experience (of sth)	knowing about sth because you have seen it or done it
rise (in sth)	when the amount or level of sth goes up OPP **fall (in sth)**
advantage (of sth)	sth that helps you or is useful OPP **disadvantage (of sth)**
respect (for sb/sth)	the feeling you have when you have a high opinion of sb/sth
need (for sth)	a situation in which you must do (sth) or have sth
connection (between A and B)	the way that one thing is joined or related to another
cause (of sth)	a thing or person that makes sth happen
poverty	the state of being poor: *A lot of people are living **in poverty**.*
doubt (about sth)	a feeling of being uncertain about sth or not believing in sth

SPOTLIGHT preposition + *-ing* form

If a preposition is followed directly by a verb, it will be an *-ing* form, not an infinitive.

- *What is the advantage **of** staying here?*
- *I don't have any experience **of living** in another country.*

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ respect **1** alternative **2** advantage **3** experience **4** connection **5** poverty **6** disadvantage

2 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

▶ Do you have experience ...of... working abroad?
1 There is a need .... much better medical services.
2 I think the weather is the main advantage .... living here.
3 Do people have respect .... police officers in your country?
4 What is the main cause .... plane crashes?
5 There is obviously a connection .... health and diet.
6 I don't have any doubts .... the politician I voted for this year.
7 Better public transport is the only alternative .... more cars on the roads.
8 There has been a fall .... the birth rate.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct noun and preposition.

▶ Why is there a ...need... ...for... more houses?
1 There has been a .... global temperatures in the last ten years.
2 I think noise is the main .... living in the city centre.
3 Some experts have serious .... the safety of nuclear power.
4 A lot of people don't like politicians and don't have .... them.
5 I have worked with adults but I don't have any .... working with children.
6 What do you think is the main .... cancer?
7 Is there a cheap .... petrol cars?
8 I think there is a strong .... poverty and crime.

4 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions at the top of the page, or talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

38 Prepositions in time phrases

I'm afraid I can't stop and talk – I'm **in a hurry**.
I'm going to Jo's wedding and I have to get to the church **on time**.
If I get the 3.30 train, I'll be there **in time** to walk to the church.

It'll be great: I haven't seen my cousins **for ages**.

I enjoy weddings, but **at times** I get emotional and cry.

The ceremony is quite short, so we won't be in the church **for long**.
By the time the wedding ceremony is over though, I'll be hungry.
We're all going to the reception afterwards, and we'll be there **for a while**.

Jo told me last year she was getting married. **At the time** I was very surprised!

It was difficult finding anywhere to live, but **at last** they've bought a flat.
They can't move in yet. **In the meantime**, they'll live with Jo's parents.

SPOTLIGHT *at last*

At last means 'in the end' or 'finally', but is often used after there has been a long wait and/or a number of problems.

- *We spent all day looking for a pharmacy, then **at last** we found one.*

(NOT *We went to the cinema, had a meal, then ~~at last~~ went home.*)

GLOSSARY

in a hurry	needing or wanting to do sth very quickly
on time	not late or early; at exactly the correct time
in time (for sth/ to do sth)	not late
for long	(used in questions and negative sentences) for a long time
by the time	used for saying what has already happened when sth else happens
for a while	a period of time (not usually a long time)
for ages	for a very long time
at times	sometimes: *My job is difficult **at times**.*
at the time	(referring to a past time) then
in the meantime	in the time between two things happening SYN **meanwhile**

1 Make seven more time phrases using words the box.

by ✓ in in the at ages time meantime the time ✓
for for a at in a while times last hurry

▶ by the time ....
....

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ The students are usually here on time .
1 I ran back to the shop, but by the .... I got there, it was closed.
2 Seb's not here, but he won't be out for .... because it's nearly dinner time!
3 Li went to the beach, so he'll be gone for a .... In the ...., let's chat.
4 I was standing in the rain for half an hour and then at .... they got here.
5 Martin was in a ...., so he couldn't stop for lunch.
6 Do you know, I haven't seen my next-door neighbour for ....

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable time phrase.

▶ It's usually warm here, but at times it can get cold in the evenings.
1 It doesn't matter if you're early. Just make sure you're there .... for the meal.
2 When Max says 8 p.m., he means 8 p.m., so be there ....
3 We haven't been outside Europe ....: it must be about five years.
4 When I got there, Sylvia was studying, so I didn't stay ....
5 I don't remember much about the cottage. .... I was just a small child.
6 We spent months looking for somewhere to live, then .... we found just the right place – close to the centre but in a quiet road.
7 When I first lived in Edinburgh, I stayed with my aunt .... – just a couple of weeks.
8 I'd like to play tennis, but .... I finish this work, it'll be too late.
9 My parents said they would be back in a couple of hours, so .... we could watch a video.

TEST YOURSELF

39 Adjective + preposition

Some of the adjectives are explained in the glossary. If necessary, you can check the meaning of other words using the Word List or APP.

worried
certain
excited
ABOUT

grateful
similar
polite
rude
TO

based
interested
involved
IN

famous
responsible
prepared
FOR

aware
tired
frightened
scared
proud
jealous
OF

something wrong
fed up
bored
angry
pleased
WITH

My mother's **worried about** me.

I was **grateful to** Dad for his help.

I used to live in Rome, but I'm **based in** Paris now.

Oxford is **famous for** its university.

She wasn't **aware of** the problem.
I'm **tired of** working. Let's go out.

Is **something wrong with** this phone?
I'm **fed up with** my job.

GLOSSARY

grateful (to sb)	If you are **grateful**, you feel or show your thanks to sb who has helped you or done sth for you.
prepared (for sth)	ready for sth
fed up (with sth/ sb) *inf*	bored or unhappy with sth/sb, especially because it has continued for a long time
something wrong (with sth)	not working well, or not as it should be
aware (of sth)	knowing about sth
tired (of sth)	having had too much of sth and wanting to do sth else
proud (of sth)	pleased about sth that you or others have done
jealous (of sb)	angry or sad because you want what another person has
involved (in sth)	taking part in sth; being part of sth

SPOTLIGHT adjective + preposition

Some adjectives are followed by different prepositions with a different meaning.

- *I travel around the world, but I'm* ***based in*** *New York.* (= It is my home or main office.)
- *The film is* ***based on*** *a book.* (= The film uses the book or is developed from it.)

1 **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ tired / similar D
1 wrong / worried ....
2 aware / prepared ....
3 pleased / jealous ....
4 grateful / famous ....
5 polite / famous ....
6 certain / frightened ....
7 based / grateful ....

2 **Write the words with their prepositions in the correct column.**

bored ✓ tired something wrong aware scared angry similar
rude jealous grateful proud fed up pleased polite

with	to	of
▶ bored with		

3 **Make correct sentences.**

▶ depend / brother / on / can / your / you ? Can you depend on your brother ?
1 of / he / problem / is / aware / the / .... ?
2 up / I'm / essays / with / writing / fed ....
3 younger / is / of / Sophia / sister / her / jealous ....
4 he's / marketing / involved / not / now / in ....
5 famous / pyramids / is / for / Egypt / the ....
6 wasn't / exam / for / I / prepared / the ....

4 **Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.**

▶ Henry was quite rude to the teacher.
1 Olivia is getting very excited .... going to university.
2 Is Mark still involved .... the company?
3 Doctors have to be very aware .... their patients' feelings.
4 Is Martha still interested .... art?
5 The company is based .... France now.
6 I'm very proud .... the picture I painted.
7 The programme is based .... a true-life story.
8 I'm tired .... doing this cleaning. Let's watch a film.
9 She's not certain .... the dates for the next course.
10 Is Emma still responsible .... the whole department?

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct adjective.**

▶ My Mum was very angry with me when I broke her favourite vase.
1 Her son has just become a doctor. She's very .... of him.
2 This book is .... to his last one – they're all the same!
3 I've been .... of flying ever since I was in a plane that nearly crashed.
4 I'm .... with looking after my younger sister. I have to do it all the time, and it's really boring.
5 I'm afraid there's something .... with the computer: the screen has frozen.
6 I was very .... to the teacher because she gave me lots of help in her free time.
7 Ted is .... of anyone who gets very friendly with his girlfriend. I think it annoys her.
8 I was .... with my exam results. I passed all of them and I didn't think I would.

6 **ABOUT YOU** **Complete these sentences about yourself, or talk to another student.**

▶ I'm frightened of snakes.
I'm very grateful ....
I get fed up ....
I'm proud ....
I'm bored ....
I'm usually polite ....
At the moment, I'm worried ....

TEST YOURSELF

40 Prepositional phrases

A All about you

LET'S FIND OUT ABOUT YOU!

- Do you ever argue with people **in public**?
- Do you believe that couples should stay together **for life**?
- What do you do **on a regular basis** that helps you with stress?
- What's the best way to help people who are living **on the streets**?
- Would you work **for free** for a charity you believe in?
- Do you think things have got better in your country **in recent years**?
- Do you think that people will stop using plastic **over time**?
- Do you think young people are **at risk from** social media?
- **In general**, do you think you are a happy person?

GLOSSARY

in public	when other people are there OPP **in private**
for life	till the end of your life
on a regular basis	having the same space or time between each thing and the next
on the street(s) *inf*	without a home; living outside
for free	without payment
in recent years, months, etc.	that happened or began not many years, months, etc. ago
over time	as time passes
at risk (from sth)	in a situation where something unpleasant or dangerous could happen SYN **in danger (of sth)**
in general	usually; most of the time SYN **on the whole**

1 Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ Those men are on the streets. / Those men are working on the streets. D
1 She did the work for free. / She wasn't paid for the work. ....
2 In general, I liked it. / On the whole, I liked it. ....
3 I don't do it in public. / I don't do it in private. ....
4 The children are at risk. / The children are in danger. ....
5 I haven't seen Rob in recent years. / I haven't seen Rob for a very long time. ....
6 I'm busy at the moment. / I'm busy in general. ....
7 I go to the gym on a regular basis. / I go to the gym when I want to. ....
8 People change their minds over time. / People change their minds as time passes. ....

2 Complete the phrases with the correct preposition(s).

▶ In general, women earn less than men.
1 The injury affected him .... life.
2 .... the whole, I didn't like the film.
3 Jack's hair has gone white .... time.
4 Are the boys .... risk .... this illness?
5 Things have changed a lot .... recent years.
6 The children could be .... danger.
7 I asked to see her .... private.
8 Do you take exercise .... a regular basis?
9 You have to pay: nothing is .... free.

3 Complete the sentences with a prepositional phrase.

▶ What politicians say in public is often different from what they believe in private.
1 .... I get up later at the weekend than during the week.
2 Nobody has a job .... these days. You might have many jobs over the years.
3 Parents have to pay for the show, but children can go in .... Aren't they lucky?
4 Young people can put themselves .... if they go out alone late at night.
5 You see a lot of people living .... They have nothing and nobody. It's terrible.
6 The problem with being famous is that you are always recognized ....
7 .... , permanent work is better paid than temporary work.
8 .... , people have become much more worried about global warming.

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions at the top of the page, or talk to another student.

TEST YOURSELF

B *in, at, on, by*

Is there anything **in particular** you want to do this evening? (= especially)
I didn't know it was your coat – I took it **by mistake.** (= I didn't plan to take it.)
There were **at least** 20 people there. (= not less than 20)
I met Dan **on the way** to school. (= on the road/journey)
I couldn't move: Mo's car was **in the way.** (= in front of me so I couldn't move)
I suppose, **on average,** we go abroad two or three times a year. (= normally; in most years, etc.)
I'm afraid there's no coffee. ~ OK, **in that case,** I'll have tea. (= if that is the situation)
At the end of the film, the couple move to Los Angeles. (= in the final part of something)
The clubs were closed, so **in the end** we went home early. (= finally, after some time)
He wanted to know about the meeting **in detail.** (= with all the information I had)
We met Marisa **by chance** when we were in Munich. (= without planning to)
Why **on earth** do you want to go out in this terrible weather? (= you must be crazy!)

SPOTLIGHT *on earth*

On earth *inf* is used in questions when you are very surprised or want to say something very strongly.

- *What* ***on earth*** *are they doing?*
- *Where* ***on earth*** *is Milla?*
- *How* ***on earth*** *did you do that?*
- *Who* ***on earth*** *made this jumper?*

5 Make eight more phrases using *in, at, by* or *on*.

way ✓ chance earth mistake least
detail average particular that case

▶ in the way

6 Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase that has the same meaning.

▶ The weather was awful all day, so finally we decided to go home. in the end
1 We'll need not less than two hours to get there.
2 There isn't anything especially that you don't eat, is there?
3 She saw Damian without planning to when she was at the supermarket.
4 In the final part of the story, the old woman dies.
5 We couldn't get out of the bus because there were people standing in front of us.
6 Normally, how long does it take you to get to work?
7 I can get some milk when I'm going to work.

7 Where would you put these phrases in the sentences and dialogues below?

in detail in particular ✓ on earth in the end
by mistake in that case by chance

▶ If I go to the pharmacy, is there anything / that you want? in particular
1 A taxi will be very expensive. ~ OK, let's take the bus.
2 I picked up Ben's scarf because it looked very similar to mine.
3 We met Maxine when we were on holiday in Rome. It was a strange coincidence.
4 What is that man doing with a box over his head?
5 We spent ages waiting for the box office to open, and we went home.
6 My parents want to know about the party. I hope you can remember what happened!

TEST YOURSELF

41 Describing objects

A Ways of defining

What is it?

1

It's a round, metal **container** used for cooking things in.

2

It's a hard black **substance** that you find below the ground and can burn.

3

It's a **device** for changing channels on a TV.

4

It's a **creature** with big eyes that flies and hunts at night.

5

It's a type of **material** you use to make sheets, clothes, etc.

6

It's an **object** you use to tidy your hair.

7

It's an **article** of clothing you wear over your shoulders.

8

It's the **stuff** you use for washing your hair.

GLOSSARY

container	a box, bottle, etc. in which you can store or carry sth
substance	a particular type of solid, liquid or gas
device	a tool or machine which is designed to do a particular job
creature	a living thing such as an animal, insect, etc., but not a plant
material [U]	cloth used for making clothes, curtains, etc.
object	a solid thing you can see and touch which is not alive SYN **thing**
article	a particular item or separate thing: ***an article of clothing, household articles, toilet articles***

SPOTLIGHT *stuff*

Stuff [U] is used to refer to something without using its name. We use **stuff** to replace uncountable nouns, or plural countable nouns.

- *What's the **stuff** in this packet?* (e.g. washing powder, sugar, etc.)
- *Who left all this **stuff** here?* (e.g. books, papers, etc.)

① **Match the words in the box with the definitions and pictures above. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

coal owl cotton shawl comb remote control pot shampoo

② **Cover the definitions and pictures and complete the sentences.**

▶ A shawl is an article................ of clothing.
1 An owl is a .... that flies.
2 Cotton is a kind of ....
3 A remote control is an electronic ....
4 Coal is a hard, black ....
5 A comb is a plastic ....
6 Shampoo is .... for washing your hair.
7 A pot is a type of ....

③ **Cross out any examples which are not correct.**

▶ **a thing:** umbrella, ~~cow~~, lamp
1 **stuff**: children, hair, soap
2 **an object**: bee, printer, scissors
3 **a creature**: mouse, tree, butterfly
4 **a device:** mobile phone, spoon, X-ray machine
5 **a container**: towel, bottle, box
6 **material**: wool, bag, cotton
7 **a substance**: sugar, snow, melon

④ **Write definitions using words from the glossary.**

▶ A dishwasher is an electrical device for washing dishes, knives, forks, etc.
1 Soap is ....
2 A snake is ....
3 A tin is ....
4 A hairdryer is ....
5 A fork is ....
6 Denim is ....

TEST YOURSELF

B What's it made of?

a rubber tyre

a steel pipe

a leather bag

an iron bell

a stone statue

a silver chain

a gold medal

a cardboard box

a metal robot

a brick wall / a wall made of bricks

a wooden fence / a fence made of wood

a woollen blanket / a blanket made of wool

SPOTLIGHT noun + noun

Sometimes we use a noun with another noun to say what things are made of, what they are for, etc. A **rubber tyre** is a tyre made of rubber. A **letter box** is a box for letters.

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ leather / metal S
- 1 iron / robot ....
- 2 fence / cardboard ....
- 3 pipe / tyre ....
- 4 statue / chain ....
- 5 blanket / medal ....
- 6 rubber / wooden ....
- 7 stone / gold ....
- 8 bell / woollen ....

6 Circle the correct word in italics.

- ▶ a table made of [✓ *wood*] / *wool*
- 1 a rubber *boot / bell*
- 2 a *stone / leather* wall
- 3 a *rubber / metal* fence
- 4 a *wooden / woollen* sweater
- 5 an iron *blanket / pipe*
- 6 a *silver / brick* medal
- 7 a stone *robot / statue*
- 8 a steel *tyre / fork*
- 9 *woollen / gold* earrings
- 10 a *wooden / silver* chair

7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ A sweater is often made of wool .
- 1 Boots, shoes and bags are often made of ....
- 2 A building can be made of ...., ... or ....
- 3 A fence is usually made of .... or ....
- 4 A ball can be made of ....
- 5 A bridge can be made of ...., ... or ....
- 6 Medals and chains can be made of .... or ....
- 7 A box can be made of .... or ....

8 ABOUT YOU Look around you. Write down things that you can see which are made of iron, rubber, steel, leather, stone, silver, gold, cardboard, metal, wood, wool or brick.

- ▶ The computer is made of metal and plastic, the desk is made of wood, my diary is made of cardboard and paper.

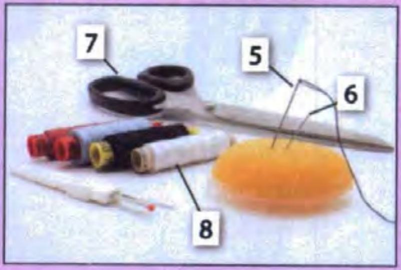
TEST YOURSELF

42 Household tasks

A Using tools and household objects

You use a **hammer**[1] to **bang** a **nail**[2] into the wall to **hang** a picture on.

You use a **drill**[3] to make a **hole**[4]. A hammer and drill are **tools**.



You use a **needle**[5], **pins**[6], **scissors**[7] and **cotton**[8] when you're **sewing**.

You use **string**[9] or **rope**[10] to **tie** things **together**.

You use **tape**[11] or **glue**[12] to **stick** things **together**.

SPOTLIGHT uncountable nouns

Cotton, string, rope, tape and **glue** are usually uncountable.

- *I need **some glue**.* (NOT ~~*I need a glue.*~~)
- *Where**'s** the **string**?*

1 Complete the words.

▶ n a i l
1 n ___ ___ dl ___
2 st ___ ___ ___ g
3 h ___ mm ___ ___
4 sc ___ ___ ___ ___ rs
5 d ___ ___ ll
6 r ___ ___ e
7 h ___ ___ e
8 c ___ ___ t ___ n
9 g ___ ___ e

2 Circle the correct word.

▶ Stick it together with [✓ *glue*] / *cotton*.
1 Sew it with a *pin / needle*.
2 Cut it with *scissors / a drill*.
3 Tie it together with *rope / nails*.
4 Bang it with *string / a hammer*.
5 Make a hole with *cotton / a drill*.
6 Stick it together with *tape / rope*.
7 Sew it with *cotton / a tool*.
8 *Bang / Make* a nail into a piece of wood.

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ She didn't have any string, so she stuck the parcel together with tape .
1 I've got a hammer and a drill, but I haven't got any other ....
2 When you make a skirt for a doll, you cut the fabric with ...., you hold the pieces together with ...., and then you .... it with a needle and ....
3 If you break a bowl, you can .... it together with ....
4 We used a long piece of .... to tie the boat to the harbour wall.
5 A drill is very useful if you need to make a .... in a wall.
6 I need a hammer to .... this .... in the wall.
7 I tied all the keys .... with a piece of ....
8 Can you .... that mirror on the wall over there?

4 ABOUT YOU **Which tools and household objects do you have, and which ones do you use a lot? Write a list, or tell another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Household tasks

Oh, dear! The flat is such a **mess**. There's **mud** on the floor and **dirt** and **dust** everywhere. And we really need to **decorate** the hall and stairs.

Yes, we need to **tidy up**, clean the floors and **wipe** all the furniture with a damp **cloth**.

And another thing: the TV **isn't working properly.** We must get someone to **repair** it.

Oh, I don't know – we never watch it. Let's **get rid of** it. By the way, I've noticed that **there's something wrong with** the bathroom tap. It needs **fixing.** Maybe I'll try and **mend** it myself.

SPOTLIGHT *repair, fix, mend*

Repair, **fix** and **mend** all mean 'put something right which is broken or damaged'.

- *Can you **repair/fix** the fridge?*
- *It took ages to **repair/mend** the roof.*

We often use ***mend*** and ***repair*** (and NOT ~~*fix*~~) to talk about repairing clothes.

- *I **mended** the hole in my pocket.*
- *My shoes need **repairing**.*

GLOSSARY

mess	a lot of untidy or dirty things, all in the wrong place
mud	soft, wet earth
dirt	a substance that is not clean
dust	dry dirt that is like powder
decorate	put paint or paper on the walls
tidy (sth) up	make a place look better by putting things in the correct place
wipe	make sth clean or dry with a *cloth*
cloth	a piece of material used for cleaning things
it isn't working	= it's broken, it isn't functioning
properly	correctly or well
get rid of sth	make yourself free of sth you do not want; throw sth away
something wrong with sth	not working well, or not as it should be

5 Find the beginning and the end of each word.

DECORATE/WIPEDUSTDIRTMESSFIXCLOTHMENDPROPERLYMUDREPAIR

6 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

▶ I've bought some paint and wallpaper, so I'm going to / the living room. decorate
1 The dishwasher is broken – we need to phone someone to come and it. ....
2 Lula came in after walking in the fields, and now there's all over the floor. ....
3 I don't need this stuff any more – I want to get of it. ....
4 Do you know what is with the radio? I can't hear anything at all. ....
5 Have you got a cloth to the cupboards? They're covered in dust. ....
6 The lamp isn't properly: sometimes it comes on and sometimes it doesn't. ....
7 Do you know how to sew? I need somebody to the hole in my trousers. ....
8 The flat is such a mess, and my mother's coming. Can you up, please? ....

7 Complete the text.

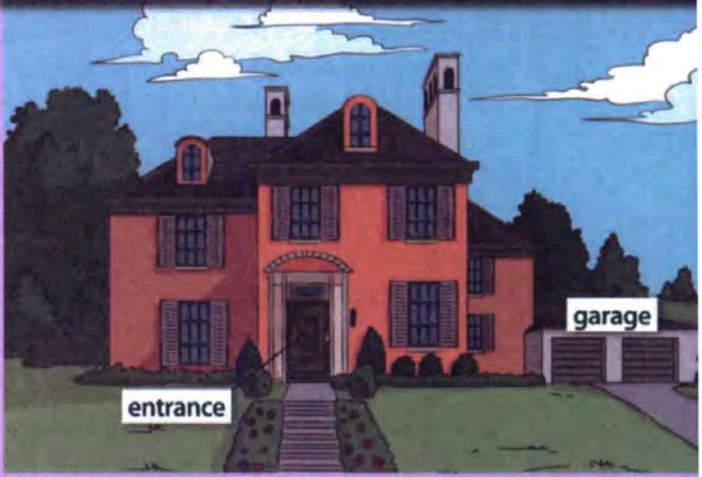
The house was in very bad condition and in the last storm, the rain had come into all the bedrooms. We paid a builder to ▶ mend the roof for us. The rest of the house was a terrible **(1)** ...., so first we had to **(2)** .... up and remove all the **(3)** .... and **(4)** .... with a damp cloth. The old carpets were wet and smelled horrible, so we pulled them up and got **(5)** .... of them. In the end, it still looked awful so we had to **(6)** .... the bedrooms again. Then we realized that there was something **(7)** .... with the central heating, and it cost a lot to get it **(8)** .... The bathroom was a problem too: the shower didn't work **(9)** .... – some days the water was hot, others it was freezing, so that was another thing that someone had to **(10)** .... It was all so expensive!

TEST YOURSELF

43 Buildings

A A new home

My cousin has recently **moved house** to a **property** just outside Edinburgh. It is close to a famous, **historic cottage** and in a beautiful **setting** near the hills. The **entrance** to the house is very **impressive**. The hall **leads to** an enormous sitting room with high **ceilings** and big windows **facing** south, so it feels bright and open. Upstairs, there are four bedrooms, and two of them have **balconies** that look out **onto** the back garden. And a practical feature of the house is the huge **garage** for four cars.



GLOSSARY

move house	go to live in a different house or area **move** *n*: *The **move** took us a whole week.*
property	a building, a piece of land, or both together
historic	famous and important in history
cottage	a small house, especially in the country
setting	the position sth is in
impressive	If sth is **impressive**, you admire it because it is very good, large or important.
lead to sth	go in a particular direction
ceiling	the top part of the inside of a room
face	be pointing or looking towards sth: *The kitchen **faces** west.*
balcony	a small platform on which you can stand or sit, just outside an upstairs window
onto	used to show that sth faces in a particular direction

1 **Underline one sound in each pair of words which is the same. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ setting / ceiling
1 property / entrance
2 balcony / garage
3 cottage / jam
4 cottage / impressive
5 ceiling / lead
6 face / historic

2 **Complete the dialogues.**

▶ Has the flat got any outdoor space? ~ Yes, there's a balcony.......... with some chairs on it.
1 Where does that path go? ~ It .... to the river at the bottom of the garden.
2 Does your aunt live in a big house? ~ No, it's a pretty little .... in a village.
3 Do you leave your car in the street at night? ~ No, we put it in the ....
4 Shall I meet you at the museum? ~ Yes, let's meet in the ....
5 How long have you lived here? ~ Two years, but we're .... house in the summer.
6 You've got a huge balcony! ~ Yes, and it looks out .... the countryside.
7 It's so dark in this part of the house. ~ That's because it .... north and gets no sun.
8 Is the town old? ~ Yes, it has a number of .... buildings that tourists visit.

3 **Complete the questions.**

ABOUT YOU

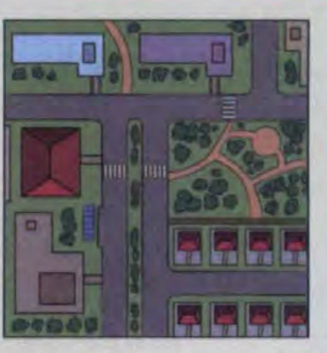
▶ When did you last move house.......... ?
1 What kind of .... do you live in?
2 Is it a .... building?
3 Does it have high .... in the main rooms?
4 Does it .... a park, another building or something else?
5 What's the most .... feature of your house?
6 Is it in an attractive .... , e.g. near the countryside?

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 3, or tell another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Buildings in a town

A new town for Condolanda



Planning has begun on a new, car-free town which the authorities plan to **locate** on **waste ground**, close to the Condolanda **power plant**. It will consist of houses, parks and public transport facilities, as well as public buildings such as a police station, a secondary school, **town hall**, etc. There will be **commercial** buildings including **a shopping mall**, **office blocks**, **retail stores** and a medical centre. There will also be a large area of modern **apartment blocks**, and **residents** will welcome the **addition** of a nearby **leisure centre**. The **heating** for all the buildings will come at low cost from the power plant.

GLOSSARY

locate	put or build sth in a particular place
waste	not used or not suitable for use: ***waste ground***
power plant	a building where electricity is produced
town hall	a large building for local government offices of a town or city
commercial	connected with buying and selling things
shopping mall	a large building containing shops, restaurants, etc. ALSO **mall, shopping centre**
retail store	a shop selling goods to customers (**retail** = selling goods)
resident	a person who lives in a particular place
addition	sth or sb that is added to sth
leisure centre	a public building where people can go to do sports and other activities in their free time
heating	a system for making rooms and buildings warm

SPOTLIGHT *block*

A **block** is a big building with a lot of offices or flats inside.

- ***an office block***
- ***an apartment block***
- ***a block of flats***

A **block** is also an area of buildings with streets all around it.

- *We walked **round the block** to the nearest café.*

5 **Match words from A with words from B.**

A: town ✓ block waste leisure shopping office power retail

B: plant block store mall of flats ground hall ✓ centre ground

▶ town hall ....

....

6 **Replace the underlined definitions with a word or phrase with the same meaning.**

▶ We drove round the group of buildings with streets around them. block
1 The supermarket group want to place ten new stores in city centres. ....
2 The property is not suitable for restaurant or retail use. ....
3 We met at the large indoor place with shops and restaurants. ....
4 The children's play area is a very welcome extra thing for the residents. ....
5 The people who live in the area should be told about the plans. ....
6 We live in an apartment building near the centre of town. ....
7 I bought the furniture in a shop near my family. ....
8 You get the application forms from the local government offices. ....
9 What kind of system for making the room warm do you have? ....

7 **Complete the phrases and sentences.** ABOUT YOU

1 Where you live, is there:
a power plant ? a leisure .... ? a lot of waste .... ? ....
a shopping .... ? a town .... ? a lot of retail .... ? ....
2 Do you live, or have you ever lived, in an .... block? ....
3 If so, how many other .... are/were there in the block? ....

8 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 7, or tell another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

44 How to grow something

How to grow beans

1 Put some **soil** in small plant **pots**. Put a few **seeds** in each pot.

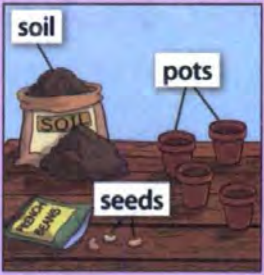
2 Cover them with a **layer** of soil. Water them, and wait until some **leaves** start to grow.

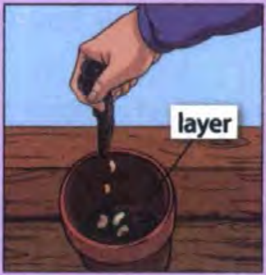
3 When they are large enough, **plant** them in **rows** in the **ground**. If possible, plant them on the **edge** of a **path** where they are easier to look after.

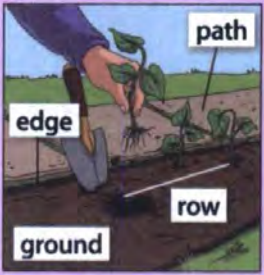
4 **Support** the growing **plants** with **sticks**.

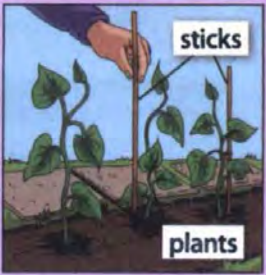
5 **Pick** the beans when they're ready to eat.

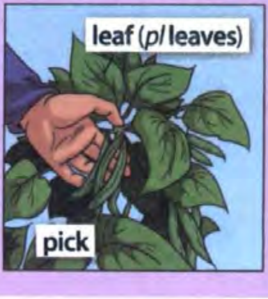
GLOSSARY	
soil	the top layer of earth in which plants grow
layer	sth flat that lies on another thing, or that is between other things
plant	put plants or seeds in the ground or a pot. A **plant** is anything that grows from the ground.
ground	the surface of the earth
support	hold sth/sb in position; stop sth/sb from falling











1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct one at the end.

▶ There's a dead ~~lead~~ on the floor from the tomato plant. leaf

1 Put the plant in the boil and water it every day. ....

2 She's planted a bow of potatoes in the garden. ....

3 You can support the plants with little stocks. ....

4 Could you pack some apples from the tree? ....

5 We walked along the bath next to the river. ....

6 Did you plane the seeds indoors or outdoors? ....

7 She put a lager of soil over the seeds. ....

8 I need a couple of pets to plant the seeds in. ....

2 Correct the sentences.

▶ You put plant pots in the soil. No, you put the soil in plant pots.

1 Seeds are bigger than plants. ....

2 Plants can support your sticks. ....

3 Leaves grow below the ground. ....

4 You plant seeds in layers of leaves. ....

5 You pick seeds when they've grown. ....

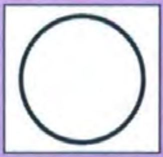
6 The edge of a table is in the middle of the table. ....

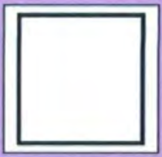
7 A path in a garden is where you sit. ....

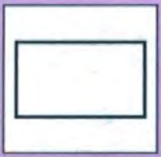
3 Read the text again and then cover it. Look at the pictures. Can you remember what to do? Write it down, or tell another student. Then look at the text again to check your answers.

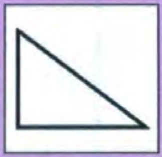
TEST YOURSELF

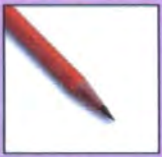
45 Shapes and lines

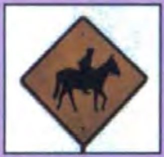

circle *n*, **circular** *adj*
round *adj*

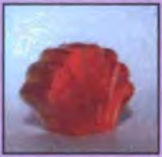

square *n*
square *adj*

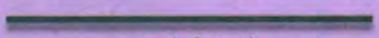

rectangle *n*
rectangular *adj*

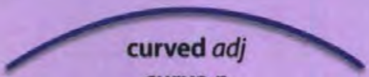

triangle *n*
triangular *adj*

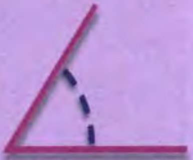

point *n*
pointed *adj*


diamond-shaped *adj*


shell-shaped *adj*


straight *adj*


curved *adj*
curve *n*


angle *n*

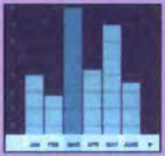


chart *n*

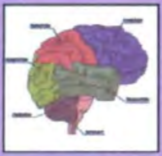


diagram *n*

SPOTLIGHT *shape* **and** *shaped*

You can describe the shape of things using **shape** or **-shaped**.

- *What **shape** is your living room? ~ It's rectangular.*
- *a card **in the shape of** a leaf* ▪ *a pool **in the shape of** a heart*
- *a **diamond-shaped** button*

1 Complete the words.

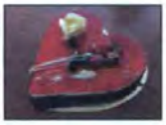
▶ strai g h t
1 p ___ ___ ___ t
2 sq ___ ___ ___ ___
3 cu ___ ___ ___
4 di ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ - s ___ ___ ___ ___ d
5 ro ___ ___ ___
6 re ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ e
7 p ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ d
8 ch ___ ___ ___
9 tr ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
10 di ___ ___ ___ ___ m
11 s ___ ___ ___ - sh ___ ___ ___ ___

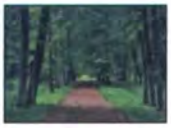
2 Complete the sentences.

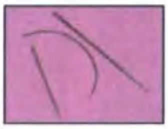
▶ A triangle has three straight sides.
1 A tennis ball is ______ .
2 A swimming pool is usually ______ .
3 A clock is usually in the shape of a ______ .
4 A ball has a ______ surface.
5 A shape with all four sides the same length is ______ .
6 A knife has a sharp ______ at the end of it.
7 A ______ and a ______ are drawings that explain something.
8 A triangle has three internal ______ .
9 A star and a diamond are two different ______ .
10 A slice of pizza is usually ______ .

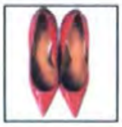
3 What can you see in the pictures?

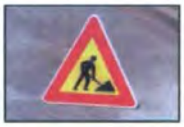
▶ a heart-shaped cake / a cake in the shape of a heart

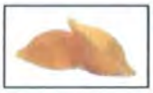


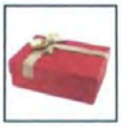

1 ______


3 ______


5 ______

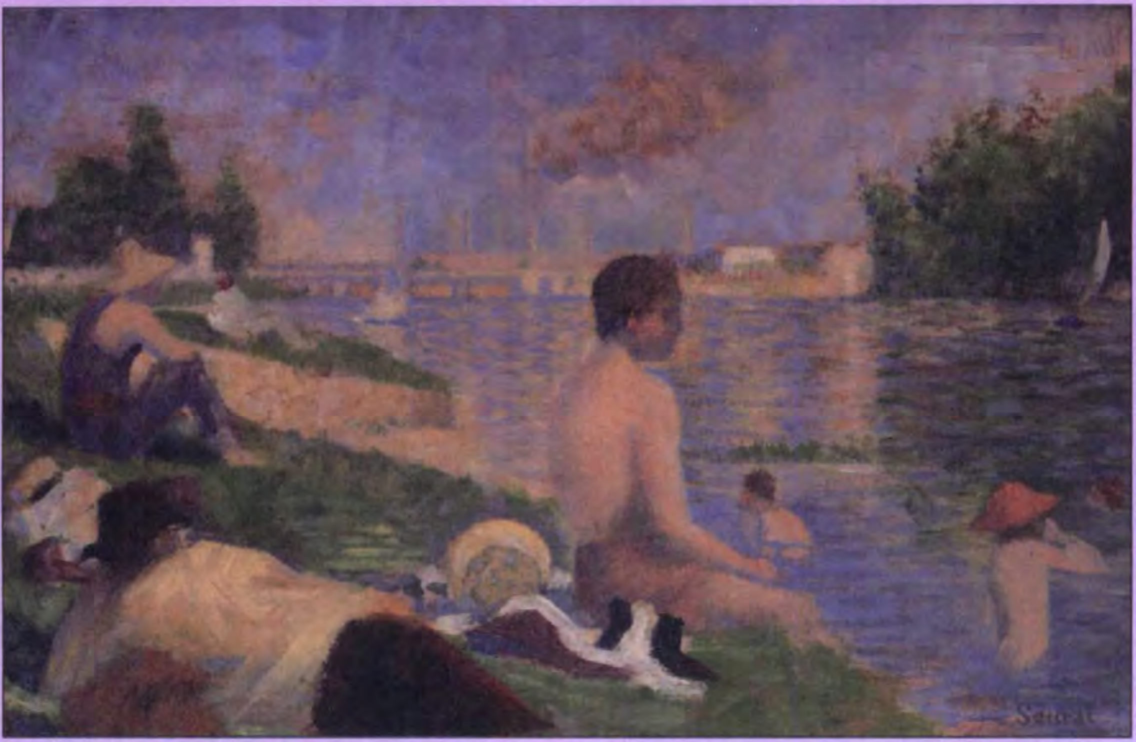

2 ______


4 ______


6 ______

TEST YOURSELF

46 A painting



The painting *Bathers at Asnières* by Georges Seurat shows a typical **scene** of nineteenth-century **leisure** and the developing **industry** in this suburb of Paris. **In the foreground**, we see a group of workmen on their **day off**, having an enjoyable afternoon on the **bank** of the river. **In the distance**, you can **just** see the factory where they probably work. Everyone is looking out at the river and **ignoring** each other, even the little dog. We can **sense** the **heat** of the summer's day: the **bright** sunshine, bright colours and pale sky, and the general **impression** is one of almost **silent** and **peaceful relaxation**.

Bathers was painted in the 1880s, but up to then, most paintings were either historical and religious, or portraits of famous **ladies** and **gentlemen**. **Ordinary** people were not shown in art, so this painting was very original and quite **shocking**. It was painted outside, not in a **studio**, which was also unusual at that time.

GLOSSARY

scene	a picture of a place and the things that are happening there
leisure	the time when you do not have to work
industry	the production of goods in factories **industrial** *adj*
foreground	the part of a picture that seems nearest to you OPP **background: *in the foreground/ background***
off	not at work or school: ***have a day/week/ month off***
bank	the land along the side of a river
in the distance	far away from you
just	If you can **just** see sth, you can only see it with difficulty.
ignore	pay no attention to sb/sth
sense	get a feeling about sth that you can't directly see or hear
heat [U, sing]	the feeling of sth hot OPP **cold**
bright	having a lot of light OPP **dark**; **brightness** *n*
impression	feelings or thoughts that you have about sth/sb
silent	with nobody speaking
peaceful	quiet and calm **peace** *n*
relaxation	time spent resting and being calm **relaxing** *adj*
ordinary	not special or unusual ALSO **normal**
shocking	making you feel upset, angry or surprised in a very bad way
studio	a room in which an artist, photographer, etc. works

SPOTLIGHT *lady* and *gentleman*

Lady is a polite way of saying 'woman'; **gentleman** is a polite way of saying 'man'. It is more polite to say 'an old **lady/gentleman**' than to say 'an old woman/man'.

Lady and **gentleman** also describe a man or woman who is polite, well-educated and kind:

- *She's a real **lady**. He's a perfect **gentleman**.*

You may also see **ladies** and **gents** on the doors of public toilets.

1 Look at the underlined sounds. Cross out the word in each group which is different.

▶ dark / shocking / ~~peace~~
1 just / ignore / gentleman
2 scene / sense / leisure
3 relaxation / lady / relaxing
4 brightness / impression / peaceful
5 peaceful / sense / scene
6 shocking / ordinary / ignore
7 industry / industrial / distance

2 Look at the picture on page 98. Write your answers.

▶ Where are the industrial buildings? In the distance.
1 How many people are there in the foreground? ....
2 Where are the boats? ....
3 Where are the men sitting? ....
4 Are they ignoring each other? ....
5 Are the colours dark or bright? ....
6 Is the scene busy or peaceful? ....
7 Are the people ordinary or famous? ....
8 Can you see any ladies? ....

3 Cover the glossary on page 98. Complete the definitions.

▶ ordinary = not special or unusual
1 leisure = time when you don't have to ....
2 sense = have a .... about sth that you can't see or hear
3 a morning off = a morning when you .... have to go to work or school
4 scene = a .... of a place and the things that are happening there
5 brightness = the fact of having a lot of ....
6 industry = the production of goods made in ....
7 studio = a room or rooms where an .... works
8 silent = with .... talking

4 Complete the sentences with one word from each pair.

peaceful / peace   impression / scene   bright ✓ / brightness   just / even   heat / brightness
industry / industrial   lady / gentleman   shocking / relaxing   background / foreground

▶ The painter Whistler often uses dark colours, not bright ones.
1 L S Lowry painted many .... scenes of factories and factory workers.
2 The people in the .... of the painting must be about five kilometres away.
3 It was dark, but we could still feel the .... – it was 30 degrees at midnight.
4 I need some .... and quiet to finish this book – please don't interrupt me.
5 In the picture it's foggy, but you can .... see the animals in the field.
6 The painting tries to create the .... of light and heat.
7 A .... asked me where the Picasso room was. I told him it was upstairs.
8 It's .... that so many people don't have a home and sleep on the streets.

5 Complete the text.

This painting by an Italian artist shows a ▶ scene of happiness and **(1)** p.......... . There is a mother playing with her small daughter in the **(2)** f.........., and in the **(3)** b.........., an older woman is watching them. Behind her, and a long way in the **(4)** d.........., you can **(5)** j.......... see an old house, perhaps where they all live. It's obviously a warm day, and they are playing in the sunshine. On the right of the painting, there is a man who is **(6)** i.......... the mother and daughter; he seems much more interested in the dog in front of him. They are an **(7)** o.......... working family, and he's probably looking forward to some **(8)** r.......... during his day **(9)** o.......... .

6 ABOUT YOU Think about a painting you know and like. Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Who painted it, and do you know when? ....
2 What does it show? ....
3 What do you like about it? ....

TEST YOURSELF

47 The five senses

SENSE	EXAMPLE	MEANING
SIGHT	***Look** carefully and you **can see** the bridge over the river.*	**look** turn your eyes to sth and pay attention to it **see** know or notice sth using your eyes
	*I often **watch** the birds from the bridge.*	**watch** pay attention to sth for some time
HEARING	*I can **hear** something outside.*	When you **hear** sth, sounds come to your ears.
	*I **listened to** the news this morning.*	When you **listen**, you are trying to hear sth.
	*Jason **sounded angry** this morning.*	**sound** seem in a certain way when you hear sth
SMELL	*I can **smell** something strange.*	**smell** notice sth using your nose
TASTE	*This cake really **tastes of** coffee.*	**taste** have a particular flavour
	*Jo **tasted** the cheese.*	**taste** eat or drink a little of sth to test its flavour
TOUCH	*When I **touched** the back wall, it **felt** a bit wet.*	**touch** put your hand or fingers on sth **feel** used for saying how sth seems to you when you touch, see, smell or experience it
	***Feel** this material.*	
	***Press** the button and wait.*	**press** push sth to make a machine work / a bell ring

COMMON CONSTRUCTIONS

VERB + **adjective**	VERB + ***like*** + **noun**
*I thought Sarah **looked** sad.*	*Simon **looks like** his brother.*
*The boys **sounded** pleased when they rang me.*	*This music **sounds like** Bach.*
*This soup **smells** horrible.*	*Nectarines **taste like** peaches.*

VERB + ***as if* /*as though*** + **clause**
*There are lots of dark clouds. It **looks as if** it's going to rain.*
*I spoke to Alex yesterday. He **sounded as though** he's enjoying university.*

SENSE VERBS AS NOUNS: ***look, sound*** and ***taste***
*I liked **the look of** the cottage.* = the appearance of it
*I love **the sound of** birds singing.*
*I don't like **the taste of** garlic.*

SPOTLIGHT *can + sense verbs*

We don't use *see, hear, smell* or *taste* in the continuous tenses. We often use **can** with sense verbs.

- *I **can see** several boats in this photo.* (NOT ~~***I see***~~ OR ~~***I'm seeing***~~ *several boats.*)
- *I **can't hear** what they're saying.* (NOT ~~*I don't hear*~~ *…*)

1 Circle the correct verb.

- ▶ She told me to [✓ ***look at***] / ***see*** the board and pay attention.
- **1** What programmes do you ***hear / listen to*** on the radio?
- **2** What can you ***smell / smell like***?
- **3** What can you ***hear / listen to*** at the moment?
- **4** What does your mobile phone ringtone ***sound / sound like***?
- **5** If you put your hand out, can you ***feel / touch*** another person?
- **6** Just ***press / feel*** the bell, and somebody should come and help us.
- **7** What can you ***see / look at*** from where you are sitting?
- **8** Put your hand on your shoes. How do they ***touch / feel***?
- **9** What programmes do you usually ***watch / look at*** on TV?
- **10** When you buy a new jumper, do you always ***feel / press*** it first?

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb.

- ▶ This soup tastes.......... horrible. There's too much salt in it.
- **1** You have to .... the switch, and the machine will start working.
- **2** I .... hear a bird singing. It .... like a blackbird.
- **3** Why is that man .... at me? Have I done something wrong?
- **4** Please don't .... the door: the paint is still wet.
- **5** Did you see Nadia last night? I thought she .... ill.
- **6** I didn't know what the fruit was, so I .... a bit. It was delicious.
- **7** I was trying to .... to the music, but lots of people were talking.
- **8** Can you .... something burning? It must be the toast.
- **9** Marco .... as if he's walked 20 kilometres.
- **10** My head .... very hot. I think I've got a temperature.

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable sense verb and suitable adjective.

- ▶ Molly was happy to take the exam. She sounded.......... confident.......... .
- **1** I washed the floor this morning but it already ....
- **2** He was awake most of the night, and when he spoke he ....
- **3** The jam .... because I put a lot of sugar in it.
- **4** When I put my T-shirt on, it ....
- **5** When I took the cups out of the dishwasher, they didn't ....
- **6** They hadn't turned on the heating, so the room ....
- **7** I think bread .... when it has just come out of the oven.
- **8** Liam explained exactly how to do it, and it ....

4 Use *like* or *as if / though*, then complete each sentence in a logical way.

- ▶ Why is the man holding out his hand? ~ Not sure, but it looks as if he wants money.......... .
- **1** Did you hear that crash? ~ Yes, it sounds ....
- **2** What's that woman doing on the floor? ~ It looks ....
- **3** Can you hear those men shouting at each other? ~ Yes. It sounds ....
- **4** The team are playing very badly. ~ I know. It looks ....
- **5** Simon has a plan for the party. ~ Yes, and it sounds ....
- **6** What's that man doing on the bridge? ~ I don't know, but it looks ....

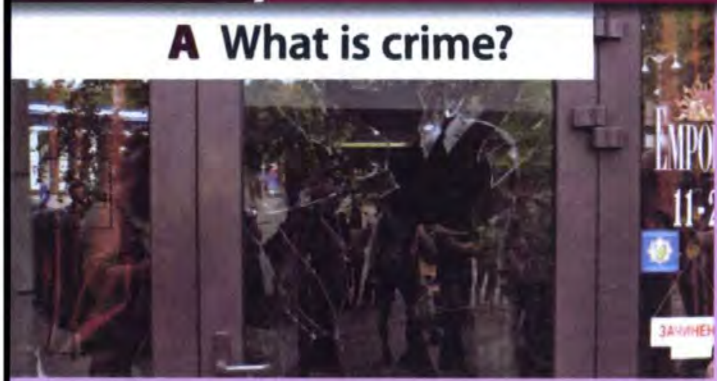
5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- **1** Do you look like your parents? ....
- **2** Do you have brothers or sisters that look like you? ....
- **3** Do you often look as if you're bored? ....
- **4** Do you usually sound as though you're very confident about things? ....
- **5** Do you often feel nervous? ....
- **6** Do you like the taste of garlic? ....
- **7** Do you like the smell of fried fish? ....
- **8** Do you feel positive about your future? ....

TEST YOURSELF

48 Crime

A What is crime?



A **crime** is an activity which is **against the law.** For example, if you **steal** someone's **property,** you are **committing a crime** and **breaking the law.** Some **criminal acts** are **minor,** e.g. you get a **fine** for **illegal** parking. For **serious** crimes, especially violent crimes, e.g. the act of **killing** someone, a person can **go to prison** for a long time.

GLOSSARY	
against the law	against the rules of a country SYN **illegal** OPP **legal**
steal *pt* **stole** *pp* **stolen**	take sth belonging to sb else without permission
property [U]	sth that you have or own, e.g. a computer, jewellery
commit a crime	do sth wrong or illegal
break the law	do sth illegal/against the law
criminal	[*only before a noun*] connected with crime
act	a thing that you do ***a criminal act***
minor	A **minor** crime is not bad or important. OPP **serious**
fine	money that you must pay because you have done sth wrong
killing	an act of killing sb in a way that was planned
go to prison	go to a place where criminals have to stay after they have committed a crime ALSO **send sb to prison** A person **in prison** is a **prisoner.** SYN **jail = prison**

① **Find and circle the verbs below.**

finebreakpropertyviolentlawstealcrimesendsomebodytoprisoncriminalcommitillegalserious

② **Cover the glossary. Is the meaning the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

▶ steal / take something belonging to someone without permission S
1 illegal / against the law ....
2 property / something you own ....
3 the killing of someone / an attack on someone ....
4 a criminal act / a legal act ....
5 commit a crime / break the law ....
6 a minor crime / a serious crime ....
7 prison / jail ....

③ **Complete the sentences.**

▶ She did something terrible, and I heard that she was sent to prison.
1 Have you ever .... a crime?
2 There is a lot of .... behaviour at night: attacks on people and cars, for example.
3 In nearly every country, it is not .... to drive on a public road without a licence.
4 Somebody .... my bike and sold it in the market.
5 I heard that .... has been stolen from several other houses in our street.
6 Some .... escaped from the jail during the fire.
7 The attack on the old man was a very serious .... of violence.
8 He committed a .... crime, and he'll probably go to .... for a long time.
9 He parked in the wrong place. It's only a .... crime, but it's still .... the law.
10 I've never .... the law.
11 Some young men have started carrying knives, and there have been some terrible .... in recent years.
12 I drove through a NO ENTRY sign and had to pay a .... of £80.

TEST YOURSELF

B Types of crime

Crime	Meaning	Verb	Criminal (= a person who commits a crime)
theft	taking sth which belongs to sb else without permission	*He **steals** cars then sells them.*	**thief (*pl* thieves)**
robbery	stealing from a person or place, often using violence	*Two men were planning to **rob** the bank.*	**robber**
burglary	entering a building illegally and stealing things from it	*They **broke into** the house and stole some jewellery.*	**burglar**
assault **attack**	hurting sb physically	*He **assaulted/attacked** a man.* *She **stabbed** the man with a **knife**.*	**attacker**
murder	killing sb when it is planned	*He **murdered** his neighbour.* *He **shot** her dead with his father's **gun**.*	**murderer**

SPOTLIGHT *steal* and *rob*

You **steal** money or things, but you **rob** a person or place.

- *Someone has **stolen** my bike.*
- *I was **robbed** at the football match.*
- *Thieves **stole** €2,000 from the shop.*
- *They **robbed** the museum last night.*

4 Cross out any wrong answers. Be careful: more than one answer may be wrong.

▶ *Rob, ~~thief~~, attack* and *steal* are all verbs.
1 *Theft, murder, robbery* and *burglary* are all ways of getting property.
2 *Theft, parking, burglary* and *assault* are all crimes.
3 *Shoot, assault, stab* and *break in* are all ways of attacking people physically.
4 *Assault, burglary, theft* and *murder* are acts of violence.
5 *Murderer, thief, attacker* and *robbery* are all criminals.

5 True or false? Write *T* or *F*. Correct the false sentences.

▶ You can steal property. T
1 If you murder somebody, they're dead. ....
2 You stab somebody with a gun. ....
3 A burglar breaks into a home. ....
4 A criminal is a person. ....
5 You steal a bank. ....
6 Theft is stealing. ....
7 You shoot somebody with a knife. ....

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ The thief stole $1,000.
1 Two robbers .... into the museum and .... three paintings. A guard tried to stop them, but one robber had a knife and .... him in the chest.
2 The man is a ...., and has spent much of his life in prison. It's mostly for ....: he steals computers and things like that.
3 Someone .... me on the way home last night. He had a gun and and said he would .... me if I didn't give him money and my mobile phone. It was horrible.
4 He will be in prison for the rest of his life for .... his wife. He bought a gun and .... her three times while she was asleep.
5 A .... broke into our house and took jewellery and cameras.
6 The three men .... that bank because it was in a very quiet area.
7 .... from cars has gone down in recent years because of better security. However, ... have increased because more young people have knives.
8 The two men took money from the post office. The .... happened at 4 p.m.

TEST YOURSELF

49 The justice system

A A police investigation

A crime is **reported** to the police, usually by the **victim**.

▼

The police **investigate** it. The victim and **witnesses** tell the police what they know.

▼

The police look for **evidence** and take photos where the crime **took place**.

▼

If possible, they **catch** the person **responsible for** the crime and **arrest** him/her.

▼

If they think they have **proof** this person committed the crime, they will **charge** them.

▼

This person will then go to **court**.

GLOSSARY

report	give information about sth that has happened
victim	a person who has been robbed, injured, killed, etc.
investigate	try to find out about sth **investigation** *n*
witness	a person who sees sth happen, e.g. a crime or an accident
take place	happen
catch *pt/pp* **caught**	find and hold sb
responsible (for sth)	being the person who made sth happen
arrest	When the police **arrest** sb, they take them to a police station to question them about a crime.
charge	If the police **charge** sb, they are saying officially that they believe this person committed a crime: *He was **charged with** murder.*
court	the place where *trials* (see part B) happen and crimes are judged

SPOTLIGHT *evidence* and *proof*

Evidence [U] can be facts, signs or objects that make you think something is true. **Proof** [U] is something that shows that an idea about a crime, an event, etc. is true. **prove** *v.*

- *The police collected **evidence** so they could **prove** the man was guilty.*

1 Answer the questions. Some questions have more than one answer.

▶ Who is caught? The person that the police believe may be responsible for the crime.

1 Who takes photos? ....

2 Who is charged? ....

3 Who investigates the crime? ....

4 Who is affected by the crime? ....

5 Who sees the crime take place? ....

6 Who usually reports the crime? ....

7 Who is arrested? ....

8 Who goes to court? ....

2 Circle the correct answer.

When a robbery has ▶ [✓ *taken place*] / *reported*, someone will **(1)** *investigate / report* it to the police. **(2)** *Victims / Witnesses* will then tell the police what happened to them, so that the police can begin to **(3)** *investigate / charge* the crime. They may take photos where the robbery **(4)** *took place / caught*. If possible, they will **(5)** *report / arrest* the person who they think is responsible. If they get enough **(6)** *evidence / victims*, they will **(7)** *catch / charge* the person, and he/she will have to go to **(8)** *court / the police station*.

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ A group of young people have been arrested for several crimes in the area.

1 I saw the robbery and .... it to the police.

2 The police think he committed the crime, but unfortunately they can't .... it.

3 Two men were .... with robbery.

4 The police .... the man leaving the shop. He had over £1,000 on him, so they .... him immediately and took him to the police station for questioning.

5 The police carried out a very detailed .... to find the people responsible.

6 They are looking for .... who saw what happened.

7 One problem is that .... often suffer for a long time after a crime has .... place.

8 They charged the woman with the crime and she will appear in .... on Monday.

TEST YOURSELF

B In court

In Britain, serious crimes such as robbery and murder, are **tried** in **court** by a **judge** and **jury**. The **purpose of** the **trial** is to **examine** the evidence and **determine whether** somebody is **innocent** or **guilty** of the crime that they have been charged with. That is the jury's decision. If the person is guilty, the judge will then decide the correct **punishment** for the crime.

the jury
witness
court

GLOSSARY

try	ask sb questions in court to decide if they have done sth illegal
purpose (of sth)	the aim or intention of sth
trial	the process in a court of law where a judge, and often a jury, listens to the evidence and decides if sb is guilty of a crime or not
examine	look carefully at sth/sb **examination** *n*
determine	discover the facts about sth
innocent	If you are **innocent,** you haven't done anything wrong. OPP **guilty**
punishment	what sb must suffer for doing sth wrong, e.g. go to prison **punish** *v*

SPOTLIGHT *whether (... or not)*

1 We use **whether** to talk about choosing between two things:
*I don't know **whether** to go **or not**.*
*I don't know **whether** to buy that suit **or not**.*
2 **Whether** can also mean **if**:
*She asked me **whether** I was Spanish.*

4 True or false about British courts? Write *T* or *F*. Correct the false sentences.

▶ A trial decides that somebody is guilty. F – A trial decides whether somebody is innocent or guilty.
1 Trials take place in a court. ……………
2 A trial looks at all the evidence. ……………
3 A judge determines whether the person is guilty or not. ……………
4 The jury must listen to all the evidence. ……………
5 If the person is innocent, they will go to prison. ……………
6 The jury decides the punishment. ……………

5 Put the sentences in the correct order.

a The jury decided that the person was guilty. ☐
b The police charged this person. ☐
c Somebody committed a crime. 1
d The person went to court. ☐
e The police arrested somebody. ☐
f The jury listened to the evidence. ☐
g The police investigated the crime. ☐
h The victim reported the crime. ☐
i The judge decided on the punishment. ☐

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ The person on trial may be guilty or innocent .
1 I sat in …………… for three days while a man was being …………… for the crime.
2 If you are guilty of a crime, the …………… could be years in prison.
3 The police …………… all the evidence they had.
4 A …………… has to tell the court what they saw or know about the crime.
5 We had to decide …………… to believe the witness or not.
6 The …………… have to …………… whether the person is innocent or …………… .
7 The …………… of the investigation was to find who was responsible for the murder.
8 The …………… lasted for six days, and at the end, the …………… sent the woman to prison for two years.

TEST YOURSELF

50 Health issues

A Diseases of the young

In the developed world, fewer children now **suffer from** the **diseases** which are still a problem in developing countries, but the number of young people **around the world** with **asthma** has increased. There are **various** reasons for this, but doctors believe that **breathing difficulties** are often caused by **allergies** to cigarette smoking, certain types of food or pollution. There has also been an increase in **mental** health **issues** among **the young**, and these are often very hard to **treat**.

SPOTLIGHT *disease* and *illness*

An illness [C] is a medical problem. **Illness** [U] is a period when you are not well. **(A) disease** [C,U] is a serious physical medical problem, and quite often spreads from person to person, e.g. typhoid. It can affect a particular part of the body.

- ***heart disease***
- ***skin disease***

GLOSSARY

the young [*pl*]	young people considered as a group
suffer (from sth)	have the experience of sth bad
around the world	everywhere; all parts of the world
asthma	a medical condition which makes it difficult to breathe
various	several different: *He has* ***various*** *illnesses.* **variety** *n*
breathing	taking in and letting out air through your nose and mouth
difficulty	a problem; sth that is not easy to do
allergy	a medical condition that makes you ill when you touch, eat or breathe sth that doesn't normally make other people ill: ***a nut allergy*** **allergic (to sth)** *adj*
mental	of or in your mind: ***mental*** *illness*
issue	an important problem that people talk about
treat	try to make a sick person well again **treatment** *n*

① Match a word from Box A with a word from Box B to form six more phrases.

skin ✓
suffer
various
breathing
allergic
treat
mental

difficulty
to certain types of food
illness
from asthma
disease ✓
illnesses
a sick patient

▶ skin disease ....

....

② Complete the sentences.

▶ If you have breathing difficulties, you may be suffering from asthma.
1 Some people have an .... to milk or nuts. It can affect their breathing.
2 Taking in and letting out air through the nose and mouth is called ....
3 She's got .... allergies: shellfish and nuts, and also to cat fur.
4 An illness that spreads from person to person is often called a ....
5 Asthma is a common disease amongst the .... in Europe and the USA.
6 Care for older people is a major .... for many countries in the western world.
7 Doctors .... many diseases with a .... of drugs.
8 My sister is .... to certain drugs, such as aspirin and some antibiotics.

③ Complete the text.

My younger brother has never had very good health. He has had ▶ asthma all his life, which gives him serious **(1)** .... problems, and sometimes he also has **(2)** .... sleeping. As a child, doctors **(3)** .... him for a skin **(4)** ...., which made his skin red and often painful. Fortunately, he grew out of that, but recently he has **(5)** .... from periods of **(6)** .... illness, which may be related to his **(7)** .... physical problems. The main **(8)** .... for his mental **(9)** .... has been various drugs to help him manage his emotions better.

TEST YOURSELF

B An ageing population

In the western world, people are living longer. This is good news, but an **ageing** population also creates social and **economic** problems, and we have to **limit** how much we spend. Who **cares for the elderly**, and **equally** important, who pays for that **care**? Should the government ask everyone to **save** more money for their **old age**, so they can pay for their own care? Should we also ask **working** people to pay for the elderly through higher **taxes**? One answer, of course, is to help older people to keep up their **strength**, and to stay **fit** for **as long as possible**.

SPOTLIGHT *as … as possible*

You use this structure to emphasize an adjective or adverb.

- *I want to work* ***as long as possible*** */* ***I possibly can.*** (= the longest time possible)
- *I'll do it* ***as soon as possible.*** (= at the earliest possible moment)
- *He wants it* ***as quickly as possible.*** (= in the quickest possible time)
- *I go there* ***as much as possible.*** (= the most I can)

GLOSSARY

ageing	becoming older **age** *v*
economic	connected with the way people and countries spend money and make, buy and sell things **(the) economy** *n*
limit sth (to sb)	keep sth below a certain amount, size, degree, etc. **limit (on sth)** *n*
care for sb	do the things for sb that they need. A person who cares for a sick or old person, usually at home, is a **carer. care** *n*
the elderly	a polite way of saying old people
equally	in the same way
save (money)	keep or not spend money so you can spend it later
old age	the part of your life when you are old
working	employed; having a job: ***working*** *mothers*
tax	money that you have to pay to the government
strength	how strong you are
fit	healthy and strong **fitness** *n*

4 Match words from Box A with words from Box B.

A working ✓ save as soon care for limit an ageing old

B mothers ✓ the elderly as possible what we spend age money population

▶ working mothers

5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

▶ His mother has aged since her illness. AGE
1 My mother was a .... for a number of years. CARE
2 Our country has some serious .... problems. ECONOMY
3 You need your .... when you get ill. STRONG
4 .... is very important as you get older. FIT
5 He needs a job without stress, but money is .... important. EQUAL
6 Good public transport affects everyone, not just .... people. WORK
7 I'll come as soon as I .... can. POSSIBLE

6 Complete the sentences. ABOUT YOU

▶ I don't like work. I'd like to stop working as soon as possible.
1 Countries with .... populations may need to employ more foreign workers.
2 I don't want to to stop work: I want to work as long as ....
3 One problem is that young people are not interested in the problems of the ....
4 In my country children often .... for their elderly parents if they get sick.
5 I can't think of any good things about old ....
6 I do a lot of exercise so that I can stay .... for as .... as possible.
7 I think working people should pay more .... to help the elderly. There is a .... to how much old people can contribute.

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Do you think the sentences in Exercise 6 are true for you? And do you agree with them?**

▶ That's not true for me. I enjoy work and would like to work until I'm no longer able to.

TEST YOURSELF

51 Politics

A The British political system

In the British political **system**, **elections** must be **held** every five years, though it can be sooner than that in some situations. The UK is divided into 650 political areas, and in each area people **vote for** one person **representing** the **political party** they want to see **in power**. The **politician** with the most **votes** becomes the **Member of Parliament** (known as an **MP**) for that area. **Parliament**, therefore, has 650 MPs, and the party with the **majority** of MPs usually forms the **government**. The leader of that party also becomes **prime minister**.

SPOTLIGHT *politics*

Politics is the work and ideas that are connected with government. A **politician** is somebody who works in politics, and a **political party** is a group of people with the same ideas who want to win an election, e.g. in the UK, the **Labour Party** and the **Conservative Party**.

GLOSSARY

system	a set of ideas or rules for organizing sth
election [C, U]	the time of choosing a Member of Parliament, President, etc. by voting **elect** *v*
hold an election	organize an election
vote (for sb/sth)	choose sb/sth in an election **vote** *n*
represent	speak or do sth in place of another person or a group
in power	in political control of a country
Member of Parliament (*pl* **Members of Parliament**)	a person who has been elected to represent people from a particular area in Parliament ALSO **MP**
parliament	the group of people elected to make the laws in a country
majority	the largest number or part of sth OPP **minority**
government	the group of people in control of a country
prime minister (OR **PM**)	the leader of the government in some countries

1 **True or false about the British system? Write *T* or *F*. Correct the sentences that are false.**

▶ In the UK, elections must be held every four years. F – In the UK, elections must be held every five years.
1 Politics is the work and ideas that are connected with governing a country, a town, etc. ....
2 People can only vote for one person in UK elections. ....
3 Two or three people may be elected in each area. ....
4 If you are a Member of Parliament, you are in the government. ....
5 The leader of the largest political party in parliament becomes prime minister. ....
6 The party with the minority of elected MPs usually forms the government. ....

2 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ PM is an abbreviation of prime minister.
1 How often does your country .... elections for parliament?
2 My uncle was .... as an MP a few years ago.
3 In the UK, the Labour Party was in .... from 1997 to 2010.
4 Who did you .... for in the last election?
5 .... from all the political parties agreed with the idea.
6 She had over 50% of the ...., so it was a .... that voted for her.
7 The Labour party is one of the main .... in the UK.
8 Politicians .... the people who elect them.
9 Is the British political .... similar to the one in your country?

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 How often does your country usually hold elections? ....
2 Which political party is in power at the moment? ....
3 How long have they been in power? ....
4 What is the title of the leader of the party? ....
5 How many people are there in parliament? ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Political objectives

The government is now preparing for the next election, and today the prime minister will **focus on** education and the **need for** more young people to go to university.

The Transport Minister is also **due to announce** today a new transport **policy**, including special **measures** which aim to **persuade** drivers to leave their cars at home.

The government has already said that one of its **objectives** will be to **put forward** ideas for new **laws** to **protect immigrant** workers.

GLOSSARY	
focus (on sth)	give all your attention to sth **focus** *n*
need (for sth)	a situation in which you must have or do sth
due to do sth	arranged or expected
announce	say sth officially and in public **announcement** *n*
policy	a plan to do sth, agreed by a government, company, etc.
measure (*usually pl*)	an official action that is done for a special reason
persuade sb (to do sth)	make sb think sth or do sth by giving them good reasons
objective	sth that you want and plan to do SYN **aim**; **aim** *v*
put sth forward	suggest sth for discussion
law	a rule of a country that says what people may or may not do
protect	keep sb/sth safe **protection** *n*
immigrant	a person who comes from one country to another country to live there **immigration** *n*

4 Cover the glossary. Circle the correct answer.

▶ A law is something that people *often do in a country* / [✓ *must do in a country*]
1 If you announce something, you say it in *public* / *private*.
2 If you persuade somebody to do something, they *do* / *don't do* it.
3 If you protect somebody, you *keep them safe* / *support and help them*.
4 If you focus on something, you *give it your attention* / *decide to do something*.
5 Immigration is the process of coming to *visit* / *live in* another country.
6 If you put something forward, you *suggest* / *vote for* it.
7 An objective is something you *want* / *don't like*.
8 A policy is *a plan agreed by a group* / *a political idea you like*.

5 Complete these sentences about language.

▶ The noun from the verb *protect* is protection .
1 The noun from the verb *announce* is ....
2 The noun from the verb *focus* is ....
3 The preposition that follows *focus* is ....
4 Another word for an *aim* is an ....
5 *Persuade* is followed by an object and an ....
6 The noun *need* can be followed by the preposition ....

6 Complete the words in each sentence.

▶ The government has admitted the need for a change in its education policy.
1 The party has agreed a new p................ on house building, and will a................ it tomorrow in parliament.
2 The number of i................ coming to this country from Eastern Europe has fallen.
3 The prime minister still has to p................ many of her MPs to agree with her farming policy.
4 This week, MPs will consider m................ to reduce air pollution in cities as soon as possible.
5 The main a................ of the education policy is to give parents more choice.
6 The prime minister is d................ to announce a general election for 18 May.
7 In the speech, the prime minister will f................ on health issues and the n................ for more hospital beds.
8 The new law gives workers more p................ from bad employers.

TEST YOURSELF

52 War and peace

A War

… The **bomb exploded** in the city centre killing ten people and **injuring** many more.

… **Soldiers fought** a terrible **gun battle**, **firing** for two hours at **enemy fighters** …

… The enemy **leader** managed to **escape**, but most of his soldiers were either killed or handed in their **weapons**, and the **army is** now **in control of** the situation.

soldiers

GLOSSARY	
bomb	a thing that explodes and hurts people or damages things **bomb** *v*
explode	burst with force and a loud noise **explosion** *n* SYN **go off**
injure	hurt sb, often in a fight or accident
fight *pt/pp* **fought**	use physical strength, guns, weapons, etc. against sb/sth. Sb who fights is a **fighter. fight** *n*
battle	a fight between armies in a war **gun battle**
fire (at/on sb/sth)	shoot bullets from a gun
enemy	the people your army or country is fighting against
leader	a person who controls a group or team
escape	get free from sb/sth SYN **get away**
weapon	sth, such as a gun or knife, that is used to kill or injure people
army	a large group of soldiers who fight on land in a war
be in control (of sth)	have the power or ability to deal with sth

① Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶ Twelve soldiers b
1 They're in control ....
2 Soldiers fought ....
3 The planes bombed ....
4 Two enemy fighters ....
5 The battle ....
6 There was a loud ....

a managed to escape.
b were injured. ✓
c explosion.
d of the city.
e a long battle.
f the area around the city.
g lasted several days.

② Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

▶ They were physically hurting each other. fighting
1 They were the men we fought against. ....
2 She is the one who controls the group. ....
3 It was a large thing that explodes. ....
4 He's a member of the army. ....
5 They found bombs, guns and knives. ....
6 Where did the bomb go off? ....

③ Complete the dialogues.

▶ How many soldiers are in the army? ~ Over 10,000.
1 Why did the people run away? ~ Because the army was .... at them.
2 How long has your brother been in the .... ? ~ He's been a soldier for ten years.
3 When did the .... go off? ~ Early, and it was a very loud ....
4 Did any of the soldiers die in the .... ? ~ No, but two were badly ....
5 Have they caught the enemy .... ? ~ Yes. He tried to .... , but they got him.
6 Is the army in .... of the situation now? ~ Yes, the .... fighters have gone.
7 Did the army find any .... ? ~ Yes, lots of guns and explosive devices.
8 Did the soldiers attack? ~ Yes, they .... a short battle with enemy ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Peace

The region has been **at war** for several years now. All the countries **involved** have been **holding talks** for over a year to try and end the **fighting**. The first **attempt** at **peace** was **rejected within** days, but further talks at **reaching an agreement** have taken place, and now it seems that the two **sides** are more **determined** to achieve a **lasting** peace.

SPOTLIGHT verb + noun

Certain verbs are often used together with certain nouns.

- ***reach*** *an agreement*
- ***hold*** *talks*
- ***make*** *an attempt*
- ***go to*** *war*

GLOSSARY

at war	fighting with weapons against different groups or countries, usually for a long time
involved (in sth)	being part of sth or connected with sth **involve** *v*
talks *pl*	formal discussions between countries and their governments
fighting	the activity of fighting against the enemy
attempt (at sth)	trying to do sth that is difficult **attempt** *v*
peace	a time when there is no war between people or countries
reject	say that you do not want sb/sth **rejection** *n*
within	before the end of
agreement	a contract or decision that two or more people have made together
side	one of two groups who fight or play a game against each other
determined	very certain that you want to do sth
lasting	continuing for a long time

4 Cover the glossary. Circle the correct answer.

▶ If you hold **talks**, you have [✓ *formal*] / *informal* discussions with people.
1 If something happens **within** a week, it will happen in *less / more* than a week.
2 If you **reject** something, you say you *want / don't want* it.
3 If you are **involved** in something, you are *part / not part* of it.
4 If you make an **attempt** at doing something, you *try / fail* to do it.
5 If you are **at war** with another country, the *fighting has not ended / the sides are involved in talks.*
6 If you are **determined**, you are *sure / not sure* that you want to do something.
7 If something is **lasting**, it continues for a *short / long* time.
8 If you **reach an agreement** with somebody, you have *made a decision with them / had an argument with them.*

5 Complete the text.

The civil war has now lasted almost ten years. The two ▶ sides have **(1)** ………… an agreement on several occasions in the past, but so far it has never been a **(2)** ………… peace. Last month, however, the two leaders **(3)** ………… in the war agreed to stop the **(4)** ………… and hold new **(5)** ………… in a final **(6)** ………… to achieve peace. They say they are **(7)** ………… to reach an **(8)** ………… this time. But if either side walks away and **(9)** ………… these latest proposals for peace, they may still be at **(10)** ………… for many years.

6 Complete the sentences in a logical way. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

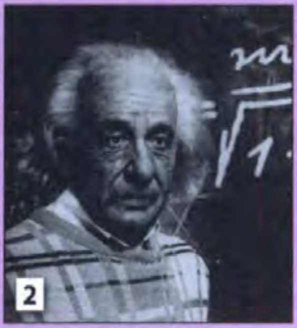
▶ They want to achieve a lasting peace/solution .
1 Both sides want to reach an ………… .
2 I'm going to make one final ………… .
3 I should finish my report within ………… .
4 The two sides have agreed to hold ………… .
5 She rejected my ………… .
6 I'm determined to ………… .

TEST YOURSELF

53 Events in history

Date	Event
1909	Robert Peary **claimed** he was the first person to reach the North Pole, but later that **claim** was **challenged**.
1911	The Norwegian, Roald Amundsen[1], **led** the first Antarctic **expedition** that successfully reached the South Pole.
1915	Einstein[2] **developed** his **Theory** of Relativity over a **decade**, finally completing it in 1915.
1923	Turkey became a **republic**, and Mustafa Kemal Atatürk became its first **president**.
1928	Alexander Fleming **discovered** penicillin.
1947	India **gained independence**.
1953	After the death of **King** George VI, his daughter **Princess** Elizabeth became **Queen** Elizabeth II[3].
1986	An explosion at the Chernobyl **nuclear power station** in Ukraine became one of the world's worst man-made disasters.
1989	Charles Babbage **invented** the first mechanical computer in the early 19th century. The **invention** of the World Wide Web was in 1989 by Tim Berners-Lee. This was made **available** to the public in 1991.
1990	Nelson Mandela[4] was **released** from prison. Mandela's life was one of constant **challenges**. He later became president of South Africa.

Roald Amundsen



Albert Einstein

Queen Elizabeth II

Nelson Mandela

GLOSSARY

claim	say that sth is true **claim** *n*
challenge	say that you think sb/sth is wrong
lead *pt/pp* **led**	control a group of people. A person who **leads** is the **leader**.
expedition	a journey to do or find sth special
develop	grow slowly, increase, or change into sth else; make sb/sth do this **development** *n*
theory	an idea or a set of ideas that tries to explain sth
decade	a period of ten years
republic	a country with a president, but with no king or queen
president	the leader of a country with no king or queen
discover	find sth that nobody had found before **discovery** *n*
gain independence	become free from control by another country SYN **become independent**
nuclear	using the energy that is produced when the central part of an atom is broken: ***nuclear power***
power station	a place where electricity is produced
invent	make or think of sth for the first time **invention** *n*
available	ready for you to use, have or see
release	allow sb to be free **release** *n*
challenge *n*	sth new or difficult that forces you to make a lot of effort

SPOTLIGHT royal families

A **royal** family is one connected with a **king** or **queen**. A man who **rules** a country (= has power over a country) is a king; a woman who rules is a queen. The son or grandson of a king or queen is a **prince**; the daughter or granddaughter is a **princess**. A country that has a king or queen is a **monarchy**.

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Two words have two possible stress patterns. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ release
- 1 decade
- 2 princess
- 3 republic
- 4 develop
- 5 president
- 6 monarchy
- 7 available
- 8 discovery
- 9 development
- 10 independence
- 11 nuclear

2 Find pairs of words in the box that often go together.

prince ✓	king	invention	monarchy	decade	nuclear
discovery	power	queen	century	princess ✓	republic

▶ prince/princess ....

....

3 Cover the glossary. Complete the definitions.

▶ A monarchy is a country with a king or queen.

1 If you become free from control by another country, you become ....

2 The daughter of a king or queen is a ....

3 A country with no king or queen is a ....

4 A family connected with kings or queens is a .... family.

5 The leader of a country with no king or queen is usually the ....

6 An idea or a set of ideas that tries to explain something is a ....

7 A journey to do or find something special is an ....

8 Something new or difficult to do that forces you to make a lot of effort is a ....

9 A place where electricity is produced is a ....

4 Complete the sentences.

▶ Margrethe II of Denmark became queen after her father King Frederick IX died in 1972.

1 Martin Cooper .... the mobile phone in April 1973, and a decade later the first Motorola mobile phones were made .... to the public.

2 For a long time, people believed that Christopher Columbus .... America, but in recent years many people have .... that belief.

3 Prince William is a member of the British .... family.

4 Ronald Reagan was elected .... of the US in 1980.

5 In 1975, ... Juan Carlos became .... of Spain, and he .... until 2014.

6 Argentina gained .... in 1816, and Brazil became .... in 1822.

7 Aleksandr Solzhenitsyn spent eight years in prison before he was .... in 1953.

8 Freud believed children went through different stages of sexual .... before they became adults.

9 In 1911, Captain Scott .... a British .... to reach the South Pole, but the Norwegian explorer Roald Amundsen got there first. Scott died in Antarctica soon after.

10 In 2011, a serious accident happened at a .... power station in Fukushima, Japan.

5 Complete these questions about events in world history. ABOUT YOU

▶ Chuck Berry is the father of rock'n roll, but who is the king of rock'n roll? Elvis Presley

1 Who published his .... of evolution in 1859? ....

2 King Abdullah II is married to .... Rania. Which country does he rule? ....

3 Who was .... of the US from 2009-2017? ....

4 In which .... did people start using Facebook? Was it the 2000s or the 2010s? ....

5 Who was Diana, ... of Wales? She was killed in a car crash in Paris in 1997. ....

6 Which country became a .... in 1917 after being ruled by the Romanovs? ....

7 Who is the Supreme .... of North Korea? ....

8 Who .... he was the first person to climb Mount Everest in 1953? (Most people still believe it, but some people have .... that ....) ....

9 Who .... a theory of the psyche involving the ego and super ego? ....

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5, or answer them with another student. If you don't know any answers, use the internet to help you.

TEST YOURSELF

54 Social issues

A Young and old

What's wrong with young people?

Some older people complain they have a **fear** of going out at night because of increasing **violence** and the number of young people who are **drunk**. But is it right for them to **be frightened**?

It's true that the number of reported **violent** crimes has increased, but also true that the police have become more **expert** at **recording** crime. Their enquiries are more successful because victims seem more **willing to** report crime. This may **account for** the increase.

There is also a growing **trend** for young people to **consume** less alcohol now than ten or fifteen years ago. Why? It's probably a **combination** of **factors.** Alcohol is expensive, it makes you lose control, and there seems to be a cultural move away from heavy drinking of alcohol.

GLOSSARY	
fear	the feeling you have when you think sth bad may happen
violence	behaviour which damages sth or harms sb physically **violent** *adj*
drunk	If a person is **drunk**, they have had too much alcohol. **drunk** *n*
frighten	make sb feel suddenly afraid
expert	knowing a lot about sth **expert** *n*
record	write notes about things so that you can remember them later **record** *n* (Note the different stress in the verb and the noun.)
enquiry	an official process to find out about sth
willing (to do sth)	ready and happy to do sth OPP **unwilling**
account for sth	explain or give a reason for sth
trend	a general direction in which a situation is changing or developing
consume *formal*	eat or drink
combination	two or more things joined together **combine** *v*
factor	one of the things that causes or affects sth

1 Good news or bad news? Write *G* or *B*.

▶ He's unwilling to help. B
1 He's drunk. ....
2 I got expert advice. ....
3 He's very violent. ....
4 They frightened me. ....
5 He's willing to help. ....
6 There's no record of the attack on the victim. ....
7 She has a fear of speaking in public. ....

2 True, false or don't know? Write *T*, *F* or *don't know*. Correct any false sentences.

▶ All older people have a fear violence on the streets at night. F – Some older people have a fear of violence on the streets at night.
1 The number of reported violent crimes has increased. ....
2 The number of violent crimes has increased. ....
3 The police are better at recording crimes. ....
4 Victims are less willing to report crimes. ....
5 Young people get drunk more. ....
6 Young people drink less only because of cost. ....

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ Police are trying to stop violent attacks on medical staff.
1 There is a growing .... for young people to move to the big cities.
2 The robbers were prepared to use .... if we didn't give them our money.
3 How do you .... for the increase in the number of young people carrying knives?
4 People don't usually take drugs for just one reason: it's usually a .... of factors.
5 I spoke to a professor who is an .... on poverty in large cities.
6 People who .... a lot of alcohol and get .... are a danger to society.
7 People have a growing .... of terrorism in many countries.
8 Doctors must keep clear and accurate .... of their discussions with patients.
9 The police are very busy with a murder .... at the moment.

TEST YOURSELF

B Charities

Charities: good or bad?

The number of **charities** in the UK is enormous, with more than 600 registered **cancer** charities alone, and more than 200 charities for **homeless** people in London. Most of these charities depend on **donations** to **raise money,** and often on **volunteers** (many of whom are **retired**) to do the work. While the **passion** of so many people who want to help is wonderful, this situation is not ideal. More and more charities are now doing similar work and **competing with** each other for money. **As a consequence**, they **are forced to** spend more on marketing, **rather than** actually helping people. This means some people are losing confidence in charities and giving them less money. What should **society** do about this?

GLOSSARY	
charity	an organization that collects money to help people who need it
cancer	a very dangerous illness that can affect many parts of the body: *Smoking can cause* ***lung cancer****.*
homeless	without a place to live
donation	giving sth, especially money, to people who need it **donate** *v*
raise money	get money from other people for a particular purpose
volunteer	a person who is willing to do a job without being paid, **volunteer** *v*; **voluntary** *adj*
retired	no longer working because you have reached a particular age or because you are sick
passion	a very strong feeling for sth and interest in it **passionate** *adj*
compete (with sb)	try to win a race or competition against sb
consequence	a result of sth that has happened: ***as a consequence***
force sb (to do sth)	make sb do sth that they do not want to do
rather than	in the place of; instead of
society	a large group of people who live in the same country or area and have the same ideas about sth

4 **Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ charity
1 compete
2 consequence
3 homeless
4 donation
5 volunteer
6 passionate
7 voluntary
8 society
9 retired

5 **Cover the glossary. Complete the explanations.**

▶ *Cancer* is a very dangerous illness .
1 A *charity* is an organization that .... people.
2 A *passion* is a very strong ....
3 If you do one thing ***rather than*** something else, you do it .... of something else.
4 A ***homeless*** person has .... to live.
5 A ***volunteer*** does a job without being ....
6 A ***consequence*** of something is a .... of something.
7 A ***retired*** person is no longer ....

7 **Complete the dialogues.** ABOUT YOU

▶ Is it a paid job? ~ No, she's a volunteer for a charity . ...
1 Do you have to attend the training courses? ~ No, they're ....
2 She loves working for *The Cats & Dogs Home.* ~ I know. She's always had a .... for animals, and she enjoys .... for charities. ....
3 Do they get money from the government? ~ No, they have to .... it themselves. ....
4 Are they the only charity in this sector? ~ No, they have to .... with other charities. ....
5 How do they get their money? ~ It comes from .... from companies. ....
6 Do you ever .... money to charities? ~ Yes, I do sometimes. ....
7 What can we do about homeless people in today's .... ? ~ Build homes for them. ....
8 Why are the children not going to school? ~ To try and .... the government to take action on climate change. ....

7 ABOUT YOU **Can you think of a famous cancer or other charity in your country? Do charities compete with other charities? What is the solution to the problem expressed in the text above? Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

55 Irregular verbs

A Bad things happen ...

The burglar **set off** the burglar **alarm,** which woke everyone up, but he **ran away** before we saw him.

I **set** my alarm clock last night, but I still **overslept**. I **sprang out of** bed and tripped over my shoes.

Last week it was so cold that our pipes **froze** in the bathroom, and then they **burst**. It made a terrible mess, but fortunately my husband was at home and **dealt with** it.

We were on the lake when our little boat **sank**. We managed to swim to the shore and then **lay** there exhausted, not sure what to do. As it **grew** darker, we started to feel cold and miserable.

GLOSSARY	
set sth off *pt/pp* **set**	do sth that starts a reaction
alarm	a machine that warns you of a danger by ringing a loud bell: ***a fire/burglar alarm***
run away *pt* ***ran*** *pp* ***run***	escape from somewhere
set *pt/pp* **set**	prepare or arrange sth for a particular purpose
oversleep *pt/pp* **overslept**	sleep longer than you should have done
spring *pt* **sprang** *pp* **sprung**	jump or move quickly: ***spring*** *out of bed / to your feet*
freeze *pt* **froze** *pp* **frozen**	become hard and often change into ice
burst *pt* **burst** *pp* **burst**	break open suddenly and violently, usually because there is too much pressure inside
deal with sth/sb *pt/pp* **dealt**	take action in a situation in order to solve a problem
sink *pt* **sank** *pp* **sunk**	go down, or make sth go down under the surface of a liquid or soft substance
lie *pt* **lay** *pp* **lain**	be in a flat or horizontal position, not standing or sitting
grow *pt* **grew** *pt* **grown**	become: ***grow*** *dark/old/bored*

1 Circle the past participles.

frozeran[✓ sprung]grewrunoversleptburstdealtsanksetspringfrozenlaygrown

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ What time did you get up? ~ I set........ the alarm for 7.00 but didn't get up until 7.30.

1 What was the cause of the accident? ~ A tyre ...., and the car went out of control.

2 Why were you late for work? ~ Because I ....

3 The water in the dog's bowl has ....! ~ That's not surprising: the temperature fell below zero last night.

4 What happened to the boat? ~ It .... because there was a hole in the bottom of it.

5 Has Rina solved the problem with the keys? ~ Yes, she's .... it.

6 Did you feel tired when you woke up? ~ No, I .... bed.

7 Where has Freddie gone? ~ He was frightened of the horse and ....

8 Was it dark when you drove here this morning? ~ Yes, but it .... light as I got nearer.

9 Were you tired after the journey? ~ Yes, very. I .... on my bed for an hour and then felt much better.

10 Did you hear the fire ....? ~ No, I wasn't at home at the time. Is everything OK?

3 Complete the questions with a suitable verb.

ABOUT YOU

Have you ever:

▶ overslept........ before an important exam or meeting? ....

.... out of bed and injured yourself? ....

.... a burglar alarm or a fire alarm? ....

had to .... with a difficult boss, colleague or student? ....

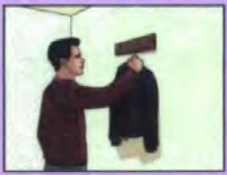
.... a child's balloon? ....

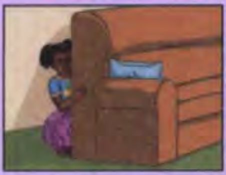
.... an alarm clock for the wrong time? ....

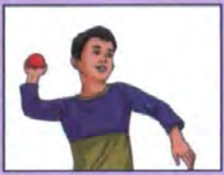
4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.

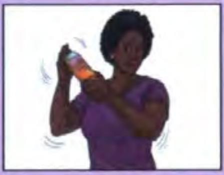
TEST YOURSELF

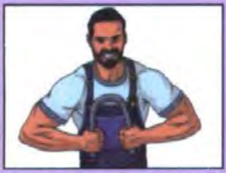
B Action verbs

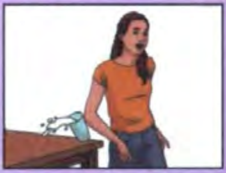

1 He **hung up** his coat.

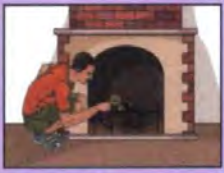

2 She **hid** behind the sofa.

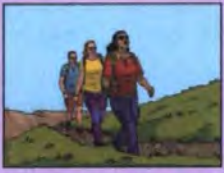

3 He **threw** the ball.

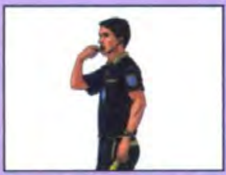

4 She **shook** the bottle.

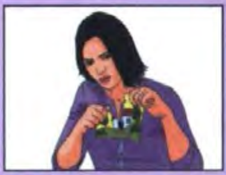

5 He **bent** the metal.

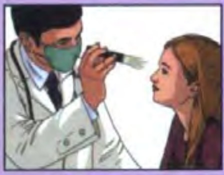

6 She **spilt** her drink.

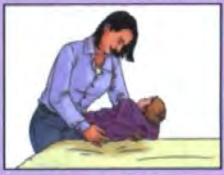

7 I **lit** a fire.


8 Hannah **led** us up the hill.


9 The referee **blew** his whistle.


10 She **tore** the picture into pieces.


11 He **shone** a torch into my eye.


12 She **laid** the baby on the bed.

5 **Can you complete the past participles? Use the irregular verbs list on pages 202–204 if necessary.**

▶ hang / hung / hung..........
1 hide / hid / ....
2 throw / threw / ....
3 shake / shook / ....
4 blow / blew / ....
5 spill / spilt / ....
6 shine / shone / ....
7 bend / bent / ....
8 light / lit / ....
9 tear / tore / ....
10 lay / laid / ....

6 **Cross out the wrong answer.**

▶ He laid the ***newspaper / books / ~~juice~~*** on the table.
1 I threw the ***ball / book / horse***.
2 He hid behind the ***cup / bed / wardrobe***.
3 I bent the ***spoon / pencil / key***.
4 I lit the ***fire / cigarette / water***.
5 She spilt some ***juice / boxes / white coffee*** on the floor.
6 I shone a ***light / torch / fire*** on the documents.
7 She shook the ***carton of milk / bottle / wall***.
8 He hung up his ***scarf / gloves / jacket***.

7 **Complete the sentences with a suitable verb in the correct form.**

▶ Don't shake.......... that bottle of fizzy water before you open it!
1 The receptionist .... the guests into the restaurant.
2 Joanna has .... some tea on her dress, and it's left a mark.
3 Someone .... a candle so that we could see a bit more clearly.
4 I tried turning the key in the lock. It didn't work and I think I've .... the key.
5 He saw a soldier coming so he .... behind a wall.
6 The policemen stopped the man in the street and .... a torch into his bag.
7 I gave him the letter; he read it and then .... it into little pieces.
8 I went in quietly, took off my coat and .... it ....
9 The referee has .... his whistle, so it's the end of the game.
10 I .... the map on the ground so we could see exactly where we were going.

8 **Make sure you know the meaning and irregular forms of the following verbs. Use the APP to help you and the irregular verb list on pages 202–204.**

rise choose spread keep break bring feed

TEST YOURSELF

56 Verb + infinitive or *-ing* form

You will know many of these verbs, and others are explained in the glossary. If you need further help, use the Word List or the APP.

After some verbs we use an infinitive with ***to***:

agree
afford
arrange
attempt
decide
expect
forget
hope
manage
need
offer
plan
pretend
promise
refuse
seem
tend
want

He **attempted to climb** the north side of the mountain.
They **can't afford to buy** a new car.
I **tend to relax** in the evenings and watch TV.
She **pretended to feel** happy, but I knew she wasn't.

After some verbs we use an ***-ing*** **form**:

admit
avoid
consider
enjoy
fancy
finish
give up
imagine
keep
(not) mind
practise
risk
stop
suggest
take up

I **avoid** going to the dentist if possible.
I **took up** swimming to get fit.
I **gave up** smoking ten years ago.
I don't want to **risk** losing any money.
We **considered** moving house, but then decided to stay here.
Sara **doesn't mind** sitting in front of a computer all day.
I can't **imagine** spending every day in an office.
The boy **admitted** stealing the money.
Do you **fancy** going out this evening?

A few verbs can be followed by an infinitive or *-ing* form with a similar meaning:

start **begin** **continue**

It started raining. = It started to rain.

Others can have slightly different meanings:

like **love** **prefer**

I like swimming. (= I enjoy swimming.)
***I like** to do the housework in a particular order.* (= it's my habit or preference)

SPOTLIGHT *keep*

When **keep** means to continue doing something or to repeat an action many times, it is followed by an *-ing* form.

- ***Keep going** until you get to the station.*
- *I **keep losing** my pen.*
- *He **keeps coughing** at night.*

GLOSSARY

attempt to do sth	try to do sth, often sth difficult
afford to do sth	If you **can afford sth/to do sth**, you have enough money for it.
tend to do sth	usually do or be sth
pretend to do sth	try to make sb believe sth that isn't true
refuse to do sth	say you will not do sth that sb has asked you to do
take up doing sth	start doing sth regularly, often as a hobby
give up doing sth	stop doing or having sth
risk doing sth	put sth or yourself in danger
consider doing sth	think about sth carefully
not mind doing sth	not feel unhappy or angry about sth: *I don't **mind** getting up early.*
imagine doing sth	make a picture of sth in your mind
avoid doing sth	try not to do sth; stop sth happening
admit doing sth	say that you have done sth wrong, or that sth bad is true
fancy doing sth *inf*	want to do sth

① Put the verbs in the correct part of the table below.

▶ hope ✓ give up imagine agree offer prefer
avoid like manage keep begin continue

+ infinitive with *to*	+ *-ing* form	infinitive OR *-ing* form
▶ hope	....	....
....	....	....
....	....	....
....	....	....

② Cross out the verb that cannot be used in each sentence.

▶ They ***planned / ~~enjoyed~~ / refused / intended*** to leave early.
1 She ***fancied / avoided / kept / pretended*** going to that particular restaurant.
2 He ***offered / admitted / agreed / arranged*** to go to the bank with me.
3 We ***hope / tend / intend / consider*** to go away in the summer.
4 I don't ***enjoy / mind / need / fancy*** staying there.
5 Did they ***risk / intend / refuse / manage*** to spend all the money?
6 They both ***gave up / considered / expected / took up*** swimming.

③ Underline the correct verb.

▶ Sam fell off his bike, but he ***seems / agrees*** to be OK.
1 The roads will be busy so we ***intend / pretend*** to leave early.
2 I don't ***mind / take up*** waiting for the children.
3 He ***managed / attempted*** to find a room, but it was impossible.
4 She ***kept / gave up*** getting a pain in her shoulder.
5 Mark ***refused / offered*** to help me with the luggage, so I had to carry all of it.
6 I ***suggested / avoided*** going there and they all agreed.
7 It's a long trip, so I don't ***hope / expect*** to get there before midday.
8 I love that motorbike, but I can't ***mind / risk*** spending all my savings on it.

④ Complete the sentences with a suitable infinitive or *-ing* form.

▶ I was very unfit so I took up jogging............ .
1 I can't imagine .... in another country.
2 My younger brother hopes .... very rich when he's older.
3 My flatmates always avoid .... housework if they can.
4 Some people hate it, but I don't mind .... to the dentist.
5 Alexa promised .... me with my Greek classes this weekend.
6 When I told him to do some work, he pretended .... asleep.

⑤ Complete the dialogues with a verb from page 118.

▶ Are you going shopping? ~ Yes, I want............ to buy a coat if I can find one.
1 Are you going to Brazil this year? ~ No, I can't .... to go now – it's too expensive.
2 Do you .... going out for a meal? ~ Yeah, that's a great idea.
3 Why did they .... to be German? ~ I don't know. It's obvious they were English.
4 Do you eat dinner early in England? ~ Yes. We .... to eat earlier than people in Spain.
5 Have you worked on a farm all your life? ~ Yes. I can't .... working in a factory.
6 Are you moving house? ~ Yes, I'm .... to get a flat in the city centre.

⑥ ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Is there anything you:
1 managed to do recently that was difficult? What? ....
2 intended to do recently but didn't? What? ....
3 agreed to do recently? What? ....
4 refused to do recently? What? ....
5 forgot to do recently? What? ....
6 either took up or gave up recently? What? ....

TEST YOURSELF

57 Using verbs with reflexive pronouns

We use **reflexive pronouns** when the object is the same person/thing as the subject. We often use them with certain verbs.

*I cut **myself** using that knife.* (NOT ~~*I cut me*~~ …)
*Why are **you** looking at **yourself** in the mirror?*
He** tried to kill **himself. (Different from *He tried to kill **him.*** = another person)
*I wanted to pay for everyone, but **Jessica** paid for **herself.***
*That **cat** is always washing **itself.***
***We** enjoyed **ourselves** at the club last night.*
***You boys** will hurt **yourselves** if you jump out of that tree.*
*Surprisingly, all **the children** behaved **themselves** during the trip.*

SPOTLIGHT reflexive verbs

Some languages use reflexive verbs more than English. Be careful not to make these mistakes:

- *I like to relax ~~myself/me~~.*
- *I feel ~~myself/me~~ very tired.*
- *Where shall we meet ~~ourselves/us~~?*

The following verbs and expressions are also used with reflexive pronouns:

*If you're still hungry, just **help yourself** to more food.* (= take what you want)
*They're not in great health – they need to **take care of themselves.*** (= look after themselves)
*He's too emotional and he can't **control himself.*** (= control his feelings)
***I taught myself** Italian.* (= I worked alone without a teacher.)
*It took her a few minutes to **calm herself (down)** after the argument.* (= become quiet and relaxed)

① Complete the correct reflexive pronoun.

▶ I decided to help myself.
1 She taught ....
2 I think they hurt ....
3 He can't take care of ....
4 I told you to behave ....
5 I just helped .... to more chicken.
6 Don't worry, we can take care of ....
7 You all enjoyed ...., didn't you?

② Complete each dialogue.

▶ How did you learn the piano? ~ I just taught myself.
1 Will you look after Sacha? ~ No, she's old enough to take .... of herself.
2 There's blood here. ~ I know. Ben .... himself using the bread knife.
3 Can I buy you a drink? ~ No, it's OK, I'll .... for myself.
4 Have you .... yourself? ~ Yes, I banged my leg on the table, and it's very painful.
5 Did Ben shout at you? ~ Yes, he gets angry very easily and just can't .... himself.
6 Remember, this is a very formal dinner. ~ Don't worry, I'll .... myself.

③ Complete the sentences with the correct verb and reflexive pronoun.

ABOUT YOU

▶ I go to parties, but I don't often really enjoy myself. ....
1 I go to a language class because I don't think I'd be very good at ....
2 When I go to a restaurant with someone, I usually like to .... for ....
3 If I want to .... down, I usually sit quietly and breathe deeply. ....
4 I think I spend too much time .... at .... in the mirror. ....
5 In my country, more young men are .... in recent years. Is life harder than it used to be? ....
6 In my country, young children don't always .... in other people's houses. ....

④ ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true for you or your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

TEST YOURSELF

58 take

The most common meaning of **take** is to move somebody or something to another place, or lead somebody to another place.

Take my coat – it's cold.
I took the money and left.
She took the girl's hand.
Marta took me to the station.

Take has many other meanings, and is often used in expressions with particular nouns:

borrow or steal sth without permission	*Someone has **taken** my phone.*
eat or drink drugs/medicine	*She has to **take** two **tablets** every day.*
agree to have or accept sth	***I took his advice** and bought the larger tent.*
do	*My son **takes** his final **exam** tomorrow.*
need an amount of time	***It takes me** an hour to get to work.*
travel on	*My brother **takes the train** to work.* ALSO **get the train**
used with *photo*	*We **took** lots of **photos** on holiday.* (NOT ~~make a photo~~)
eat/drink	*Do you **take milk** and **sugar** in coffee?*
wear (a particular size)	*What **size** shoes do you **take**? ~ 43.*

1 Underline the correct answer(s). Be careful: both answers are sometimes correct.

▶ I *took* / *held* his advice.
1 *Take* / *Bring* this book to the room next door.
2 Could you *take* / *bring* that book over here?
3 Don't forget to *take* / *carry* your books.
4 I'm *taking* / *doing* an exam tomorrow.
5 What size shoes do you *take* / *use*?
6 It *takes* / *needs* an hour to get there.
7 We can *take* / *get* the bus into town.
8 I want to *take* / *make* some photos.
9 I don't *take* / *drink* milk in tea or coffee.

2 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way using *take*.

▶ Have you got any pictures of your new flat? ~ Yes, I've taken lots of photos.
1 Did you drive to the station? ~ No, I .
2 Did you do what he suggested? ~ Yes, I .
3 I'll have a coffee, please. ~ Fine. Do you ?
4 Is it easy to get to college? ~ Yeah, it only .
5 What shall I do with these books? ~ Oh, could you ?
6 Your bag was here. Where is it? ~ Oh, I think my brother .
7 Is this the medicine the doctor gave you? ~ Yes, I have to .
8 Do the shoes fit you? ~ No, I .

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student. If possible, use *take* in your answers.

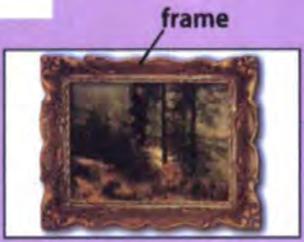
▶ How do you get to school/university/work? I take the bus or the underground.
1 How long does it take?
2 Do you take milk and sugar in coffee?
3 What size shoes do you take?
4 What was the last exam that you did?
5 What pictures do you have on your phone?
6 What do you usually do if your parents advise you to do something?

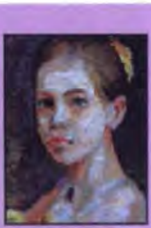
TEST YOURSELF

59 Art

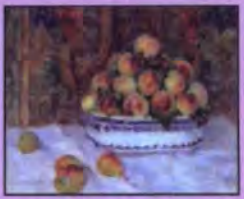
A Art and artists

sculpture




portrait

landscape


still life

paintbrushes

Art galleries such as *The Louvre* have a huge **collection** of **works of art**, including **sculptures** and paintings, and sometimes **hold** special **exhibitions** of paintings by a particular **artist**, or from a particular **period**. These might be **portraits**, **landscapes** or **still lifes**, and in different styles, e.g. some **abstract**, some more realistic. Artists also use a **range** of **techniques** – painting with oil paints or other kinds of paint and using various types of **paintbrushes**, drawing, using computer images, etc. – to create different **effects**.

GLOSSARY	
collection	a group of similar things that sb has brought together. A person who does this as a hobby or a job is a **collector**.
work of art	a painting, a statue, etc. of a very high quality
exhibition	a collection of paintings, objects, etc. that are shown in public: *The gallery is **holding an exhibition** of portraits by Rembrandt.* **exhibit** *v*
artist	sb who produces *art* (paintings, drawings, etc.)
period	a particular amount of time in history
abstract	(of art) not showing people or things as they really are; expressing an idea
range	different things of the same kind
technique	a particular way of doing sth, often needing special skills
effect	a result or a change that happens because of sth

① **Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ effect
1 collection
2 abstract
3 artist
4 period
5 paintbrush
6 landscape
7 portrait
8 exhibit
9 collector
10 sculpture
11 technique
12 exhibition

② **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Somebody who produces paintings is an artist.
1 A painting of a person is a ....
2 A painting of the countryside is a ....
3 A painting of fruit, flowers or objects is a ....
4 The wood or metal around a painting is the ....
5 A number of paintings shown in public is an ....
6 A person who buys lots of paintings is a ....
7 A very good painting is often called a ....
8 Artists often use a .... and oil paints.
9 A painting that is not realistic in style is described as ....
10 A particular way of doing something, often needing special skills, is a ....

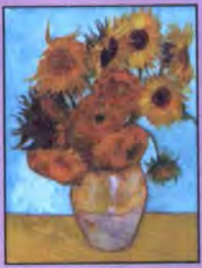
③ **Complete the words in the text.**

Pablo Picasso is a great ▶ artist who produced paintings and **(1)** s.................... in a **(2)** r.................... of different styles and over a very long **(3)** p.................... . In his early work, his paintings were more realistic and easier to understand. For example, there is a wonderful **(4)** p.................... of his mother that he painted when he was only 15. He also painted **(5)** l.................... in that period. Throughout his life he produced many **(6)** s.................... life paintings, which became more **(7)** a.................... as he experimented with different styles and **(8)** t.................... . Many people believe that his greatest **(9)** w.................... of art was *Guernica*, which he painted during the Spanish Civil War. It is a huge painting, which contains very powerful images and symbols of war, and it has had an enormous **(10)** e.................... on people around the world. In the past, the painting was **(11)** e.................... in various countries, but it returned to Spain in 1981, and is now part of a permanent **(12)** c.................... in the Museo Reina Sofía in Madrid.

TEST YOURSELF

B Reactions to art

I remember seeing an exhibition of photographs a few years ago about the way war has affected my city, Bath. It was very **powerful** and made me more aware of the **reality** of war – the **images** of **destruction** were of places I know well. One of the photographs **moved me to tears.**



A painting that **cheers me up** is *Sunflowers* by Vincent Van Gogh. The flower is a **symbol** of **happiness**, and it was painted at a time when Van Gogh was feeling **optimistic** about the future. He painted the flowers many times, but one of the **original** paintings is in the National Gallery in London where I often go and look at it.

SPOTLIGHT *remember doing something* and *remember to do something*

If you **remember doing something**, you have an image in your memory of something that happened in the past. If you **remember to do something**, you do something that you have to do and don't forget about it.

- *I **remember reading** the book about ten years ago.*
- *I must **remember to read** Jonah's email when I get home.*

GLOSSARY

reaction (to sb/sth)	sth that you do or say because of sth that has happened **react (to sb/sth)** *v*
powerful	having a strong effect on your mind or body
reality	**1** a thing that is actually experienced, not just imagined **2** the way life really is, not the way it may appear to be or you would like it to be
image	a picture or description that appears in a book, film or painting
destruction	the act of damaging sth so badly that it can no longer be used or no longer exists **destroy** *v*
move	cause sb to have strong feelings, especially of sadness **move sb to tears** made sb cry
cheer (sb) up	become happier, or make sb happier
symbol (of sth)	a person, sign, object, etc. which represents sth
happiness	the feeling of being happy
optimistic	expecting good things to happen or sth to be successful
original	painted, written, etc. by the artist rather than copied **original** *n*

4 Match 1–7 with a–h.

▶ War causes terrible f
1 The rose is a ....
2 Did you remember ....
3 Da Vinci's drawings had a powerful ....
4 The painting of the children moved me ....
5 Do you remember ....
6 I'm beginning to accept ....
7 The bright colours in the painting ....

a to tears.
b going to the Walker Gallery last year?
c the reality of his illness.
d symbol of love.
e to buy the tickets this morning?
f destruction. ✓
g cheered me up.
h effect on me.

5 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Was there a lot of damage in the gallery fire? ~ Yes, a lot of paintings were destroyed .
1 Did the exhibition have an effect on you? ~ Yes, it really .... me.
2 Was that a real Picasso or a copy? ~ It was an .... painting and worth a lot.
3 *The Death of Marat* is very a powerful painting. ~ Yes, it's a strong .... of death.
4 Are you feeling positive about the future? ~ Yes, I'm .... that things will get better.
5 Do you know Analisa's sister? ~ Yes, I .... meeting her a few years ago.
6 Did the portrait express sadness? ~ No, not at all – in fact, it expressed great ....
7 Did you accuse the man of stealing? ~ Yes, he .... very badly and shouted at me.
8 Was the flood very serious? ~ Yes, it caused the .... of the main bridge.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student.

▶ Is there a painting that brings you happiness? If so, which one? Yes, a painting of a dog. It looks so happy.
1 Is there a painting that moves you to tears? Which one, and why? ....
2 What is your reaction to abstract art? ....
3 Are there any paintings or artists that cheer you up? Which ones? ....
4 Have you got any original paintings? If so, what are they? ....

TEST YOURSELF

60 Films

Kathryn Bigelow has been a director, **producer** and **screenwriter** for over forty years. Since 1981, she has made many films in the action film **genre**, often **influenced** by Alfred Hitchcock. In 1987 she made *Near Dark*, which **combines** elements of the western and horror film genres, and the thriller *Point Break* in 1991. It wasn't until 2010, though, that she **achieved** greater **fame**, when she became the first woman to receive an Academy **award** for Best Director for *The Hurt Locker.* However, she has always refused to be called a 'woman **film-maker**'. She has also divided **critics**: some love her films, while others feel the **content** is too violent.

Kathryn Bigelow

GLOSSARY

producer	sb who is in charge of the practical and financial aspects of making a film
screenwriter	a person who writes the *screenplay* for a film: the written words that actors speak, the *script*; and the instructions for how it is to be filmed and acted
genre	a particular type of film, art, music, etc. that you can recognise because of its special features
influence	change the way that sb thinks **influence** *n*
combine	join two or more things together to form a single one **combination** *n*
fame	the state of being famous: ***achieve/win fame***
award	a prize or money that you give to sb who has done sth very well: *She won the* ***award*** *for best actress.*
film-maker	a person who makes films
critic	a person who writes about a film, book or play, and says what they think about it
content	the subject matter of a film, play, book, etc.

SPOTLIGHT *cinema*

A **cinema** [C] is the building where you go to see a film.

- *What's on at the* ***cinema*** *this weekend?*

Cinema [U] means films in general; the film industry.

- *the history of French* ***cinema***
- *Alfonso Cuadrón is a leading figure in Mexican* ***cinema.***

1 **Is the word stress the same or different in the pairs of words? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ achieve / critic D
1 critic / award ....
2 film-maker / screenwriter ....
3 influence / cinema ....
4 combine / genre ....
5 content *n* / screenplay ....

2 **Tick the words which describe people.**

▶ film-maker ☑
critic ☐
influence ☐
award ☐
screenwriter ☐
producer ☐
genre ☐
script ☐
screenplay ☐

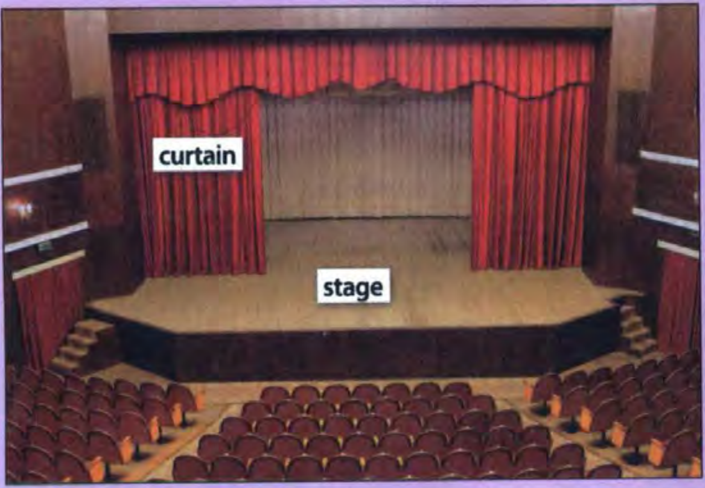
3 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I don't go to the cinema very often in summer; I prefer being outdoors.
1 In Brazil, the most popular .... of films is action films.
2 Hugh Grant had been acting for years before he achieved .... in *Four Weddings and a Funeral.*
3 I liked the film, but a lot of .... said it was much too long.
4 I think Almodóvar has .... young film directors all over the world.
5 *Green Book* won the .... for Best Film at the Oscars in 2019.
6 The acting was good, but I didn't like the .... of the film – it was all about war.
7 A romantic comedy is a .... of humour and a love story.
8 Do you know very much about Russian .... ?
9 The film .... wonderful scenery with gentle music.

4 ABOUT YOU **Write about your favourite film, or a film you've seen recently. Give as much detail as possible. Was it popular with the critics? Did it win any awards?**

TEST YOURSELF

61 Theatre



A friend of mine, Sam, runs an **amateur drama** group. They **put on** three or four **plays** a year in a small **local theatre**. Sam directs all of them, sometimes takes a **leading role** and even writes some of the plays they perform as well. I don't do much **acting** myself, but I once played a **servant** in a comedy. Most of the time I help with **costume** and **stage design,** but sometimes I have a small role in one of the plays. We have a lot of fun.

GLOSSARY

amateur	doing an activity because you enjoy it, and not for money or as part of a job **amateur** *n*; OPP **professional**
drama	plays, often serious, in a theatre or on television
put sth on	prepare a play for people to see
play	a story that you watch in the theatre or on television
local	of a place near you
theatre [C]	a building where you go to see plays; [U] plays as a form of entertainment: *I like* ***theatre.***
leading	most important
role	a person's part in a play or film: *a leading* ***role***
acting	the art of performing in plays **act** *v*
servant	sb who works in another person's house and cooks, cleans, etc.
costume [C, U]	the special clothes that people wear, e.g. in a play or a film
stage	the place in a theatre or concert hall where actors, musicians, etc. perform: ***stage design*** (= how the stage looks for the audience)

① Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ A play usually has a [✓ *story*] / *game.*
- 1 A theatre which is near where you live is a *local / amateur* theatre.
- 2 The most important actor plays the leading *role / drama.*
- 3 If someone is an *amateur* / a *professional*, they are paid for their work.
- 4 The actors stand on the *stage / curtain.*
- 5 You *wear / use* a costume in a play.
- 6 A role is a *type of play / part in a play.*

② Cover the text at the top of the page, then correct these sentences.

- ▶ The group puts on two plays a year. The group puts on three or four plays a year.
- 1 They put their plays on in a large national theatre. ……………
- 2 It's a professional group. ……………
- 3 It's a film group. ……………
- 4 Sam writes all the plays. ……………
- 5 I always act in the plays. ……………
- 6 I once played a nurse in a comedy. ……………
- 7 I help with costume and selling tickets. ……………
- 8 I take a leading role in the plays. ……………

③ Complete these sentences about plays.

- ▶ I went to the theatre to see *Hamlet.*
- 1 A …………… is performed by actors.
- 2 Each of these people perform a …………… in the play.
- 3 A play is performed on a …………… .
- 4 The actors often wear special …………… .
- 5 The most important actor plays the …………… role.
- 6 At the beginning of the play the …………… goes up.
- 7 Plays for the theatre, radio or TV can also be called …………… .

TEST YOURSELF

62 Music

A Instruments and musicians

bass guitar

trumpet

saxophone

drums

cello

keyboard

organ

record

orchestra
conductor

irlanguage
lead singer

SPOTLIGHT the suffix *-ist*

We often use this suffix for the person who plays a particular instrument, e.g. ***cellist, saxophonist, organist, guitarist, violinist, pianist.*** However, we say ***trumpeter*** and ***drummer,*** and for some instruments, we use the word **player**, e.g. ***keyboard player.***

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ trumpet / drums ..S..
- 1 orchestra / keyboard ......
- 2 conductor / cello ......
- 3 lead singer / keyboard ......
- 4 guitarist / violinist ......
- 5 saxophone / cello ......
- 6 bass guitar / player ......
- 7 conductor / orchestra ......

2 Complete the musical instruments and the person who plays them.

- ▶ vi.o..l..i..n. / violinist
- 1 or...... ..../ ......
- 2 tr...... ..../ ......
- 3 ce...... ..../ ......
- 4 dr...... ..../ ......
- 5 sax...... ..../ ......
- 6 b...... .... gu...... ..../ ......
- 7 key...... ..../ ......

3 Can you complete these sentences about famous people in music?

MUSIC AND MUSICIANS QUIZ

- ▶ Yehudi Menuhin was a famous violinist .
- 1 Freddie Mercury was ...... singer for ....
- 2 Keith Richards is lead ...... for the ....
- 3 Sir Simon Rattle is a famous ....
- 4 Ringo Starr played ...... for the ....
- 5 John Coltrane played ....
- 6 Miles Davis played ....
- 7 Yo Yo Ma is a great ....
- 8 Bill Wyman played ...... guitar for the ....
- 9 Benny Andersson wrote, sang and played ...... for ABBA.
- 10 Louis Armstrong, one of the jazz world's great ...... and singers, made his first ...... in 1925.

TEST YOURSELF

B A famous rock star

Why is David Bowie so **well known** and widely **admired**? Firstly, because he was a fine musician and **songwriter** who **toured** the world for over 30 years, but also because **fans** loved the incredible **visual impact** of his **live** performances. They may be surprised to know that he was strongly influenced by classical music, especially the **composer** Stravinsky: his first album in 1967 used many orchestral instruments. **Sadly**, Bowie died in January, 2016, but his final **recording**, his 25th album in total called Blackstar, was **released** just two days earlier.

GLOSSARY

well known	famous: *a **well-known** guitarist*
admire	like sb and think they have achieved a lot
songwriter	sb who writes songs
tour	travel around a place, e.g. to perform, on holiday
fan	a person who likes sb or sth, e.g. a singer or a sport
visual	connected with seeing
impact	the effect that sth has: *make an **impact***
composer	a person who writes music, especially classical music, e.g. opera, symphony **compose** *v*
sadly	unfortunately
recording	sounds or pictures on a tape, CD or film
release	put an album, CD, DVD, film, etc. onto the market so people can buy it **release** *n*

SPOTLIGHT *live, alive, living*

Live (sounds like *five*) means 'seen or heard as it is happening'.

- *We saw the band play **live**, then watched it on TV a couple of days later.*

Living and **alive** mean not dead. **Alive** is not used before a noun.

- *He's one of the greatest **living** pianists.* (NOT ~~*alive pianists*~~)
- *Mozart isn't **alive** today.*

4 *Yes or No?*

▶ Is Elvis Presley ***alive***? No

1. If you are a ***fan*** of someone, do you like them? ....
2. If you see someone play ***live***, are you there in the audience? ....
3. If something is ***visual***, do you hear it? ....
4. If somebody ***releases*** an album, can you buy it? ....
5. If somebody is ***well known***, are they famous? ....
6. If somebody ***admires*** you, do they dislike you? ....
7. If a performer ***is touring***, does he play live music? ....
8. If you listen to a ***recording***, is it live? ....
9. Is a ***living*** artist still ***alive***? ....
10. Do ***composers*** write music? ....

5 Complete the words in the texts.

Gilberto Gil is a Brazilian singer and guitarist, and one of his country's most talented ▶ songwriters . As a young musician in the 1950s, he was influenced by the bossa nova style of Joao Gilberto, but he didn't **(1)** r.................. his first album, *Louvação*, until 1967. He travelled widely in the 1970s, becoming very **(2)** w.................. known, and then he made a big **(3)** i.................. back in Brazil in 1980 when he introduced reggae to the Brazilian people with his **(4)** r.................. of the Bob Marley song *No woman, no cry*. His **(5)** f.................. love his music for the rhythms and melodies, but he is also **(6)** a.................. outside of music for his work in politics and for social causes.

I'm still a great **(7)** f.................. of **Prince**. He was a wonderful singer and **(8)** s.................., and I was lucky enough to see him **(9)** l.................. on two occasions when he was **(10)** t.................. in Europe. His performances made a huge **(11)** i.................. on me, not just because of the music, but also because he was such a **(12)** v.................. performer with his clothing and dancing. He had great success with albums such as *Purple Rain* and *Sign 'O' the Times*, and he was a major **(13)** i.................. on many other performers. I wish he was still **(14)** a.................. today making music, but **(15)** s.................., he died when he was only 57.

TEST YOURSELF

63 TV and online viewing

A TV (Television) programmes

Channel 5

7.00–7.30	early evening news with **newsreader** Gemma Matheson
7.30–8.00	*The Eldersons* – **soap opera**
8.00–9.00	**documentary**: *Where does all the rubbish go?*
9.00–10.00	*Having a Laugh*: **game show** with **host** Arlo Walsh
10.00–10.40	**episode** 1 of the new Icelandic **drama series** *The Blackwood Lake*
10.40–11.30	**talk show** with host Tanya Kaye and **guests**
11.30–1.20	film: *The Lost Continent*

GLOSSARY

channel	a TV station
newsreader	a person who reads **the news** on TV, radio, etc.
soap opera	a story about the lives of a group of people that is on TV or radio every day or several times a week: ALSO **soap:** *I don't watch **soaps**.*
documentary	a film or TV programme that gives facts about sth
game show	a TV programme in which people play games or answer questions to win prizes
host	a person who introduces a TV or radio programme, and talks to guests
episode	one part of a TV or radio story that is shown or told in different parts
drama series	a number of programmes on TV or radio which have the same main characters and each tell a complete story
talk show	a TV programme where famous people are invited to talk about themselves SYN **chat show**
guest	a person who is invited to a special event, e.g. a talk show, a party

1 Find the end of each word or compound noun.

drama/channeltalkshowdocumentaryhostguestsoapoperaseriesepisodechatshow

2 Match 1–5 with a–f.

▶ special	c	**a** opera
1 drama	....	**b** Four
2 chat	....	**c** guest ✓
3 news	....	**d** series
4 soap	....	**e** reader
5 Channel	....	**f** show

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ Most soap operas are on during the early evening.
1 They're showing the first .... of a new drama series tonight.
2 I don't like that .... show where young women try to find boyfriends.
3 The thing is, ... shows are only interesting if the .... are interesting.
4 Which .... is that new game show on? ~ ITV, I think.
5 I don't like .... , but my grandmother watches them every evening – never misses one.
6 There have been more female chat show .... in the last fifteen years, which is good.
7 I loved that .... series about the Swedish detective called Saga.
8 I saw a wonderful .... about the strong social relationships that form between elephants.

4 ABOUT YOU What do you think of these programmes? Do you often watch them? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

soap operas documentaries the news game shows chat shows drama series

TEST YOURSELF

B How do you watch TV?

According to a national report, the **youth** market, and particularly young people **aged** 16-24 years old, are watching **far less** TV on traditional **sets** than they were in 2010. Those still watching on TV sets are **typically** over 65. This is because there has been a **shift** to digital **viewing** (e.g. on YouTube), together with the rise of online services such as Netflix and Amazon.

The report **indicates** a growing difference in the **lifestyle** habits of younger and older **viewers. On top of** that, younger viewers are also more **critical of** the standard of traditional TV. They complained about the number of **repeats** and the lack of variety.

SPOTLIGHT *TV*

TV (= television) can be countable or uncountable.

- *I watch a lot of **TV**. The film is on **TV** tonight.*
- *There's a **TV set** in every room.*

GLOSSARY

youth	the part of your life when you are young: *I travelled a lot **in my youth.***
aged	at the age mentioned: *two children, **aged** 5 and 7*
far (less)	very much (less) OPP **far (more)**
typically	in a way that shows the usual qualities or features of a particular person or thing
shift	a change in what people think about sth
viewing	watching. A person who watches TV is a **viewer**.
indicate	show that sth is true, exists, or will happen
lifestyle	the way that people live their lives
on top of sth	in addition to sth else; as well as sth else
critical	If you are **critical of sb** or **sth**, you say that they are wrong or bad in some way.
repeat	A **repeat** is a show that has already been on TV and is shown again.

5 Complete the common phrases in the sentences.

▶ What's on TV tonight?
1 He was very critical .... the programme.
2 How many TV .... do most families have?
3 Most people watch a lot of TV .... their youth.
4 I watch .... less TV than I used to.
5 It's a very old TV set and on .... of that, it doesn't get many channels.

6 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals in their correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ They've got a seven-year-old boy. AGED They've got a boy aged seven.
1 They've shown that programme before. REPEAT ....
2 I didn't like the programme. In addition to that, I was too tired to finish watching it. TOP ....
3 Young people usually prefer online viewing. TYPICAL ....
4 Five million people watched that programme. VIEWERS ....
5 I watched a lot of TV when I was young. YOUTH ....
6 There was a lot of criticism of the programme. CRITICAL ....

7 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Was the programme very long? ~ Yes, and on top of that, it was quite boring.
1 Didn't she like it? ~ No, she was very .... of it.
2 Do people watch TV differently today? ~ Yes, there has been a .... away from traditional to online viewing.
3 Why are younger and older viewers so different? ~ They just have a different ....
4 Do the figures show a change? ~ Yes, they .... a big change.
5 Were the children quite young? ~ I think they were .... 10 and 12.
6 Do you watch TV online? ~ Yes, ... more than I did a few years ago.

TEST YOURSELF

64 Newspapers

A Life as an editor

Meet Cyrus Davis, who has spent all his working life in **journalism**. He's been a news reporter, sports reporter, and **headline** writer. Now, he works for *The Evening Star*, a local **daily** paper **published** in Birmingham, and he is the **editor** of the paper's online **version**. "*The Star* **covers current affairs**, sport, crime, and so on, and there is always at least one **item** about a **cultural** subject. But the sad truth is that newspaper sales are falling fast, and newspapers could disappear **forever** if the industry cannot make money from online sales."

GLOSSARY

journalism	the profession of collecting and writing about news in newspapers, on TV, etc. The person who does this is a **journalist.** A **journal** is a newspaper or magazine that deals with a specific subject or profession: *a medical **journal***
headline	the title of a newspaper article (*see next page*)
daily	happening every day. A **daily (news)paper** is published every day, except Sunday.
publish	prepare and print a book, newspaper, etc.
editor	the person who prepares and controls a newspaper
version	sth that has the same basic content as another thing but which is presented in a different way
cover	include
current affairs	important political or social events happening now (**current** = happening now)
(news) item	SYN a piece of news
cultural	connected with the ideas and way of life of a group of people or a country
forever	for all time

1 Circle the adjectives and adverbs.

▶ [✓ current]internationalpublishdailyjournalismforevereditorcurrentlyheadlineculturaljournalversion

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ She edits the newspaper. / She's the editor. S
1 It's a daily paper. / You can buy the paper every day, except Sunday. ....
2 I read the article. / I read the headline. ....
3 They published the book. / They wrote the book. ....
4 The paper includes sport. / The paper covers sport. ....
5 I want to work in journalism. / I want to work in current affairs. ....
6 I believe it's a current problem. / I believe it's a daily problem. ....
7 I've only read one news item so far. / I've only read one piece of news so far. ....
8 It will go on forever. / It will go on a long time. ....

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ My son works in journalism.
1 Good papers provide opinions on c.................... events such as plays, exhibitions, etc.
2 My daughter reads everything in the news. She wants to be a j.................... .
3 The paper is p.................... in London and sold all over the south-east of England.
4 There was a funny h.................... on the front page of the paper this morning.
5 My grandfather was e.................... of a national newspaper.
6 Do you buy a d.................... paper, or do your read the online v.................... ?
7 I think newspapers are still the best place to read about c.................... a.................... .
8 I read a lot of scientific j.................... when I'm doing research for my studies.

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or talk to another student.

1 Do you still read a newspaper? If not, why not? ....
2 If you read a newspaper, do you buy a paper version or read it online? ....
3 Do you read a daily paper or do you just read a paper at weekends? ....
4 What interests you most in a paper? Is it:
National news? International news? Cultural information? Sport? Other? ....
5 Do you think traditional newspapers might soon disappear forever? ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Headlines

FOOTBALL CLUB **BANS** ALL ALCOHOL	**ban** say that sth must not happen; not allow sth **ban** *n*
CAR WORKERS **PROTEST** IN CITY CENTRE	**protest** say or show that you do not agree with sth, especially in public **protest** *n* (notice the stress difference between the verb and the noun)
SUICIDE RATE INCREASING **AMONG** YOUNG MEN	**suicide** the act of killing yourself: ***commit suicide*** **rate** the speed of sth or how often it happens **among** in a particular group of people
FUEL DUTY TO GO UP IN SPRING	**fuel** Petrol and diesel are types of **fuel**. **duty** money (called **tax**) that you must pay the government when you bring sth from another country into your country
MAN **CLAIMS** DOG CAN DO **MAGIC TRICKS**	**claim sth/that** say that sth is true **claim** *n* **trick** sth clever that you have learned to do. A **magic trick** is a trick that seems impossible.
MINISTER **QUITS** IN ARGUMENT OVER PUBLIC **SPENDING**	**quit** leave a job **spending** the amount of money spent by a government or organization
GOVERNMENT TO **RAISE RETIREMENT** AGE AGAIN	**raise** make sth bigger, higher, stronger, etc. **retirement** the age that people stop working (usually 65 or higher) **retire** *v*

5 These sentences are all false. Change them so that they are true.

▶ Fuel duty is a ~~responsibility~~. Fuel duty is a tax.
1 If you raise something, it stays the same. ……………
2 If somebody commits suicide, they are alive. ……………
3 If you protest against something, you are happy. ……………
4 If you claim something, it is true. ……………
5 If you retire, you stop working for the day. ……………
6 If you quit, you start your job. ……………

6 Match 1–8 with a–i.

▶	It was a protest b	**a**	at the age of 60.
1	He claims that his story ………	**b**	against the government. ✓
2	We don't know why she committed ………	**c**	is true, but I'm not sure.
3	The government will increase fuel ………	**d**	mobile phones in class.
4	They want to raise the ………	**e**	has slowed down.
5	My father retired ………	**f**	standard in schools.
6	The rate of inflation ………	**g**	from my uncle.
7	The school has banned ………	**h**	suicide.
8	I learned this trick ………	**i**	duty soon.

7 Complete the sentences.

▶ What do workers protest about in your country?
1 Is the birth …………… going up or going down?
2 Is the …………… age 65 for both men and women in your country?
3 Does fuel …………… on petrol and diesel often go up?
4 Can you think of a famous politician who …………… his job? Why did he leave?
5 Can you think of something restaurants or cinemas have …………… in your country?
6 Do you think that …………… is more common …………… young people now than 20 years ago?
7 What do you think about public …………… on the health service in your country?

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Can you answer the questions in Exercise 7? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

▶ What do workers protest about in your country? Salaries or working conditions.

TEST YOURSELF

65 Books

A Types of books

As I work for a **publisher,** I'm always using **reference books** such as dictionaries. But I read a lot for **pleasure** too, and I particularly like **poetry.** At home all my books are arranged in **alphabetical** order (I know that's a bit strange!). I've also got lots of novels from different **categories – crime stories, ghost** stories, **historical** novels, murder **mysteries, science fiction**, etc. – but there is **non-fiction** as well. I read quite a lot of **biographies.** My husband says I'm book-crazy.

GLOSSARY	
publisher	a company or a person that prepares and prints books for selling. A **publishing company** publishes books. **publish** *v*
reference book	a book you use to find a piece of information
pleasure	a feeling of enjoyment
poetry	poems in general. A **poem** is a piece of writing arranged in separate lines that expresses thoughts and feelings. A person who writes poetry is a **poet**.
alphabetical	listed in the same way as the **alphabet**: A, B, C, etc.
category	a group of things or people that are similar to each other
crime story	a story about a crime
historical	connected with real people or events in the past
mystery	a story in which the events are only explained at the end
science fiction	books about events that take place in the future SYN **sci-fi** *inf*
non-fiction	books about real facts, people, events, etc. OPP **fiction**
biography	the story of sb's life written by someone else. An **autobiography** is the story of sb's life written by that person.

1 Complete the table.

murder mystery ✓ reference book ghost stories autobiography
historical novel biography sci-fi crime stories

Fiction	Non-fiction
▶ murder mystery	....
....	....
....	....
....	
....	

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ A dictionary is arranged in alphabetical order.
1 I don't read .... stories when I'm in bed in case I can't sleep afterwards.
2 Shakespeare is famous for his plays, but he also wrote beautiful ....
3 Dictionaries are a kind of .... book.
4 What kind of books do you read for .... in the evenings?
5 Do you read crime stories? ~ Yes, I'm reading a murder .... at the moment.
6 What's the tenth letter of the .... ? ~ It's 'J'.
7 Roy Jenkins wrote a famous .... of Winston Churchill.
8 Keats, Baudelaire and Goethe are all famous ....
9 The students' names were arranged in .... order.
10 Who .... this book? ~ Oxford University Press.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

1 Do you prefer fiction or non-fiction? ....
2 Do you read for work, pleasure, or both? ....
3 Do you like sci-fi, murder mysteries or poetry? ....
4 Do you read novels? If so, which categories do you prefer? ....
5 Have you ever read a biography or an autobiography? If so, whose? ....
6 Do you keep anything in alphabetical order? ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Choosing a book

Booksellers **survey**: how did you choose the last book you read?

I was in a bookshop and the **title** and front **cover** just **attracted my attention.**

It was a **recommendation** by a friend – he said it was **original** and had a good **plot**.

I read a bit of the first **chapter** in a bookshop – it was interesting and **well written.**

I read a **summary** of the book and it was by an author who is **well known.**

I love **narrative** fiction where love is the main **theme** of the book.

GLOSSARY

survey	asking questions to find out what people think about sth
title	the name of sth, e.g. a book or film
cover	the outside part of a book, magazine, etc.
attract sb's attention	If sth **attracts your attention**, it interests you so that you want to look at it.
recommendation	saying that sth is good or useful **recommend** *v*
original	new and different
plot	what happens in a book, play or film
chapter	one of the parts of a book: *The book has 20* ***chapters**.*
summary	a short way of telling sth by giving only the most important facts **summarize** *v*
narrative	describing events or telling a story **narrative** *n*
theme	the subject of a piece of writing, a talk, a film, etc.

SPOTLIGHT compound adjectives with *well*

There are a number of adjectives with **well** + past participle, e.g. ***well written*** (of a book, article, etc.), ***well known*** (= famous), ***well informed*** (= knowing a lot), etc. A hyphen is used when the adjective is followed by a noun.

- *a **well-known** author*
- *She's **well known**.*

4 **Look at the underlined letters in the example, then underline the letters in the other words with the same sound. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▸ cover attract attention chapter original
narrative summary summarize recommendation

5 **Complete the text.**

My cousin has just written book. He's not ▸ well known, but it might attract a lot of **(1)** a............ because the **(2)** t............ is 'How to make a lot of money by doing almost nothing'. I think that's quite an **(3)** o............ title and if the **(4)** t............ of the book is making money, a lot of people will read it. It was published last month, and he gave me a copy as a present. I've read the first couple of **(5)** c............ about selling things on the internet, and it's both interesting and **(6)** w............ written. On the front **(7)** c............ there's a picture of my cousin lying in bed.

6 **Complete the sentences.** ABOUT YOU

▸ One of my friends recommended a book to me, but I haven't read it. ....
1 I enjoy reading fast-moving, ... fiction. ....
2 I like books where the main .... is war. ....
3 I read a novel mainly for the story, so the .... is the most important thing. ....
4 If I don't like the first .... of a book, I stop reading it. ....
5 When I buy a book, I often don't notice what's on the front ....
6 I only read books by authors who are well ....
7 I think a .... by a friend is always the best way to choose a book. ....
8 When organizations ask me to complete an online ...., I almost always say 'no'. ....

7 ABOUT YOU **Look at the sentences in Exercise 6 again. Are they true for you? Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

66 Sporting events

A The Olympics

1

2

3

4

5

Summer Olympics: facts and **figures**

- The first games took place in 776 BC, with one **competition**: a **race** of about 192 metres.
- The first modern Olympics took place in 1896 with 241 **competitors taking part** in nine sports, including **athletics**[1], **cycling**[2], **fencing**[3], **gymnastics**[4], **weightlifting**[5] and **shooting**. By 2016, there were over 11,000 people **competing** in 28 sports.
- Gymnast Larissa Latynina **holds** the **record** for the woman with the most Olympic **medals** (18). She later **coached** the national gymnastics team.
- Boxing is now the only Olympic sport where **professionals** are not allowed to compete.

GLOSSARY

figure	an amount in numbers
race	a competition to see who is fastest or best, or who wins
take part (in sth)	join with other people in an activity SYN **participate**
shooting	the sport of shooting animals, birds or objects with guns **shoot** *v*
record	the best performance in sth, especially sport: ***hold a record*** have a record; ***break a record*** make a new record
medal	a piece of metal given to an athlete who comes 1st, 2nd or 3rd
coach	train sb to do a sport, learn a skill, etc. **coach** *n*
professional	sb who plays a sport for money as their job OPP **amateur**

SPOTLIGHT *competition*

A **competition** is a situation in which two or more people are trying to win something or be better than someone. The person is a **competitor**. **competitive** *adj*; **compete** *v*

- *He is **competing in** the Boston Marathon.*

Use the APP to check the pronunciation and stress on these words.

1 Complete the sports.

▶ shooting
1 w
2 c
3 g
4 f
5 a

2 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

▶ It's a long [✓ *race*] / *medal*.
1 What are the official *figures / competitors* for the games?
2 He broke the *record / competition*.
3 Did she win a *race / medal*?
4 *Professionals / Amateurs* do something as a job.
▶ It was a hard [✓ *race*] / [✓ *competition*].
5 Anyone can *take part / participate*.
6 The race *takes place / takes part* on Tuesday.
7 She *holds / broke* the record.
8 He's a *competitor / competition*.

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ There are about 3,000 competitors in the modern Olympics.
1 The latest .... from *Sport England* show that over 60% of the population do at least 150 minutes of exercise a week.
2 It's hard for poor countries to .... against rich countries in certain events.
3 A Soviet gymnast holds the .... for the woman with the most Olympic medals.
4 There are a few Olympic amateurs, but now most of the .... are ....
5 The marathon (just over 42kms) is the longest .... on foot in the Olympics.
6 My uncle won a silver .... in the shooting .... at the 1996 Olympics.
7 Michael Phelps .... four individual world swimming records at the Beijing Olympics in 2008. He was .... by Bob Bowman throughout his career.
8 The biggest sport in the Olympics is athletics, so every event is very ....
9 Boxing is now the one sport where only .... can take part.
10 How many sportsmen and women .... in the last Olympics?

TEST YOURSELF

B The World Cup

The World **Cup** is an international football **championship**, and like the Olympic Games, it is also **held** every four years. First of all, countries have to **qualify** in their different continents (**except for** the **host nation**) before they can take part in the final **tournament**. The first World Cup was in Uruguay, in 1930, with just 13 countries and that has now risen to 32 countries in **recent** tournaments. The most successful team has been Brazil: they have won the **final** and the competition five times. The **current champions** (in 2019) are France, but that may be different by 2022.

SPOTLIGHT *championship* and *tournament*

A **championship** is a competition between different players or teams to find the best. It may take place over days, weeks or even a year. The winner(s) is/are **champion(s)**. A **tournament** is a competition in which players or teams play against each other, over days or perhaps weeks. The two words are very similar in meaning.

- *He won a medal at the European Athletics **Championships**.*
- ***a golf/basketball/tennis**, etc. **tournament***

GLOSSARY

cup	**1** a large metal cup given as a prize **2** the competition to win a cup
hold	make sth happen: ***hold** a competition / talks / a meeting*
qualify	win the right to enter a competition or continue in it
except (for)	not including sb or sth: *Everybody went **except (for)** me.*
host	usually a person who invites people to their home, but also a country that invites other countries to visit them for a competition, meeting, etc.
nation	a country and all the people who live in it
recent	that happened or began only a short time ago
final	the last game or race in a competition to decide the winner
current	happening or used now **currently** *adv*

4 Circle the nouns.

current[✓ cup]holdhostrecentqualificationexceptforchampionshipqualifynation

5 One word is mssing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

except for final tournament cup recent champions held ✓ host nations

▶ The World Cup is / every four years. held
1 The first nation was Uruguay. ....
2 The first was held in 1930. ....
3 Thirteen different took part in the first tournament. ....
4 Every country has to qualify, the host nation. ....
5 Thirty-two teams have competed in championships. ....
6 Brazil has won the five times and therefore the championship. ....
7 The in 2018 were France. ....
8 The winners receive a large. ....

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ No team has won the tournament five times, except for Brazil.
1 The 2026 World .... will be .... in the United States, Canada and Mexico, with 48 .... taking part.
2 Germany were .... in 2014. They played Argentina in the .... and won 1–0.
3 Many people believe that the 1970 World Cup was one of the greatest .... in its history.
4 .... (in 2018), there are 134 teams that have entered the World Cup championship but have never .... for the final stages of the tournament.
5 In 2010, the .... nation was South Africa, and the .... was won by Spain.

TEST YOURSELF

67 Sport: people and places

A People and equipment

crash helmet

Motor racing drivers wear a **crash helmet.**

Tennis players hit the ball with a **racket.**

Referees blow a **whistle.**

Linesmen wave a **flag.**

Hockey players hit the ball with a **stick.**

Baseball players hit the ball with a **bat.**

Goalkeepers try to stop the ball going into the **net.**

Rugby players play with an **oval** ball.

Supporters (also called **fans**) use their voices and **shout** a lot.

SPOTLIGHT *the suffix -er and player*

We usually add the suffix **-er** to a sport or an action verb to form the person who does the sport.

footballer **golfer** **swimmer** **skier** **racing driver** **boxer**

In some cases, we use **player**:

tennis player **ice hockey player** **rugby player** **baseball player**

But:

athletics/athlete **gymnastics/gymnast**

1 Cover the spotlight box and complete the list of people.

- ▶ football footballer
- **1** tennis ....
- **2** golf ....
- **3** athletics ....
- **4** boxing ....
- **5** (motor) racing ....
- **6** rugby ....
- **7** ski ....
- **8** gymnastics ....

2 Answer the questions.

- ▶ Who uses a bat? A baseball player
- **1** Who blows a whistle? ....
- **2** Who stands in front of a net? ....
- **3** Who wears a crash helmet? ....
- **4** Who waves a flag? ....
- **5** Who uses a stick? ....
- **6** Who shouts a lot? ....
- **7** Who uses a racket? ....
- **8** Who plays with an oval ball? ....

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ You use a bat when you're playing baseball.
- **1** Lewis Hamilton took off his crash .... and waved to his supporters.
- **2** The referee blew his .... for the end of the game.
- **3** One of the players hit the ball so hard that his hockey .... broke.
- **4** The linesman was .... his ...., but the referee didn't notice.
- **5** The supporters in front of me were angry and they were .... at the referee.
- **6** They scored, and the goalkeeper had to pick the ball out of the back of the ....
- **7** Zverev picked up his .... and went to the back of the tennis court.
- **8** In baseball, you hit the ball with a baseball ....

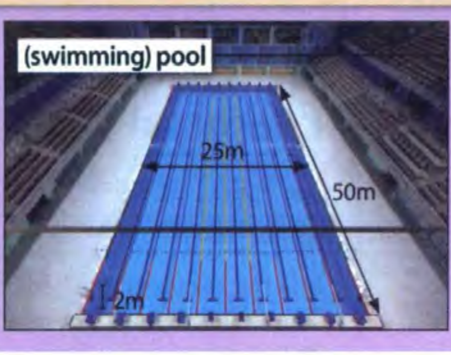
TEST YOURSELF

B Places

The Camp Nou **Stadium**, the **ground** of Barcelona Football **Club**, is the largest stadium in Europe and holds 98,800 **spectators**.

The Centre **Court** at Wimbledon is famous **worldwide**, and now has a retractable roof (= it opens and closes). The court can **therefore** be **covered** quickly in bad weather, so matches can be played indoors.

A **standard** Olympic swimming **pool** is **50** metres **long**, **25** metres **wide**, and has a **minimum depth** of two metres.



GLOSSARY	
stadium	a large structure where people sit and watch sport
ground	an area of land that is used for something special: ***a sports ground***
club	A football **club** is the team, the management and the ground.
spectator	a person watching an event, especially a sports event
court	a place where tennis, basketball or badminton are played
worldwide	everywhere in the world **worldwide** *adj* SYN **all over the world**
therefore *formal*	for that reason
covered	If sth is **covered**, it has sth over it.
standard	normal, not special
minimum	smallest possible or smallest allowed OPP **maximum**

SPOTLIGHT *long, wide, deep; length, width, depth*

Long, wide and **deep** can describe measurements.

- *The pool is **50 metres long**. = The **length** of the pool is 50 metres.*
- *The pool is **25 metres wide**. = The **width** of the pool is 25 metres.*
- *The pool is **two metres deep** at one end. = The **depth** of the pool at one end is two metres.*

④ **Complete the sentences.**

▶ The team, its management and the ground are all part of a football club...................... .
1 The noun from ***long*** is ....
2 The noun from ***wide*** is ....
3 The opposite of ***minimum*** is ....
4 The noun from ***deep*** is ....
5 ***All over the world*** is another way of saying ....
6 ***Therefore*** is another word for ....

⑤ **Complete the words in each text.**

1 Unfortunately, we don't have a ▶ standard................ Olympic swimming p.............................. . The one we use for competitions is only 25 metres l.............................. and 15 metres w.............................. . The m.............................. d.............................. is for Olympic pools is 1.35 metres, but five metres at the diving end.
2 Arsenal Football Club built a new s.............................., which now holds over 60,000 s.............................. .
3 The French Open Tennis Championship at Roland Garros attracts w.............................. attention from tennis fans, and is the only one of the four major tournaments that is played on a clay c.............................. .
4 The Millenium rugby s.............................. in Cardiff also has a retractable roof, and t.............................. the ground can be c.............................. in wet weather and the games played in much better conditions.

⑥ **Can you answer these quiz questions with the name of the sport and the place?**

▶ Stade de France is a famous rugby.................. stadium in Paris.................. .
1 The Bernabeu is a famous .... stadium in ....
2 Centre Court at .... is the most famous court for ....
3 Wembley is a famous .... stadium in ....
4 Monza in .... and Hochenheim in .... are famous worldwide for ....
5 Juventus is a famous .... team in ....

TEST YOURSELF

68 Festivals

La Tomatina: the world's biggest tomato fight

This **festival** takes place every August in Bunol, Spain. People come from all over the world to participate in this huge social **occasion**, which includes music, dancing and **fireworks**[1]. The main event is a tomato fight in which enormous quantities of overripe tomatoes are thrown in the streets for exactly one hour. The festival was banned in the 1950s, but in 1957 the young **folk** of the town protested by organizing a **parade** in which they **buried** a large tomato as if it were a dead body. The festival started again the following year.

Cherry Blossom Festival, Japan

Cherry blossom is the national flower of Japan. As spring **approaches**, people make special trips to various **sites** to see the first signs of the cherry trees in flower, which are sometimes **lit up** at night. The festival includes all sorts of delicious food, games, rides, **folk** music, **religious ceremonies** and a **beauty contest**.

fireworks

The Rio Carnival ('Carnaval')

One of the most incredible **entertainments** in the world, Carnival is a four-day **celebration** of music, dance, food and drink, all over Rio. The event **means a lot** to the people from the poorest **neighbourhoods**, who work hard for months preparing for it. It is an opportunity for the whole **community** to go out and **have fun** together. It ends with the Samba Parade for which the performers and **dancers dress up** in the most amazing **costumes**.

SPOTLIGHT *religion*

Religion is believing in one or more **gods** and the activities connected with this. Christians, Jews and Muslims believe that God made the world. **religious** *adj*

GLOSSARY

festival	a series of public events, e.g. concerts and shows
occasion	a time when sth happens
folk *inf*	people in general
parade	a celebration of a special event, usually with bands in the streets
bury	put sth in a hole in the ground and cover it, especially a dead body
approach	come nearer to sb/sth in distance or time: *We **approached** the church.*
site	a place where sth happens or happened
light sth up	make sth bright with light
folk *adj*	traditional in a community; of a traditional style: ***folk music/art***
ceremony	a formal public or religious event
beauty	the quality of being beautiful
contest	a game or competition that people try to win
entertainment	things that people enjoy watching and listening to, e.g. TV, film, music, etc. **entertain** *v*
celebration	a time when you enjoy yourself because you have a special reason to be happy **celebrate** *v*
mean a lot (to sb)	be very important (to sb)
neighbourhood	an area of a town and the people who live there
community	all the people who live in an area or town
have fun	enjoy yourself
dancer	sb who dances
dress up	put on special clothes either for fun or for a formal event
costume	special clothes people wear for a parade, a play, a party, etc.

1 Find words in the box with the same stress pattern as the words below. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

entertainment   bury ✓   celebrate   contest   religion   neighbourhood   parade

- ▶ beauty bury.............. ....   approach ....   festival ....
- occasion ....   celebration ....

2 *Yes* or *No*?

- ▶ If you ***bury*** something, do you put it in the ground? Yes
- 1 If you ***approach*** something, do you get nearer to it? ....
- 2 Is a ***neighbourhood*** all the people in a town? ....
- 3 Is a ***parade*** something you buy? ....
- 4 Are ***fireworks*** generally used to start a fire? ....
- 5 Is a ***celebration*** a time when people enjoy themselves? ....
- 6 Is ***folk music*** very modern? ....
- 7 If something ***means a lot***, is it hard to understand? ....
- 8 Is a ***community*** all the people who live in an area or town? ....

3 Match 1–7 with a–h.

- ▶ The older folk e
- 1 Fireworks ....
- 2 Lots of people want to ....
- 3 The festival means ....
- 4 Everyone just wants to have ....
- 5 People dress up in ....
- 6 There is even a beauty ....
- 7 They played folk ....

- **a** contest.
- **b** songs on guitar.
- **c** lit up the night sky.
- **d** fun together.
- **e** didn't like the tomato festival. ✓
- **f** take part in the event.
- **g** a lot to the community.
- **h** special costumes.

4 Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word which has a similar meaning.

- ▶ We had a good time watching the show. fun..............
- 1 The gold was put in a hole in the ground so that nobody could find it. ....
- 2 It's a wonderful time when people enjoy themselves. ....
- 3 Every year, the dancers put on special costumes for the parade. ....
- 4 It's an important religious event. ....
- 5 He didn't want to come any nearer to us. ....
- 6 The festival is an important event in the local area where I live. ....
- 7 There is a lot of music, theatre, dancing, etc. ....
- 8 It's an important occasion for the people in our small town. ....

5 Choose the best word(s) in the box to complete each sentence.

celebrate   costume   buried   religious ✓   God   contest   folk   a lot   occasion   site

- ▶ The ceremony isn't religious.............. .
- 1 We visited the .... of the old castle.
- 2 Carnival is a great ....
- 3 We wore a special .... for the event.
- 4 The festival attracts older and younger ....
- 5 For me, the event means ....
- 6 Christians believe in ....
- 7 On my birthday, I always .... in some way.
- 8 I .... my dead cat in the garden.

6 Complete the words in the questions.

- ▶ What important festivals.............. do you have in your country?
- 1 Do any festivals take place in your n.............................. ? If so, which?
- 2 Have you ever d.............................. u.............................. in a special costume for a festival? If so, what did you wear?
- 3 Are there usually performances by professional singers and d.............................. ?
- 4 Are there any special o.............................. when there are f.............................. at night?
- 5 Do these different events m.............................. a lot to you personally? ....

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.

TEST YOURSELF

69 The internet

A Internet vocabulary

Frequently asked questions (FAQs)

*What is **data**?*	It's information which is **stored** (= kept) on your computer.
*What's a **search engine**?*	It's a computer program like Google which searches the internet for information.
*What's a **network**?*	It's a set of computers that are connected and can exchange information.
*What's a **username**?*	It's the name or special word you use that allows you to enter a computer program or system.
*What's a **login**?*	When you start to use the computer, you usually type in a name or word that you've chosen. You **log on** when you start the computer, and you **log off** when you finish. When you want to use a particular app or website, you **log in** and then **log out** to leave it.
*What is **software**?*	It's the programs which are used to to operate a computer.
*What's an **app**?*	An **app** is a piece of software that you can put on a smartphone or tablet. You can use it to get information or to play a game.
*What happens if my screen **freezes**?*	You can't move text or **images** (= pictures on a computer) because there's something wrong with the equipment or programs.

SPOTLIGHT *hardware* and *software*

Hardware is the machinery and electronic parts of a computer system, e.g. keyboard, monitor, printer.
Software is the programs used to operate the computer, e.g. *educational* ***software****, music-sharing* ***software****.*

① Correct the spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- ▶ ~~FACs~~ FAQs
- 1 What's his loggin for that site? ....
- 2 We had to buy expensive new cardware. ....
- 3 What's your usedname on Instagram? ....
- 4 I've used too much date on my phone. ....
- 5 This is a great ap for teenagers. ....
- 6 Does your computer frieze often? ....
- 7 The pictures are stawed on my phone. ....

② Complete the sentences with words from the box.

network   freezes ✓   app   engine   log in   data   log off   images

- ▶ There's something wrong with my computer. The screen often freezes.
- 1 Our customers weren't able to .... to our website this morning.
- 2 Be careful: if you use too much .... on your phone, you'll have to pay more.
- 3 The most popular search .... in the USA is Google. In China, it's Baidu.
- 4 A computer .... is a group of computers that are connected together.
- 5 If you have a problem with your computer, ... and then start it up again.
- 6 I've got an .... that stops advertisements appearing on the site.
- 7 There are some sites where you can get free .... to use on your website.

③ Complete the questions.

- ▶ Do you think computer hardware is more expensive or cheaper than in the past?
- 1 Do you ever use s.......... to change photos or i.......... on your device?
- 2 Which s.......... engine do you use most often?
- 3 Do you use the same u.......... on all websites, or do you use different ones?
- 4 Do you use F.......... pages a lot on the web when you need some information?
- 5 Do you always l.......... o.......... when you've finished using banking or retail websites?
- 6 Which a.......... do you use most on your phone?

④ ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

TEST YOURSELF

B Computer problems

If your computer does not **start up**, the first thing is to check that it **is connected to** the **power supply.**

When your mouse **batteries** are **low**, change them. With a **wireless** mouse, you need to **plug** it **into** the computer to **charge** it. You can also charge your phone with a mobile **charger.**

If your apps are **running** slowly, it may be because of a **file** that you have **downloaded** from a website. You need to find out how to **delete** or **remove** it. Alternatively, you may need to **update** the app.

wire
plugged into the computer

GLOSSARY

start (sth) up	begin working or make sth begin working: ***start up*** *a computer/car/engine*
connect sth (to sth)	join together two or more things
power	energy used to make machines work
supply	an amount of sth that you need: ***water/food/power supply***
low	If a battery is **low,** it does not have much energy left.
wireless	**Wireless** systems do not use wires, but communicate using electronic signals. A **wireless** mouse works on **Wi-Fi.**
charge	pass electricity through a device/ battery so that it is stored there
run	If a computer program **runs,** it operates or works.
file	a set of information on a computer with a particular name
download	If you **download** information (*data*) from the internet, you copy it onto your computer/device. **Upload** means to send documents or data from your computer to the internet.
delete	take sth away that has been stored on a device SYN **remove**
update	add the most recent information to sth

5 **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

- ▶ plug / run S
- 1 mouse / power ....
- 2 supply / Wi-Fi ....
- 3 delete / connect ....
- 4 download / low ....
- 5 supply / wireless ....
- 6 charge / battery ....
- 7 upload/ low ....

6 **Circle the correct answers. Be careful: more than one answer may be correct.**

- ▶ If your computer is off, you need to [✓ ***start it up***] / ***upload it / charge it.***
- 1 You sometimes have to put batteries in a ***file / mouse / wire.***
- 2 If your mouse is wireless, you sometimes need to ***download it / charge it / plug it in.***
- 3 If you have a violent storm, it can cut off your ***water / power / energy*** supply.
- 4 Do you know how to ***delete / remove / connect*** an app from your phone?
- 5 You can ***download / upload / charge*** music from the internet to your phone.

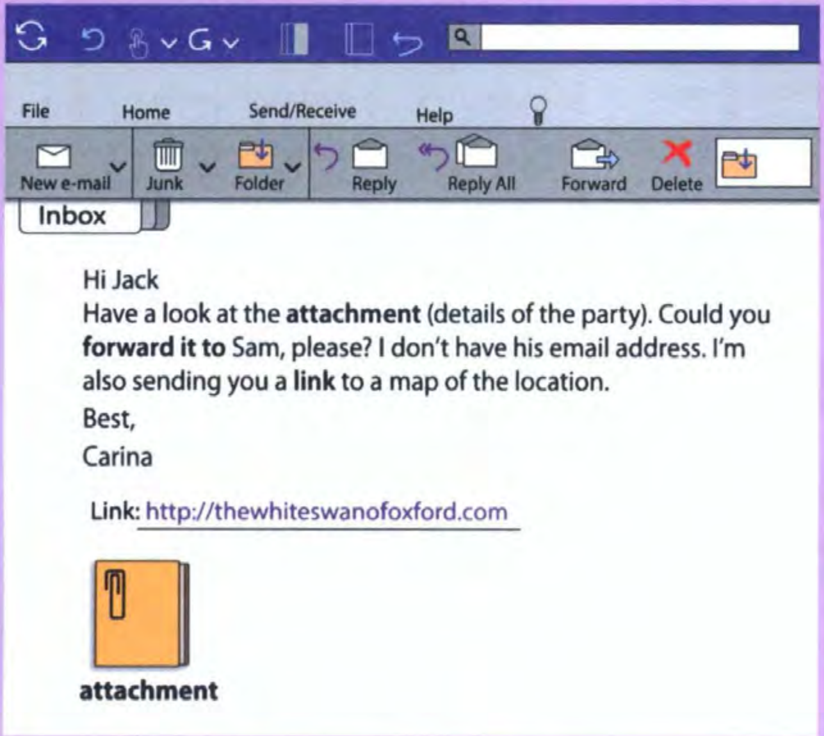
7 **Complete the sentences.**

- ▶ The file........ contained all the documents I needed for the meeting, and I've gone and lost it!
- 1 My phone battery is very .... – only 5% – I need to .... it quickly. And I also need to .... my mobile .... in too.
- 2 The computer wasn't working, but then I realised it wasn't .... to the power .... How silly of me!
- 3 If you need to check your messages, go into that café and use their ....
- 4 Does your mouse use .... or is it .... ?
- 5 I had to .... some software from the internet, and it took me over an hour.
- 6 I made a mistake and .... a file I'd been working on, and now I can't find it.
- 7 If an app .... slowly, you might need to .... it.
- 8 When you .... up this computer, it takes a long time because it's old.

TEST YOURSELF

70 Email and social media

A Email



Hi Jack

Have a look at the **attachment** (details of the party). Could you **forward it to** Sam, please? I don't have his email address. I'm also sending you a **link** to a map of the location.

Best,

Carina

Link: http://thewhiteswanofoxford.com

GLOSSARY	
junk (mail)	advertising that is sent to people who have not asked for it
delete	remove sth that is written or stored on a computer: ***delete** a word/sentence/file*
reply	send an answer by email to an email you have been sent
reply all	send an answer by email to all the names included in the first message
inbox	the place on a computer, etc. where new email messages are shown
forward sth (to sb)	send a message, letter, etc. that you have received from one person to another person

1 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ sent / reply D
- 1 forward / attachment ……
- 2 delete / message ……
- 3 folder / forward ……
- 4 junk / message ……
- 5 inbox / links ……
- 6 forward / reply ……

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Emails I've written to someone else go into sent mail folder.
- 1 Emails that have just arrived go into my …………… .
- 2 A document I include with an email message is an …………… .
- 3 If you want to see our room prices, click on this …………… .
- 4 I forgot to click on 'reply ……………' so only one person in the group got my message.
- 5 Juno emailed me yesterday. I'll …………… her message to you.
- 6 Advertisements usually go into my …………… mail, and then I …………… them.
- 7 I got an email telling me I'd got the job. I …………… immediately to say how pleased I was.
- 8 I put messages I want to keep into different …………… .

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- ▶ Do you always reply to emails immediately? I do if they're important or interesting.
- 1 Do you often attach documents or photos to your messages? If so, what kind of thing? ……………
- 2 Do you delete messages when you've replied to them? ……………
- 3 Is your junk folder completely full, or do you empty it regularly? ……………
- 4 How many messages are there usually in your inbox? ……………
- 5 Do you ever forward messages to other people? Why? / Why not? ……………

TEST YOURSELF

B Social media

In the **digital** age, people have new ways of **networking** with each other. Here are some popular **social media** sites:

Facebook To join, you create a **profile.** Then you can upload photos, **selfies**, videos, etc. It's a good way of **keeping in contact with** your friends and family. You can also sell goods on Facebook.

WhatsApp allows **individuals** and groups to **share instantly** and make free calls.

Twitter Join Twitter and then you can **tweet** or **post** a **tweet**, which is like a short **blog.** You can also use Twitter to **promote** your business.

SPOTLIGHT *social media*

Social media means websites and software programs such as Facebook and Twitter. These are used for **social networking** (= communicating with people you know or who have similar interests to you). **network** *v*

GLOSSARY

digital	using an electronic system that uses numbers 1 and 0 to record sound or store information	**share**	tell other people online about your experiences, feelings and ideas; ALSO **share sth (with sb)**
profile	a description of yourself on a social networking site	**instantly**	without delay SYN **immediately; instant/ immediate** *adj*
selfie	a photo that you take of yourself, usually for use on social media	**tweet**	send a message using Twitter **tweet** *n*
		post	put information or pictures on a website
keep in contact (with sb)	see, speak to or write to sb, often regularly	**blog**	a personal record that sb puts on their website saying what they have done, or what they think about sth
individual	a person considered separately from other people in the same group **individual** *adj*	**promote**	help sell a product or service by advertising it

④ **Is the stress in these pairs of words the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ popular / upload D
1 digital / media ....
2 individual / immediate ....
3 profile / social ....
4 Twitter / business ....
5 contact / network ....
6 promote / selfie ....
7 digital / instantly ....

⑤ **Complete the texts.**

BILLY-JO

I've never been good with ▶ digital technology, but my cousins asked me to join some **(1)** s.................... media sites as they live abroad and wanted to be able to keep in **(2)** c.................... with me more easily. As I'm new to social **(3)** n...................., I asked a friend to help me, and she suggested I start with Facebook. She told me to take a **(4)** s.................... and create a **(5)** p.................... of myself and then **(6)** p.................... it. My cousins in Australia contacted me **(7)** i...................., and we had an online chat. I'm able to **(8)** s.................... pictures and videos with them, which is great.

GARDEN DIARIES

I've been writing a **(9)** b.................... about my gardening business for several months now, and it's going well. My wife encouraged me to sign up to Twitter, and I now **(10)** t.................... most days. I find it's a great way to **(11)** p.................... my business and hear from potential customers.

⑥ ABOUT YOU **Which of these activities do you do regularly, and why? Write your answers, or tell another student.**

use social media
connect with family on social media
promote your business on social media
write a blog
take selfies
share photos and information online
create a profile

TEST YOURSELF

71 Word building: prefixes

A *un-*

In English, ***un-*** is the most common prefix and is added to some adjectives and verbs to give the opposite meaning.

*We were **unable** to go to the party because we were both ill.*

*It was **unnecessary** for them to come to the airport to meet us.*

*I think it was **unfair** giving the job to Ed: he wasn't the best person.*

*I've got an old car, and it's **unreliable** in very cold weather.*

*I was rude to Adam the other day, so he's very **unlikely** to invite me to his party.*

*I used to play rugby, but these days I'm very **unfit** and can't run far.*

*Certain films are completely **unsuitable** for young children to watch.*

*In some countries, Friday 13th is thought to be **unlucky**.*

*I **unlocked** the door and went in.*

*I usually **unplug** my washing machine if I go away on holiday.*

GLOSSARY

unfair	Sth or sb that is **unfair** does not treat people in the same way or the right way. OPP **fair**
unreliable	If sth or sb is **unreliable**, you cannot trust it or him/her. OPP **reliable**
unlikely	If sth is **unlikely** to happen, it's probably not going to happen. OPP **likely**
unfit	not in good physical condition OPP **fit**
unsuitable (for sb/sth)	not right for sb/sth OPP **suitable**
unlucky	having bad things happen to you which you cannot control OPP **lucky**
unlock	open sth, e.g. a door, using a key OPP **lock**
unplug	remove a piece of electrical equipment from the electricity supply OPP **plug sth in**

SPOTLIGHT *word stress*

When you add a prefix to an adjective, it doesn't usually change the stress, e.g. happy, unhappy. But the stress can change if you want to emphasize the negative.

- *Is he **likely** to come? ~ No, he's very **unlikely** to come.*

① Most of these words have the stress on the second syllable, but one word has the stress on a different syllable. Which word? Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ unlikely unfit unsuitable unnecessary unplug unlucky unable unfair unreliable ....

② Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

unfair unlocked unlucky unlikely ✓ unreliable unsuitable unnecessary

▶ He probably won't get the job. It's very unlikely.
1 You didn't need to do it. It was ....
2 I turned the handle and the door opened. It was ....
3 He never comes when he says he will. He's very ....
4 Some people weren't able to vote, and they had the right to do so. It was ....
5 The weather is usually good in July, but this year it was wet. We were ....
6 Dad bought mum a saucepan for her birthday. What an .... present!

③ Complete the sentences.

▶ I missed the plane by two minutes – it was so unlucky!
1 Jacob often promises to help but rarely does – he's very ....
2 I was .... to see my relatives on this trip because I was too busy with work.
3 Why do men get paid more than women for the same job? It's very ....
4 My brother can't get up the stairs. He smokes, and he's very ....
5 Fiona is .... to be here on time – she's usually late.
6 We were out in a storm, and the clothes we had on were ...., so we got wet.
7 Don't take .... risks when you're climbing. It's a dangerous mountain.
8 Remember to .... the iron when you've finished.
9 I tried to get in the flat but I couldn't .... the door.

④ Which of these words form opposites with the prefix *un-*? Use the Word List or APP to help you.

kind friendly polite expected patient practical usual popular

TEST YOURSELF

B *dis-, im-, il-, re-*

Is it **illegal** to ride a motorbike without a crash helmet?
Is it **dishonest** to tell your boss you are ill when you aren't?
Does it matter if a lawyer is **disorganized**?
Can you **disagree** about politics and still be friends with someone?
If you fail your final university exams, can you **retake** them?
Is it ever OK to be **impolite**?
Does it matter if a doctor's handwriting is **illegible**?
Is it easy to learn **irregular** verbs in English?
Do you always try to **reuse** or **recycle** plastic water bottles?

GLOSSARY

illegal	not allowed by the law OPP **legal**
dishonest	not telling the truth OPP **honest**
disorganized	not able to plan well OPP **organized**
disagree (with sb)	not have the same opinion as sb OPP **agree (with sb)**
retake	If you **retake** an exam, you take it again.
impolite	rude; not behaving in a good way towards people OPP **polite**
illegible	If handwriting is **illegible**, it is difficult or impossible to read. OPP **legible**
irregular	not following the normal rules of grammar OPP **regular**
reuse	use sth again SYN **recycle**

SPOTLIGHT *re-* with verbs

The prefix *re-* means 'again'. Common examples are:

reuse recycle rewrite rebuild reappear rearrange reorganize

- *I must **rewrite** my essay.* (= write it again)
- *Helena **reappeared** later, with a bottle of water.* (= appeared again)

5 **Right or wrong? Write *R* or *W*. Correct any wrong answers.**

▶ unpolite W – impolite
1 disorganized ....
2 unhonest ....
3 rewrite ....
4 disagree ....
5 unlegal ....
6 reuse ....
7 dislegible ....

6 **Complete the dialogues using words from the box with the correct prefix.**

organized agree take use ✓ appear legible honest regular legal

▶ Why do you want that empty bottle? ~ Because I'm going to reuse it.
1 Do you have the same ideas about fashion as Clara? ~ No, we often ....
2 Did he pass the exam? ~ No, he'll have to .... it.
3 Will Oliver come back? ~ Yes, I think he will .... later today.
4 Does he usually tell the truth? ~ No, he's quite ....
5 Can you read this letter? ~ No, the handwriting is ....
6 Do you ever go in that bookshop? ~ No, it's hard to find things: it's so ....
7 Is *better* the comparative form of *good*? ~ Yes, it's an .... form.
8 Does he park in front of the shop? ~ Yes, he does, and it's ....

7 **Complete the words in the sentences.** ABOUT YOU

▶ Is it common for people to be impolite to the police? ....
1 Are many verbs i.................. in your language? ....
2 Is it d.................. to say someone looks nice when you don't really believe it? ....
3 Do you often r.................. the furniture in your house to change how it looks? ....
4 Is it i.................. to ride a bike on the pavement? ....
5 Is it common for you to d.................. with friends about politics? ....
6 Is it common for students to r.................. exams in your country? ....

8 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 7, or talk to another student. Then write your answers, or talk to another student about the questions at the top of the page.**

TEST YOURSELF

72 Word building: suffixes

A Nouns and verbs

Instead of some verbs, we can use a related noun in a phrase with another verb.

Verb	Verb + noun	Example
attract	**feel an attraction (to sb)**	*He **felt** an immediate **attraction** to Joanna.*
breathe	**take a breath**	*I **took a** deep **breath** and jumped into the pool.*
conclude	**reach a conclusion**	*We **reached** the **conclusion** that Ana was lying.*
confuse	**cause confusion**	*Changing the times of classes **caused** a lot of **confusion** amongst the students.*
encourage	**give sb encouragement**	*My father **gave me** a lot of **encouragement** when I was learning to drive.*
improve	**make an improvement (to sth)**	*The new law has **made a big improvement** to road safety.*
know	**have knowledge of sth**	*Do you **have any knowledge** of the man's disappearance?*

She's **praying.**
She's **saying a prayer.**

He's **quoting** *Hamlet.*
He's **reading a quotation** from *Hamlet.*

GLOSSARY

attraction	a feeling of liking sb/sth, sometimes sexually **attract** *v*
breath	the air you take in and blow out of your lungs **breathe** *v*
conclusion	an opinion that you reach after thinking about sth carefully **conclude** *v*
confusion	a state of not being able to think clearly or not understanding sth **confuse** *v*
encouragement	words or actions that give sb hope or confidence **encourage** *v*
improvement	a change that makes the quality or condition of sth better **improve** *v*
knowledge	the state of knowing about a particular fact or situation
prayer	the words you use when you speak to God or a god **pray** *v*
quotation (*inf* **quote**)	a phrase from a book, speech, play, etc. that sb repeats because it is interesting or useful **quote** *v*

① **Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

- ▶ encourage / knowledge S
- **1** breathe / breath ....
- **2** pray / prayer ....
- **3** know / knowledge ....
- **4** improve / conclusion ....
- **5** attraction / encouragement ....

② **Complete the sentences using a form of the word on the right.**

- ▶ Take a deep breath BREATHE
- **1** I don't have much .... of classical music. KNOW
- **2** The changes will make a big .... to your health. IMPROVE
- **3** The jury haven't reached a .... yet. CONCLUDE
- **4** Do you think Dee feels any .... to Ed? ATTRACT
- **5** The meeting ended in complete .... CONFUSE
- **6** At church, we said a .... for the people in the floods. PRAY
- **7** I read aloud a .... from Voltaire. QUOTE
- **8** My English teacher gave me a lot of .... ENCOURAGE

③ **Complete the sentences with a suitable verb or noun.**

- ▶ I hope the changes will improve the situation.
- **1** It's not my opinion. I'm just .... from what it says in the newspaper.
- **2** I didn't .... an immediate attraction to Sam. I fell in love with him slowly.
- **3** I often get .... when I try to do three different things at the same time.
- **4** As a child, I always said a .... to God when I went to bed to keep my family safe.
- **5** They .... the conclusion that they needed to make some .... to the office space.
- **6** If you feel stressed, you should .... in and out slowly for a minute.
- **7** I have very little .... of modern art: I just don't understand it.

TEST YOURSELF

B Adjective suffixes

Suffix	Examples	Meaning
-less -ful	Feel **powerless** in your job? Want to be **powerful**? Get our PEOPLE POWER video!	**powerless** not able to influence or control people OPP **powerful; power** *n*
-al	Modern **industrial** property to rent in **central** location. Andersons.com	**industrial** connected with **industry** *n* **central** in the **centre** *n* of sth
-ical	Cool, **practical, economical** clothing for every day. Go to practicalgear.com.	**practical** useful and suitable **practice** *n* **economical** costing or using less money, time, fuel, etc. than usual **economy** *n*
-able	Fabulous **fashionable** shoes – a **valuable** part of your wardrobe!	**fashionable** popular at the moment **fashion** *n* **valuable** very useful **value** *n*
-ous	**Get our T-shirts with humorous slogans, in various colours.**	**humorous** funny and entertaining **humour** *n* **various** several different **variety** *n*
-y	For beautiful, **shiny** hair, use Jango **creamy** shampoo and conditioner.	**shiny** causing a bright effect when in the sun or light **shine** *n* **creamy** with cream in, or smooth like cream **cream** *n*

SPOTLIGHT adjectives ending in *-ful* and *-less* (2)

Some pairs of opposites end in *-ful* and *-less*.

- *He's a **careful** student.* OPP ***careless***
- *It was a **useful** suggestion.* OPP ***useless***
- *It's a **painful** treatment.* OPP ***painless***

4 Good or bad? Write *G* or *B*.

▸ a powerful speaker G
1 shiny windows ....
2 an economical car ....
3 a shop in a central location ....
4 a valuable suggestion ....
5 a useless idea ....
6 a humorous novel ....
7 industrial smoke ....
8 a careless essay ....
9 a painless operation ....

5 Write the adjectives from these nouns.

▸ industry industrial
1 power .... and ....
2 cream ....
3 fashion ....
4 practice ....
5 variety ....
6 centre ....
7 shine ....

6 Complete the sentences using adjectives from the table.

▸ She left the water boiling on the cooker for an hour. That was very careless of her.
1 I come from an .... town in the north where they make chemicals.
2 A bike is much more .... than a car for getting around town.
3 These shoes may be ...., but they're incredibly uncomfortable.
4 My sister made fish with a .... sauce, which was delicious.
5 The teacher told us a very .... story about himself. We couldn't stop laughing.
6 Soldiers entered the town from all sides, and we were .... to stop them.
7 I can't see you today: there are .... things I have to do in town.
8 My mother gave me a very .... piece of advice: be patient and don't give in.

7 *-able* and *-al* are common suffixes at the end of adjectives. Which of these nouns and verbs form adjectives ending in *-able* and *-al*? You will have to make some small spelling changes. Use the Word List or the APP to help you.

nature ....
emotion ....
health ....
music ....
drink ....
rely ....

TEST YOURSELF

73 Link words

A Reason, result and addition

A **link** between A and B is a connection between two or more people or things. The words in bold in this unit all **link** one idea **with** another idea.

... such an awful day! **Since** I'd had a bad night on Tuesday, I took a sleeping pill last night and **as a result**, I overslept this morning and had to take a taxi to the station. Of course, all the trains were delayed **due to** the snow, **plus** it was the rush hour **as well**, so I had to queue for ages at the ticket machine. That was bad enough, but when I finally got on the train, it was **not only** 30 minutes late **but also** very crowded. **In addition**, I had to stand all the way. Then when I got off the train, I slipped on some ice and broke my ankle. **As a consequence**, I've spent the whole day in hospital. Unbelievable!

GLOSSARY

since	SYNS **because, as**		**not only ... but also**	used to emphasize that sth else is also true
as a result	because of sth that happened before	**so**	**in addition (to sth/sb)**	used when you want to mention another person or thing after sth else
due to sth	because of sth		**as a consequence (of sth)**	used to say one thing is the result of another
plus	used to add more information			
as well	We usually put **as well** at the end of a *clause* (= a part of a sentence that includes a subject and a verb). SYN **also**			

① Circle the correct word.

- ▶ [✓ *As*] / *In addition* I had no money, I couldn't pay.
- 1 It snowed heavily, and *as a result / plus*, we had to stay in for two days.
- 2 *Since / As a result* it was such a horrible day, we went to see a film.
- 3 He had to give up his job *as a consequence / due to* stress.
- 4 People are richer these days, and *so / since* they spend a lot more.
- 5 It was a long way to the station, and I had a suitcase *as well / as a result*.
- 6 *As / Due to* he had no money, I ended up paying the bill.
- 7 The attacker not only had a knife *but as well / but also* a gun.
- 8 The town has a good transport system. *In addition / As a consequence*, it is very cheap to get around town.

② Write the circled link words in Exercise 1 in the table below.

ADDITION	RESULT	REASON
▶ in addition	....	....
....	....	....
....		....

③ Complete the sentences in a logical way.

- ▶ I didn't get to the party on time because the train was late.
- 1 In winter, schools sometimes have to .... due to bad weather.
- 2 Ulla lost her passport on the way to the airport. As a consequence, ... fly that day.
- 3 The hotel was dirty and the service was poor. In addition, the food ....
- 4 As I .... much money to spend, I decided to stay at home that evening.
- 5 Julius forgot his key and as a result, he couldn't ....
- 6 Jeans are extremely practical, plus .... expensive.
- 7 I had a bad night's sleep: the bed was uncomfortable, and .... hot as well.
- 8 Since I'll be away on holiday at the time of Lia's wedding, I .... attend.
- 9 In the sentence 'I didn't get to the party on time because the train was late', there are two .... The second one is 'because the train was late'.

TEST YOURSELF

B Contrasting ideas

A **contrast** is a difference between two or more people or things which are being compared. The words in bold below introduce an idea which **contrasts** with something you have just said.

Contrasting two ideas in one sentence:	Notes
We got a ticket, ***although*** / ***though*** / ***even though*** *it wasn't easy.*	The clause with **although**, **even though** and **though** can come at the beginning or the end: ***Although*** *it wasn't easy, we got a ticket.*
I went to work, ***despite*** / ***in spite of*** *feeling very unwell.* / *the bad weather.*	**despite** SYN **in spite of** are often followed by an *-ing* form or a noun.
On the one hand*, the job is well paid,* ***but on the other (hand)****, it's boring.*	**on the one hand ... but on the other (hand)** introduce two contrasting points of view.
Contrasting two ideas in two separate sentences:	
The car was old. ***Despite that,*** / ***In spite of that,*** *I* ***still*** *bought it.*	In **despite that / in spite of that,** the word *that* refers back to the fact that the car was old.
He didn't work hard. ***However,*** / ***All the same,*** *he* ***still*** *passed.*	**However** is more formal. **All the same** is more informal.

SPOTLIGHT *still*

Still can be used to emphasize that the second part of a sentence is surprising, especially after what was said in the first part of the sentence.

- *She felt ill, but she* ***still*** *went to work.*
- *He left an hour early, but he* ***still*** *missed the train.*

4 Match 1–8 with a–i.

▶ He says nice things about you ..g..
1 He got the job in spite ....
2 I thought the acting was good ....
3 He went out despite ....
4 The soup was disgusting ....
5 We had a nice day even ....
6 He felt really cold. In spite ....
7 He went to bed very late. All the same, ...
8 On the one hand, the bike can go anywhere ....

a he got to work on time.
b feeling very unwell.
c although the main course was nice.
d though the weather wasn't very good.
e of his lack of experience.
f of that, he didn't put his sweater on.
g However, you can't trust him. ✓
h but on the other, the car's quicker.
i though I didn't enjoy the story of the film.

5 Complete the sentences with one word. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

▶ We had quite a nice day there. All........................ the same, I wouldn't go back again.
1 I could just see the house .... the thick fog.
2 You'll find it hard to get work there. ...., it's worth trying.
3 The queue for the exhibition was very long. In .... of that, it was worth waiting.
4 There was more snow today, ... I think it's warmer this evening.
5 .... spite of leaving two hours early, we .... missed the plane.
6 I didn't feel sleepy .... though it was very late.
7 Jun has very little money. Despite ...., he's really generous.

6 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

1 She was very unkind to him. In spite of that, ...
2 Louise has plenty of money. All the same, ...
3 On the one hand, the hotel was very convenient, but on ....
4 I've applied for a job in the city, though ....
5 She has a serious illness. However, ...
6 She managed to arrive on time today in spite of ....
7 Despite being a very good driver, Anna still ....

TEST YOURSELF

74 School

A The school system

In the UK, children are **legally required** to **attend** school **up to** the age of 16. **Primary** education is for students aged 5–11, and then **secondary** education **lasts** until at least 16, with many students **carrying on** at school for two more years to prepare for university.

Both **state** and **private** schools are run by a **head teacher**, who normally has a **deputy** in charge of certain areas of the school. The rest of the **staff** includes teachers, receptionists, secretaries, cleaners, etc. There are normally three **terms** in a school year, and each term usually lasts about 13 weeks. The school day is divided into about five lessons, with a lunch **break,** typically 45 minutes to an hour, and often shorter breaks in the morning and afternoon. As well as teaching lessons at school, teachers also **set** the students homework.

GLOSSARY	
legally	according to the law **legal** *adj*
require *formal*	If you are **required** to do sth, you need to do it or must do it.
attend *formal*	go to or be present at a place
up to	until; as far as
state	provided or controlled by the government of a country: ***state*** *schools* (People pay to go to a **private** school.)
deputy	the person in a company, school, etc. who does the work of the leader when they are not there
break	a short period of rest
set	give homework, a task, etc. for sb to do: ***set*** *homework for the class*

SPOTLIGHT verbs that mean 'continue'

Carry on is a synonym of **continue.**

- *We **continued/carried on** working until 5 o'clock.*
- *If this noise **carries on/continues**, I will complain.*

You usually use **last** for a fixed period of time that something continues.

- *The lessons **last** 45 minutes.* ▪ *The lunch break **lasts** an hour.*

1 **True or false about the UK? Write *T* or *F*. Correct any sentences that are false.**

▶ In the UK students are not legally required to go to school. F - They are legally required to go to school.
1 If you are required to do something, you can choose to do it. ....
2 Primary school is from 5–11. ....
3 Secondary school continues up to 18 for everyone. ....
4 Many students carry on at secondary school from 16–18 to prepare for university. ....
5 There are usually two terms in a school year. ....
6 A lunch break is always an hour. ....
7 Students have breaks in the morning and sometimes in the afternoon. ....
8 Students set homework for their teacher. ....
9 All schools in Britain are state schools. ....

2 **Complete the sentences.** ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

▶ We had three terms a year in my school. ....
1 You are required to .... school in the UK from the age of 5. ....
2 I was five and a half when I started .... education. ....
3 When I was eleven years old, I went to .... school. You didn't have to pay: it was a .... school, not a .... school. ....
4 Most lessons .... about an hour. ....
5 There were about 100 members of .... at my school. ....
6 In secondary school, the teachers used to .... us lots of homework. ....
7 We never saw the .... teacher very much, but I know she worked very hard. ....
8 It was the head teacher's .... who was responsible for the school rules. We were a bit afraid of him. ....
9 I didn't want to .... at school after the age of 16, so I left. ....

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? How is the school system different in your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Exams

Advice on how to **sit written exams**

- **Follow** the **instructions** on the exam paper.
- Don't **communicate with** other **candidates**. You could be asked to leave for **cheating**.
- Before you start, read the exam paper carefully. Don't **waste time** copying the questions.
- **Planning** is **essential** if you are writing essays. Spend 5-10 minutes making notes.
- Have a positive **attitude**. You are being **examined** on what you know, and this is your chance to show it. And it will be a **relief** when it's all **over**.

GLOSSARY

sit an exam	SYN **do/take an exam**	**waste time**	use time badly or in a silly way **a waste of time** *n*
written	sth that is **written** involves writing and not speaking	**planning**	the act or process of making plans for sth
follow instructions	do what sb/sth tells you to do	**essential**	absolutely necessary and important
communicate (with sb)	exchange information, ideas or feelings with sb **communication** *n*	**attitude**	the way you think, feel or behave
candidate	a person who is taking an exam	**examine** *formal*	ask questions to find out what sb knows or can do
cheating	doing sth that is not honest, especially in an exam or a game **cheat** *v*. The person who cheats is a **cheat**.	**relief**	the feeling you have when sth unpleasant stops **relieved** *adj*
		over	finished

4 ***Yes* or *No*?**

▶ Is *planning* useful? Yes

1 If you *follow instructions*, does it help? ....

2 If something is *over*, is it too difficult? ....

3 If something is *essential*, do you need it? ....

4 Does your *attitude* to something show how you feel? ....

5 If something is *a waste of time*, is it useful? ....

6 Do *candidates* sit exams? ....

5 **Rewrite the sentences using the word on the right. The meaning must stay the same.**

▶ They're asking him questions to see what he knows about Ancient Egypt.
They're examining him to see what he knows about Ancient Egypt. EXAMINE

1 Do what he tells you. .... INSTRUCTIONS

2 Don't talk to anyone. .... COMMUNICATE

3 How you think and behave is important. .... ATTITUDE

4 It was a relief to finish the exam. .... RELIEVED

5 Don't spend your time doing nothing. .... WASTE

6 He wouldn't do anything dishonest. .... CHEAT

7 I was pleased to finish the exam. .... OVER

8 Do we need dictionaries? .... ESSENTIAL

9 We had a test where you write the answers. .... WRITTEN

6 **Complete the words in the text.**

My brother doesn't like ▶ doing exams. He gets very nervous and generally has a negative **(1)** a.......... to them. In fact, he's so nervous that he sometimes can't follow the **(2)** i.......... . On one occasion, he forgot that he had his dictionary in his pocket and they thought he was trying to **(3)** c.......... . Fortunately, my mother always gives him lots of advice: she tells him that **(4)** p.......... is **(5)** e.......... if he wants to write clear answers, and not to **(6)** w.......... time on things he can't answer. In our house, it's always such a **(7)** r.......... if he passes an exam.

TEST YOURSELF

75 Academic life

1

2

Word	Example	Meaning
higher education	*After he left school, he* ***went on to higher education****.*	education at a college or university after the age of 18 **go on (to sth)** = continue
educated *adj*	*She's a very* ***educated*** *and professional member of staff.*	having had a high standard of education
educate (*often passive*)	*I was* ***educated*** *at a local school and then Cambridge University.*	teach sb over a period of time at school, university, etc.
academic	*I enjoy* ***academic*** *subjects like history and biology.*	connected to education, especially to school or university
undergraduate	***Undergraduates*** *usually do a three-year course.*	a university student studying for their first **degree** (*see spotlight*)
graduate	*She's an Oxford* ***graduate****.* *She* ***graduated*** *last year.*	a person who has finished their degree **graduate** *v*
tutor	*You can ask your* ***tutor*** *for advice about the essay.*	sb who teaches and looks after a student or a small group of students in a university
professor	*She's a* ***professor*** *of law.*	the highest level of teacher in a university
lecture	*I went to an interesting* ***lecture*** *on Italian politics.*	a talk given to a large group to teach them a subject. The person is a **lecturer**. (*see picture 1*)
take notes	*I always* ***take notes*** *during lectures.*	write down the most important information from sth
seminar	*Are you going to the* ***seminar*** *this morning?*	a class at a university where a small group discuss a subject with a teacher
laboratory ALSO **lab** *inf*	*When I did my physics degree, we spent a lot of time in the* ***lab****.*	a special room where scientists do research, tests, experiments, etc.
campus	*I lived* ***on campus*** *during my first year.*	the area where the buildings of a college or university are (*see picture 2*)
write a thesis	*I'm* ***writing a thesis*** *on artificial intelligence.*	do a long piece of writing on a particular academic subject
do research	*He's* ***doing research*** *for a PhD.*	do a long and careful study of a subject. The person is a **researcher**.
conference	*I'm going to attend a* ***conference*** *on climate change at Cambridge University.*	a large official meeting where many people with the same job or interest come together to discuss their views

SPOTLIGHT degree courses

Universities give **degrees** to students who complete special courses. In the UK these are normally courses of at least three years, and up to five years for subjects such as medicine. You **do a degree** or **study for a degree**.

- *I'm* ***doing*** *a* ***degree in*** *law.*
- *My sister is* ***studying for*** *a* ***degree in*** *English.*

If you go on to do a higher degree, e.g. a Masters or a PhD, that is called a **postgraduate degree**. A student is then a **postgraduate** (ALSO *inf* **postgrad**).

1 **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

- ▶ write / higher S
- 1 tutor / turn ....
- 2 research / lecture ....
- 3 professor / conference ....
- 4 the / thesis ....
- 5 degree / thesis ....
- 6 a graduate / to graduate ....
- 7 undergraduate / campus ....
- 8 educate / graduate ....

2 **Tick the words that are people.**

- ▶ professor ✓
- thesis ....
- tutor ....
- lecture ....
- educated ....
- undergraduate ....
- research ....
- campus ....
- researcher ....
- lecturer ....
- seminar ....
- a graduate ....

3 **Match 1–7 with a–h.**

- ▶ lecture d
- 1 go on ....
- 2 study for ....
- 3 do ....
- 4 take ....
- 5 write ....
- 6 attend ....
- 7 work ....

- **a** a degree
- **b** in the lab
- **c** to higher education
- **d** to a group of undergraduates ✓
- **e** a conference
- **f** research
- **g** a thesis
- **h** notes

4 **Underline the correct answer.**

- ▶ I thought the ***thesis/lecture*** this morning was a bit boring.
- 1 He's in his second year, so he's still ***an undergraduate / a graduate***.
- 2 We had an interesting discussion in the ***lecture / seminar*** this morning.
- 3 I have decided to live on ***campus / university*** this year.
- 4 The students all have to write a 10,000 word ***lecture / thesis*** this year.
- 5 You can talk to your ***lecturer / tutor*** if you need more help.
- 6 She's been a professor in that ***school / university*** for many years.
- 7 He finished his degree and now he's ***a postgraduate / an undergraduate*** student.
- 8 Scientists spend a lot of time in ***laboratories / seminars***.
- 9 Where were you ***graduated / educated***?

5 **Complete the text.**

In ▶ higher **(1)** e.................... , if you are an **(2)** u.................... studying for a **(3)** d.................... in history or English, you will spend a lot of time studying alone, but you also have to attend some lectures and **(4)** s.................... . In seminars, the discussion is usually led by a **(5)** t.................... , and you may have to express your opinions on a range of **(6)** a.................... topics. At the end of the course you take exams, and if you are successful, you **(7)** g.................... . Some **(8)** g.................... leave university at this point, but those with a good degree may decide to stay on and do **(9)** r.................... or a higher degree. This may take one, two or three more years of study, and for arts students usually involves writing a **(10)** t.................... .

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

- 1 How long are most degrees in your country? ....
- 2 Which degrees usually take the longest time to complete? ....
- 3 Do many students go on to higher education after they leave school? ....
- 4 Do students often live on campus? ....
- 5 Do many students go on to do postgraduate degrees? ....
- 6 Do universities often hold conferences? ....

TEST YOURSELF

76 Student life

University life in Britain

- In Britain, many university students live **away from home**. This gives them more **freedom** and the opportunity to meet lots of new people, but can also be difficult for some students who **are** not **used to being on their own** and have never learnt to cook for themselves or even **iron** their clothes. In their first year, most students choose to live in student **accommodation**, which is sometimes on **campus**. After that, they **tend to rent** a flat or house with other students.
- Part of student life is about understanding the **importance** of **managing** your money carefully: tuition **fees**, **loans** you may have **taken out**, money for food, and **payments** you have to **make** for your living costs, for electricity, etc. **For this reason**, many students find **part-time jobs**.
- **At university**, you can often choose when you want to study, but you need to attend lectures, do your **assignments on time**, and plan your **revision** period before exams.

GLOSSARY

away from somewhere	in a different place: ***away from** home/school*
freedom	the right or ability to say or do what you want
on my/your, etc. own	SYN **by yourself / alone**
accommodation	a place to stay or live
campus	the buildings of a university or college and the lands around them **on campus** in the main university area
tend (to do sth)	usually do or be sth
rent	pay to stay in a place or use sth that doesn't belong to you: ***rent** a flat/car* **rent** *n*
importance (of sth / of doing sth) [U]	the quality of being important
manage	be in control of sth

fee	money you pay for the professional advice or service of a doctor, lawyer, etc. University students pay **tuition fees** for their teaching.
loan	a sum of money that sb borrows, usually from a bank **take out a loan** arrange to borrow money from a bank
payment	the act of paying sb: ***make a payment***
for this/that reason	because of this/that
part-time job	work for only a part of the day or week OPP **full-time job**
at university	If you are **at university** (without *the*), you are studying at a university. ALSO **at school**
assignment	a job or piece of work that sb is given to do
on time	not late or early; at the correct time
revision	the process of studying sth again, often to prepare for an exam **revise (for sth)** *v*

SPOTLIGHT *be used to (doing) sth* and *be accustomed to (doing) sth*

If you **are used to (doing) something**, you know it well because you have seen, heard, done, etc. it a lot. **Be accustomed to (doing) something** is a synonym, but less common and more formal.

- *I live in England so I'**m used to** bad weather.*
- *My brother doesn't have a car so he **is used to** walk**ing**.*
- *I live with my family so I'**m not used to** cook**ing** for myself.*

Don't confuse this structure with **used to** + infinitive, which is for talking about something that you did in the past but don't do now.

- *I **used to be** in the army, but I'm a teacher now.*

1 **Write the words in the box in the correct column, according to the underlined sound. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

university ✓ campus tuition fees accustomed
revise importance assignment accommodation reason

see		shoe	zoo
university	....	....	....
....	....	....	....
....			....

2 **Replace the underlined word/phrase with another word/phrase that has a similar meaning.**

▶ I did several pieces of work each term. assignments
1 I'm not really accustomed to getting up early. ....
2 I've never lived on my own. ....
3 I washed my shirt but now I need to press an iron across it to make it look good. ....
4 I liked the place where I stayed. It was cheap and convenient. ....
5 I had to borrow money from the bank. ....
6 The university was a long way from home and because of this I decided not to go. ....
7 Restaurants are expensive for students, so I usually eat at home. ....
8 Have you seen the university buildings and land around it yet? ....

3 **One word or part of a word is missing in each sentence. What is it and where does it go?**

▶ She / used to studying by herself. is
1 I took a part job during the summer. ....
2 I understand the importance revision. ....
3 I always try to arrive time. ....
4 I was away home for two months. ....
5 I'm not used studying hard. ....
6 I don't go there my own. ....
7 I have two brothers university. ....
8 I tend study better in the mornings. ....
9 Could you these trousers for me? ....

4 **Complete the sentences with words and phrases from the box.**

revision on time for this reason ✓ manage payment
importance freedom tend rent take out

▶ University can be very expensive. For this reason I decided not to go.
1 I decided to .... a flat with some friends in my second year.
2 The owner of our flat asked us to make a large .... before we could move in.
3 Fortunately, the train was ...., so I wasn't late for my lecture.
4 I .... to work in the library in the afternoon until about 5 p.m.
5 Do lots of .... before the exam.
6 I don't know how to .... my money. I've never had to do it.
7 Do you think university students have too much ...., or is it good for them?
8 I had to .... loans when I was at university.
9 Ariana doesn't really understand the .... of giving your essays in on time.

5 **Complete the questions.** ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

1 Do students usually live ▶ at .... home, or a.................... from home? ....
2 Do most students choose to live in student a....................? ....
3 Do they live on c.................... or in the town? ....
4 Do they have to pay tuition f....................? ....
5 Do many have to take out l.................... to pay the bills? ....
6 Do they often get p....................-t.................... jobs to help pay the bills? ....
7 Are students u.................... to working on their own? ....

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Based on universities in your country, write your answers to Exercise 5, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

77 Describing jobs

A Different jobs

Job	What does he/she **do for a living**? (= What's his/her job?)
hairdresser	a person who cuts people's hair **hairdressing** *n*
mechanic	a person who repairs **engines** (= a machine that makes things move), especially in cars and lorries
photographer	a person who takes photographs/photos **photography** *n*
chemist SYN **pharmacist**	a person who prepares and sells **medicines** (= special liquids or tablets that help you get better when you are ill)
travel agent	a person who **makes** travel **arrangements** for people and works in a **travel agency** (An **agent** is a person who does business for another person.)
estate agent	a person who buys and sells homes for people
postman **postwoman**	a person who **delivers** (= takes sth to the place it must go to) letters and packages to people's homes
importer **exporter**	a person who **imports** goods (= buys sth from another country to sell in your country) **import** *v, n* OPP **export** *v, n*
priest	a person who performs religious ceremonies in some religions
sailor	a person who works on a ship; a person who **sails** a boat (= travels on water on a ship or boat)

① **Are these sentences true or false? Write *T* or *F*. Correct the sentences that are false.**

▶ A hairdresser cuts hair. T..........
1 An estate agent sells holidays. ....
2 A chemist sells medicines. ....
3 An importer exports goods to sell. ....
4 A photographer takes pictures. ....
5 A travel agent arranges flights for people. ....
6 A mechanic repairs roads and bridges. ....
7 A priest marries people. ....
8 A postman delivers new furniture. ....
9 An exporter lives abroad. ....
10 A sailor sometimes sleeps on a ship. ....

② **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I export.......... wool from Wales, mostly to countries in the Far East.
1 What does your father do for a ....?
2 The .... agent showed us several nice flats.
3 I asked the .... not to cut too much off.
4 The travel .... talked to us about holidays in Estonia and Lithuania.
5 The postwoman .... the letters to the wrong house.
6 I believe he .... silver jewellery from abroad and sells it in his shops.
7 There was something wrong with the ...., so the mechanic had a look at it.
8 The .... in our church is a wonderful man.
9 I asked the .... to recommend something for a bad back.
10 I've been an .... for years: I buy things in France, then sell them here in the UK.
11 She works in a travel .... with offices all over London.
12 I've always been interested in .... I take hundreds of photos.

③ ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

Which jobs above:

- need a lot of training? ....
- don't need a lot of training? ....
- need some creativity? ....
- would you like to do for a living? ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Job responsibilities

Malala Amy, I know you work in reception at the sports centre, but **what does that involve?**

Amy Well, one of my main **duties** is to **greet** customers, and I'm **in charge of** customer **bookings** – I do quite a lot of that on the phone, and sometimes organizations want to **hire** our pool for an event, for example. But I also have to **deal with** a certain number of **complaints** from customers.

Malala Oh, that sounds fun!

Amy Well, it's OK most of the time. And, of course, in an **emergency**, I have to **make sure** that people get out of the building quickly so that everyone is safe.

GLOSSARY

What does your job, etc. involve?	= What do you have to do in your job, etc?
duty	sth you must do because it is part of your job
greet	say hello when you meet sb
in charge (of sth/sb)	in a position of control over sth/sb SYN **responsible for sth/sb**
booking	an arrangement to do sth or have sth: ***make a booking***
hire	pay money to borrow sth for a short time
deal with sth	take suitable action in a situation in order to solve a problem
complaint	a statement that you are not happy with sth: ***make a complaint***; **complain** *v*
emergency	a sudden dangerous situation when people need help quickly
make sure	check sth so that you can be certain about it

4 Tick the phrases that describe the duties a hotel receptionist could have.

▶ answer the phone ☑
be in charge of the keys ☐
be responsible for the bookings ☐
deal with requests ☐
have an emergency ☐
greet somebody ☐
make a complaint ☐
hire a room ☐

5 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Do customers come to you for help? ~ Yes, I have to make .... sure they're happy.
1 Were the customers pleased? ~ No, not at all. Some of them ....
2 What did you do about the situation? ~ As soon as I had .... with one problem, another came along!
3 Does the manager decide what you have to do? ~ Yes, that's one of his ....
4 Who's in .... of reception when you're not there? ~ My colleague, Jan.
5 I've got a new job in an estate agency. ~ Really! What does that .... ?
6 Are you .... for the whole department? ~ No, just my office.
7 We had an .... last week: someone fell out of a window. ~ Oh, my goodness!
8 Did you take your car to the island? ~ No, we .... one when we got there.

6 Complete the text.

I've worked in a tourist information office in Liverpool for two years. I ▶ greet .... people when they come in, but the job **(1)** .... lots of different things. My main **(2)** .... is to help with tourist accommodation, and **(3)** .... with any problems that customers may have. And recently I was made **(4)** .... for the Beatles tour: I organize trips to the houses where John Lennon and Paul McCartney used to live as children, and I have to make **(5)** .... everything goes well. Of course, it doesn't always go well, and then people make **(6)** .... You can't please everyone!

TEST YOURSELF

78 Careers

A The armed forces

If you join **the armed forces**, you will be **serving** your country, but it is important to remember that the forces also provide a good **career structure.** Young men and women can receive **advanced technical** training in a variety of **fields** that can help them to develop a wide range of **skills.** An added **benefit** of this is that when you eventually leave the forces, you will have more experience and better **qualifications** than before you joined, and the opportunity to go on to another interesting career.

GLOSSARY

the (armed) forces	a country's soldiers who fight on land (the **army**), at sea (the **navy**), or in the air (the **air force**)
serve	do work for other people
structure	the way that the parts of sth are put together and organized
advanced	for sb who is already of a high level: *an **advanced** English class*
technical	connected with the practical use of machines, methods, etc. in science and industry
field	an area of study or knowledge: *the **field** of medicine*
skill	a particular ability or type of ability
benefit	sth that is good or helpful **benefit** *v*
qualification	an exam you have passed or a course you have finished

SPOTLIGHT *career, job, profession*

A **career** is the series of jobs you have in a particular area.

***a career in the army/publishing/teaching**, etc.*

A **job** is any work you do to earn money.

- *I got a **job** as a designer with ABC Designs.*

A **profession** is a job with a high level of training and/or education.

the medical/teaching/legal profession

1 Underline the correct or best answer.

▶ A *job/career* in medicine.

1 What are the *benefits / qualifications* of working as a team?

2 Making a *cake / mistake* is a skill.

3 You need technical knowledge to understand *poetry / computer systems*.

4 *Teaching / Bus driving* is a profession.

5 *Advanced / Elementary* courses are at a low level.

6 *Two years in the army / A university degree* is a qualification.

7 The *navy / army* work on ships or submarines.

8 I worked in the *field / job* of training and communication systems.

2 Complete the words in the text.

After I leave university, I would like to join the armed ▶ forces .... I have always wanted a **(1)** .... as a pilot, and the **(2)** .... has a very good career **(3)** .... It would also be an opportunity to **(4)** .... my country. I already have some experience of flying, but in the air force, you learn to fly a range of different aircraft: that is one of the great **(5)** .... As a result, you get a very **(6)** .... level of **(7)** .... training, and the opportunity to develop a wide range of different **(8)** .... If I trained as an air force pilot, I would have the **(9)** .... and experience that I need in later life.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

1 Would you like a career in the armed forces? ....

2 If you were in the forces, would you prefer the army, the navy or the air force? ....

3 What qualifications do you have? ....

4 Are there other qualifications you would need or like to have? ....

5 Are there other skills you would like to have? ....

6 Do you want a career in just one profession, or would you prefer to work in different fields? ....

TEST YOURSELF

B A working life

I left school with very few qualifications. It was a time of high **unemployment**, but I got a job as a postman. However, it's not an **occupation** with a real career structure, so I soon left. I was **unemployed** for a while, but I finally **managed to** get a job in an engineering company. I worked really hard, and within two years I was **promoted**. The company then paid for me to do a two-year **diploma** in mechanical engineering, which was good for my **CV**. And by my late 30s, I was **appointed assistant** manager of a company in a nearby town, where I **remained** for the rest of my working life. I **retired** last year.

SPOTLIGHT *employment*

Employment is having a job you are paid to do.

- *It is hard for young people to find **employment** at the moment.*

Unemployment is when there are not enough jobs for the people who want to work. **unemployed** *adj*

GLOSSARY	
occupation *formal*	job
manage (to do sth)	be able to do sth, often sth difficult
promote (often passive)	give sb a better job at a higher level in a company **promotion** *n*
diploma	a course of study. At the end of it you receive a piece of paper that shows you have passed an exam or finished the course.
CV (short for **curriculum vitae**)	a written list of your education and work experience that you send when you are trying to get a job
appoint	choose sb for a job **appointment** *n*
assistant	having a position below that of a senior person and helping them in their work: ***an assistant manager***
remain *formal*	stay in the same way or place; not change
retire	stop working because you are a certain age (usually 65 or older) **retirement** *n*

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ appoint / employment S
1 occupation / diploma ....
2 diploma / retire ....
3 curriculum / occupation ....
4 promote / appoint ....
5 occupation / manage ....
6 assistant / unemployment ....
7 manage / remain ....

5 Good news? Bad news? Not sure? Write *G*, *B* or *not sure*.

▶ They've appointed me. G
1 They've promoted me. ....
2 They didn't want my CV. ....
3 I remained with the company. ....
4 I was unemployed. ....
5 I had to retire. ....
6 I got my diploma. ....
7 I was manager, but now I'm assistant manager. ....
8 Unemployment is going down. ....

6 Complete the sentences with a single word.

▶ I did well and I was soon promoted. (***given a better job***)
1 I was pleased when they .... me. (***chose me for the job***)
2 It was difficult but I .... to finish the work on time. (***was able***)
3 He asked me for my name, address and .... (***the job I did***)
4 I've never been .... (***without a job***)
5 I thought about leaving but I've decided to .... (***stay in the same place***)
6 After five years, I was made .... manager. (***helper to the manager***)
7 I've got a .... in Business Studies. (***a course followed by an exam***)
8 I .... when I was 65. (***stopped working***)
9 There are problems with .... in my town. (***not enough work and jobs***)
10 I've sent in my .... to the company. (***a list of my education and work experience***)

TEST YOURSELF

79 Applying for a job

Applying for a job with Decom GB

You can apply for any advertised **position**. We never **discriminate** on the **basis** of age, **sex** or **race**.

Work permits

For jobs in the UK, you will usually **require** a UK **work permit**. For jobs outside the UK, the local Decom office will **advise** you about the permit you may need.

Closing dates

Your **application** must reach us by the advertised closing date. Online applications will **receive** an **automatic** reply.

Selection process

If we would like you to **attend** an interview, we will **contact** you. At that time, and if **requested**, we will also consider other skills you may have or need. If you are not invited to attend an interview, we will contact you and, wherever possible, explain why your application was unsuccesful.

If you are the successful **candidate**, and we have received **satisfactory references**, we will offer you the position. We **shall** also **require confirmation** that you are medically fit to do the job and have the necessary permit/visa.

GLOSSARY

discriminate (in favour of / against sb)	treat one person or group better/ worse than another in an unfair way
basis	the principle or reason behind sth: ***on the basis of sth***
sex	the state of being either male or female SYN **gender**
race	one of the groups into which people can be divided according to the colour of their skin, their hair types, the shape of their face, etc.
work permit	an official document which says you are allowed to work in a particular country
advise	tell sb the best thing to do **advice** *n* [U]: ***give sb (some) advice***
application	a formal written request for sth (often a job or course), usually using an **application form; apply (for sth)** *v*
automatic	If sth is **automatic**, it can work by itself without people controlling it. An **automatic** reply usually comes from a computer.
selection	the process of choosing the thing or person you like best **select** *v formal* SYNS **choice** *n;* **choose** *v*
process	a number of actions, one after the other, for doing or making sth
contact	phone or write to sb **contact** *n*
candidate	a person who makes a formal application for a job
satisfactory	good enough for a particular purpose
reference	a statement or letter which describes sb's character and ability to do a job. A person who writes this is a **referee**.
confirmation	a statement in writing which says that sth is true or accurate **confirm** *v*

APPLICATION FORM

orm USING BLACK OR BLUE INK and write within the boxes
xes with a CROSS. Start at the left of each answer space and leav

tion
Dat
G
Phon

SPOTLIGHT formal language

In a written text like this, some language will be formal. For example:

position = job
require = need
receive = get
attend = go to/for sth
request = ask for sth **request** *n*
shall = will

The words in bold are more formal than the alternatives, which we would normally use in spoken English.

1 Cover the glossary and complete the table.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
advise	▶ advice	confirm	....
apply	....	request	....
select	....	contact	....

2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

▶ My old boss said he would be my ~~reference~~. My old boss said he would be my referee.
1 They say they will contact to me. ....
2 Have you got a work permission? ....
3 I got the job on the base of my qualifications. ....
4 He gave me some good advices. ....
5 I have to confirmate it in writing. ....
6 They said I must choice the best one. ....
7 He told me some good advice. ....

3 Replace the underlined words with a more formal word with the same meaning.

▶ We will contact you as soon as possible. shall
1 Has the company asked for references? ....
2 They offered me the job on Thursday. ....
3 I went for an interview last week. ....
4 If you need more information, please contact me. ....
5 Did you get my email? ....

4 Complete the sentences with a single word.

▶ The job is abroad and I have to get a work permit.
1 Friends thought I would like the job, and they .... me to apply for it.
2 He offered me the job on the phone, but I haven't had written .... from him yet.
3 My boss said my work was .... – in other words, not great, but OK.
4 You don't need to ask for a reply: you get an .... response.
5 They go through the applications and then .... about ten people to interview.
6 It's against the law to .... against candidates on the basis of their sex or ....
7 He wants to .... for the job, but he still has to fill in the .... form.
8 You have to do tests and have several interviews. It's quite a long ....
9 We have three good .... We have to consider who has the right balance of skills that we need.
10 Nursing is open to people of either ...., although it's often more popular with women.

5 Complete the conversation.

A You know that job you were looking at. What was the ▶ position ?
B Oh, it was to be the manager of a new hotel.
A And did you **(1)** .... for it?
B Yes, and I **(2)** .... an interview on Wednesday.
A Wow! How did it go?
B It seemed OK. They said they'd **(3)** .... me by the end of the week.
A What about **(4)** .... ?
B They said they'd already spoken to one of my referees.
A Oh really? And are there many other **(5)** .... ?
B Yes, over a hundred. But I'm not sure if I want the job because it's based in Scotland. Still, at least I don't need a work **(6)** ....

6 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

1 What jobs have you applied for in the past?
2 How many interviews have you attended?
3 How many times have you been the successful candidate?
4 Who were your referees?
5 Have you ever had to get a work permit? If so, what for?

TEST YOURSELF

80 Finance

A Financial terms

Example	Meaning
*We need to **raise capital** for the new musical.*	**capital** a large amount of money you need to start a business, etc. **raise capital** find the money you need to run a business or for a particular project
*I would like to **invest** more money in wind energy.*	**invest** give money to a business or bank in order to get more money back
*The company has an **annual turnover** of $20m.*	**turnover** the total value of goods or services that a company sells in a particular period of time **annual** for the period of one year
***Inflation** is now 3%.*	**inflation** a general rise in the price of services and goods in a particular country
*We paid £1m **in tax** last year.*	**tax** money you have to pay to the government
*The company **made a pre-tax profit** of £2m.*	**profit** the money you make in a business after paying costs OPP **loss**: ***make a profit/loss*** **pre-tax** before paying tax
*We **pay** a lot of **interest** on our loan. The **interest rate** is 5%.*	**interest** extra money you pay when you borrow money. The **interest rate** is the percentage at which your interest is calculated.
*We trade in foreign **currencies**.*	**currency** [C] [U] the system or type of money that a country uses, e.g. *dollars, yen*
***Production** needs to increase to make a profit.*	**production** the action of making or growing sth. The company or country that does this is the **producer**.

SPOTLIGHT *finance*

Finance can be the money somebody borrows or receives to operate a business.

- *They need to raise more **finance**.*

It is also the activity of managing money in a company. **financial** *adj*

- *He's the new **Director of Finance / Financial Director**.*

1 Good news or bad news? Write *G* or *B*.

▶ We need to raise more capital. B
1 Pre-tax profit is down. ....
2 You can buy foreign currency online. ....
3 They want to invest in our business. ....
4 Inflation is up. ....
5 Turnover is up. ....
6 We're paying more interest. ....
7 Tax is lower. ....

2 Cover the glossary and write the answers.

▶ the money you make in a business after paying tax = profit
1 turnover every year = ... turnover
2 pre-tax profit = profit .... paying tax
3 money you need to start a business = ...
4 the money you have to pay when you borrow money = ...
5 a general rise in the price of services and goods = ...
6 the action of making or growing something = ...

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ We can't start the business until we raise .... more finance.
1 The current interest .... is 5%.
2 It has been a good year and the company should make a ....
3 The company has had .... problems and they need people to .... more money in the business.
4 It's been a bad year; we've made a pre-.................... .... of $3.5m.
5 If sales continue to rise, the annual .... could reach £5m.
6 Brazil is one of the largest .... of coffee.

TEST YOURSELF

B Trends

A **trend** is the general direction in which a situation is changing.

Trend	Verbs	Nouns
↑	**go up, rise, increase** *Prices have **risen** this year.*	**rise, increase, growth** [U] *We saw some **growth** in imports last year.*
↓	**go down, fall, drop** *Sales of petrol cars **went down** last month.*	**fall, drop** *There has been a **drop in** sales.*
→	**remain stable** SYN **stay the same** *Prices have **remained stable**.*	**stability** *There is **stability** in the cotton market.*
↓ ⋀	**reach the highest point** *Sales **reached their highest point** in the **second quarter** (= April to June).*	**peak** *Sales **reached a peak** in 2007.*
∿↗	**fluctuate** *Mobile phone sales have **fluctuated** all year.*	**fluctuation** [U, C] *There's been a **fluctuation** in mobile phone sales.*

We use adjectives and adverbs to describe changes in more detail:

ADJECTIVE	Meaning	ADVERB
*a **slight** rise in costs*	very small OPP **sharp**	*Costs rose **slightly**.* (OPP **sharply**)
*a **steady** increase in the interest rate*	slow but regular and continuing	*The interest rate has increased **steadily**.*
*a **significant** fall in profits*	clear to see and important	*Profits fell **significantly**.*

SPOTLIGHT prepositions with *rise* and *fall*

Notice how these prepositions are used to describe movement.

- *Sales fell **from** 100,000 **to** 75,000.* *Sales fell **by** 25,000.*

4 Complete the sentences on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

▸There was a significant fall in sales.	Sales have fallen sharply......... .
1 The price of oil went up from $8 to $10.	The price of oil went up by ....
2 There has been a significant rise in the price of oil.	The price of oil ....
3 There was a slight fall in profits.	Profits ....
4 There has been stability in production.	Production has remained ....
5 There has been a steady rise in sales.	Sales have ....
6 Sales reached their highest point in June.	Sales reached a .... in June.
7 Sales have gone up by 4% this year.	We have seen a 4% .... in sales this year.

5 Complete the text. Use a different word each time.

Last year started well. In the first ▸ quarter........ sales **(1)** .... steadily. The second quarter was even better: sales increased **(2)** .... They continued to **(3)** .... steadily in the third quarter and reached a **(4)** .... at 90,000. This meant that over the first nine months of the year, sales had **(5)** .... up **(6)** .... almost 50%. In the last quarter there was a slight **(7)** ...., but it was still a good year. This year has been very different. Sales **(8)** .... in the first half of the year – up one month and down the next, but in the last three months they have remained **(9)** ....

6 Look at the arrows and complete the sentences.

▸ There was a ➘ slight........ fall........ in 2013.

1 Sales ➚ .... in 2014.

2 There was a ↑ .... in 2015.

3 Sales → .... in 2016.

4 In 2017, sales ➘ ....

5 In 2018, sales ↘ ....

TEST YOURSELF

81 Running a business

A Setting up a business

If you **set up** a business, you are taking a big **risk**. 20% of new businesses **fail** within twelve months, and that **percentage** rises to 50% within three years. It may be because of poor quality services or **goods**, or one of these common mistakes:

- poor **market research**
- being **overambitious** and **over-**optimistic
- poor knowledge of **competitors**
- poor control over **suppliers**
- poor **management** of **stock**
- the wrong people **running** the business

GLOSSARY	
set sth up	start sth such as a business, company, etc.
risk	the possibility that sth bad may happen in the future **risky** *adj*
fail	(of a business, etc.) be unable to continue SYN **go out of business**
percentage	= % *What **percentage** passed the exam? ~ About 80 **percent**.*
goods *pl*	things that are made to be sold
market research	the study of what people want to buy and why
competitor	a company that sells the same goods or services as another company
supplier	a company that provides sth for another company **supply** *v, n*
management	the control or organization of sth; the people who control a business
stock [U]	everything a company has for sale at any particular time
run	organize or be in charge of sth

SPOTLIGHT the prefixes *over-* and *under-*

As a prefix, *over-* usually means 'too much' and *under-* means 'too little'.

- *He **overcharged** us.* = He made us pay too much for something.
- *I was **underpaid** for the work I did.* = paid too little
- *The sales plans were **overambitious**.*

1 Good news or bad news? Write *G* or *B*.

▶ They do a lot of market research. G
1 They went out of business. ....
2 Supplies of food have increased. ....
3 They overcharged us. ....
4 It's a big risk. ....
5 We don't have serious competitors. ....
6 The business failed. ....
7 Stock is very low at the moment. ....

2 Complete the sentences. The meaning must be similar to the sentences on the left.

▶ This business is risky. — This business is a risk.
1 When did she start the business? — When did she set ....?
2 Why did the business fail? — Why did they go out ....?
3 We are the main people who supply them. — We are their main ....
4 They didn't pay the workers enough. — They ....
5 They made us pay too much. — They ....
6 Their price rise was over 80%. — The price rise was a very high ....

3 What mistakes do businesses make? Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

▶ The business has poor management of its stock.
1 They don't do enough market ....
2 The .... or services may not be of good enough quality.
3 They don't have a very good knowledge of their ....
4 They don't have effective controls over their ....
5 The business is over .... and over .... about what it can achieve.
6 The wrong people ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Growth

The first years require a huge **effort**, but if a business can **survive** this difficult period, it may become successful:

- **Client** numbers **grow**, and the business gets a bigger **share** of the **market**.
- Turnover increases – the business starts to make a profit.
- The **brand** develops a **reputation**.
- Eventually this growth may **result in takeovers** of competitors.

SPOTLIGHT *market*

The **market** is the amount of buying and selling of a particular type of goods.

- *There is a large **market** for these computers.*

It also refers to an area or group of people who buy something.

- *the European **market*** ▪ *the teenage **market***

GLOSSARY

effort	the mental or physical strength or energy that you need to do sth: ***I made an effort** to get there on time.*
survive	continue to exist in a difficult situation **survival** *n*
client	a person who pays for a service. Professional services have **clients**, and shops and restaurants have **customers**. In some industries both words can be used.
grow	become bigger in size or number **growth** *n* [U]
share	a part of sth that has been divided
brand	the name of a product that is made by a particular company, e.g. Nike™
reputation	the opinion that people have of sth. It can be good or bad.
result in sth	cause sth to happen; produce as an effect
takeover	the act of taking control of another business **take sth over** *phrasal v*

4 Underline the correct answer.

▶ They've had good *survival / growth* in the last five years.
1 We don't get many *customers / clients* in the shop at weekends.
2 The changes could result *to / in* more sales.
3 They are making a big *growth / effort* to stay in business.
4 They want a larger market *part / share*.
5 Piotr works for a law firm – most of their *clients / customers* are in finance.
6 The company could *survive / be taken over* by a competitor.
7 Someone will take *over / off* that business.
8 They're getting a *brand / reputation* for good service.

5 Complete the sentences on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ Will they continue to grow?	Will there be more growth ?
1 Will they take it over?	Will there be a .... ?
2 People say it's a very good business.	The business has a very good ....
3 The workers have tried very hard.	The workers have made a big ....
4 The books will sell to people in Europe.	The books will sell in the European ....
5 Are you worried the business may not survive?	Are you worried about their .... ?
6 The meeting could lead to more business.	The meeting could result ....

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ It's been difficult, but I think the business will survive .
1 The business now has a 10% .... of the market.
2 They managed to .... the problems of the last year, and sales are improving.
3 People go on buying the same .... of breakfast cereal because it is familiar.
4 There has been considerable .... in the soft drinks .... : 25% up in two years.
5 I think the business is failing, so it will probably be .... over by the end of the year.
6 You have to make a big .... to improve when things are not going well in your business.

TEST YOURSELF

82 Marketing

A The basis of marketing

Marketing is the activity of presenting, **advertising** and selling a company's products. To **market** a product, you need to understand the company's **strengths** and **weaknesses**, and be aware of possible **opportunities** and **threats.** This is called a 'SWOT **analysis**':

Strengths, e.g. specialist **skills** in the company

Weaknesses, e.g. **limited** financial **resources**

Opportunities, e.g. increased **demand for** a product from one **section** of the market

Threats, e.g. the economy is doing badly, **reducing** the demand for products

SPOTLIGHT *skill*

A **skill** is a particular ability that you need in order to do a job, an activity, etc. well.

- *He has the right management **skills**.*

The adjective **skilled** is used about jobs that need skill.

- *The company has a number of **skilled** workers.*

GLOSSARY

advertising	the activity of telling people about a product to try and make them buy it **advertise** *v*
strength	a good quality or feature OPP **weakness**
opportunity	a time when you can do sth that you want to do SYN **chance**
threat	a possible danger or problem
analysis	the process of carefully examining the different parts of sth **analyse** *v*
limited	small in number or amount OPP **unlimited**
resource (*usually pl*)	a supply of sth, a piece of equipment, materials, etc. that is available for sb to use
demand (for sth)	the need for sth from a particular group of people
section	a part of sth
reduce	make sth less or smaller **reduction** *n*

1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write *G* or *B*.

▶ Limited demand B
1 There are many opportunities. ....
2 Our company has a lot of skilled workers. ....
3 There are a number of threats. ....
4 Unlimited financial resources. ....
5 A reduction in demand. ....
6 They have a number of strengths. ....
7 Their marketing is clever. ....

2 Replace the underlined word/phrase with a single word. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ We only have a small number of products available at the moment. limited
1 There is a lot of competition in this part of the industry. ....
2 There isn't much need for beach umbrellas in the winter. ....
3 They have a number of good qualities. ....
4 There is another company in the market, which could be a real danger. ....
5 Does he have the necessary abilities to do the job? ....
6 Does the company have the money, materials and workers that they need? ....
7 Our success last year gives us the chance to expand and grow. ....
8 We need to examine carefully the reasons for the fall in sales. ....

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ New markets in Asia could be a great opportunity for us.
1 If you work with advanced technology, you need people with the right ....
2 More people will know about the product if we .... it on social media.
3 The high quality of our products is one of our main ....
4 We need to .... these clothes for people aged under twenty-five.
5 If there is more competition, we may have to .... the price.
6 First we need to do a careful .... of our strengths and ....
7 You need a lot of .... workers in manufacturing.
8 .... is one of the best ways of making people aware of a new product.

TEST YOURSELF

B Marketing strategy

Some top tips

- Don't **assume** you know what your customers want.
- **Target** the 20% of your customers who provide 80% of your profit.
- Don't **ignore** the competition, and be ready to **respond to** it.
- Don't try to compete only on price: **highlight** the quality, reliability, etc.
- You need to **gather** reliable **data** to make good market **predictions.**
- You need to have **realistic aims.**
- Don't forget to **evaluate** your **strategy.** If something isn't working, change it.

GLOSSARY

assume	accept or believe sth is true without being sure
target	choose sb, or a group, and try to influence them (your **target market**) **target** *n*
ignore	pay no attention to sb/sth
respond (to sb/sth)	do sth as a reaction to sth that has been said or done **response** *n*
highlight	emphasize sth so that people give it more attention
gather	bring many things together, e.g. information or data
data [U]	facts or information
prediction	a statement saying what will happen in the future (ALSO **forecast**) **predict** *v*
realistic	sensible, and based on what is possible in a situation
aim	sth you are trying to achieve SYN **goal; aim** *v*
evaluate	study the facts then form an opinion about sth
strategy	a plan you make in order to achieve sth

4 **Cover the glossary, then match the words and definitions.**

▶ respond d — **a** pay no attention to something
1 assume .... — **b** choose somebody and try to influence them
2 evaluate .... — **c** bring many things together
3 ignore .... — **d** say or do something as a reaction ✓
4 gather .... — **e** study the facts and then form an opinion
5 target .... — **f** accept or believe something without knowing it is true

5 **Complete the dialogues without repeating the same words.**

▶ Did she know it was true? ~ No, she just assumed it.
1 Did you give him some advice? ~ Yes, but he .... it.
2 Do they have a plan for this? ~ Yes, they're working on a ....
3 Does he know what he wants from the meeting? ~ Not really, but it will be better if he has a clear ....
4 Do you have the information you need? ~ Yes, we've gathered all the ....
5 Make sure clients understand the quality of the product. ~ Yes, we need to .... it.
6 Do you know what the future looks like for printed books? ~ Well, we've made some ....

6 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ We contacted the company, but so far they haven't responded .
1 The engineering company got into trouble because they .... all of their competitors.
2 Have you seen any sales .... for next year?
3 We don't know if they're competing for this contract, but we .... they are.
4 The company has decided to .... the youth market next year.
5 We've .... all the sales reports together. Now we need to evaluate them.
6 They want to open three new factories. Is that a .... aim?
7 The target .... for winter cruises is mostly people who are retired.
8 Remember, you need to .... your strategy to know if it's working, and you must be prepared to change it if it isn't.

7 ABOUT YOU **Do you agree that the marketing advice at the top of the page is important? Do you think one piece of advice is more important than the others? Can you add to this list? Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

83 Phrasal verbs: grammatical patterns

Inseparable phrasal verbs

With inseparable phrasal verbs, you cannot put other words between the different parts of the phrasal verb. These include phrasal verbs that don't take an object.

Verb	Example	Meaning
pull up	*The driver **pulled up** in front of the hospital.*	(of a car or its driver) stop
drop by	*Please **drop by** if you're in the area.*	go to sb's house on an informal visit or without telling them that you are coming
stay up	*We **stayed up** late to watch the match last night.*	go to bed later than usual
go off	*I woke up when the alarm clock **went off**.*	make a sudden loud noise

I **broke down** in the countryside.

I **woke up** at 7 o'clock.

Look out! The floor's wet.

Some phrasal verbs take an object, which can only go after the phrasal verb. All phrasal verbs with three parts belong to this group.

get into sth	*Mina wants to **get into** teaching when she finishes university.*	start a career in a particular profession
run into sb SYN **bump into sb**	*I **ran into** Daisy in the sports centre – what a surprise!*	meet sb by chance
take up sth	*Sport **takes up** all my time.*	use or fill time or space
go off sth	*I've **gone off** coffee – it keeps me awake.*	stop liking or being interested in sth
get out of sth/ doing sth	*I've got a meeting this afternoon, but I'll try and **get out of** it.*	avoid a duty or doing sth that you have said you will do
come up with sth	*Max **came up with** a great way of saving money.*	find an answer or solution to sth

Separable phrasal verbs

I **turned** the volume **up**.

I **threw** the papers **away**.

I **switched** the light **on**.
(OPP **switch sth off**)

fill sth in	*I received the form, so I **filled** it **in**.*	complete a form, etc. by writing information on it
check sth out	*We're going to **check out** the restaurants in the area.*	find out more information about sth
put sth out	*They **put** the fire **out** very quickly.*	make sth stop burning, e.g. a fire, cigarette, etc.

SPOTLIGHT separable phrasal verbs

With separable phrasal verbs, the object can go (1) after the verb and particle, (2) or between the verb and the particle, but (3) a pronoun must go between the verb and particle.

1 *He put on **his jacket**.* ✓ **2** *He put **his jacket** on.* ✓ **3** *He put **it** on.* ✓ (NOT *He ~~put on it.~~*)

① Can you put another word between the different parts of these phrasal verbs?

▶ get into No (get into sth)

1 go off ……

2 switch on ……

3 get out of ……

▶ throw away Yes (throw sth away)

4 bump into ……

5 fill in ……

6 put on ……

② Do these sentences need an object? If so, add a possible ending. If not, write –.

▶ Then I woke up. –

1 Several cars broke down. ……

2 I'd like to get into. ……

3 She pulled up. ……

4 The bed takes up. ……

▶ I want to get out of cleaning the house.

5 He said he'd drop by. ……

6 The alarm went off. ……

7 I ran into. ……

8 Look out. ……

③ Right or wrong? Write *R* or *W*. Correct the wrong answers.

▶ She threw away it. W – She threw it away.

1 I've gone tea off. ……

2 Put your coat on. ……

3 How do I get out of going to the concert?
……

4 Why did they stay so late up? ……

5 I ran Tina into today in town. ……

6 She can't switch off it. ……

7 I wasn't expecting Sara – she just dropped by.
……

8 Did you fill in it? ……

④ Circle the correct answer.

▶ She put [✓ ***on***] / ***in*** her shoes.

1 I always try to get out ***of / from*** doing the washing up.

2 Who came ***down / up*** with that idea?

3 Don't stay ***up / down*** too late – you've got school tomorrow.

4 I got ***in / into*** journalism about twenty years ago. It's changed a lot.

5 I ***switched off / out*** the TV.

6 Did they put ***out / off*** the fire?

7 The bed takes ***on / up*** most of the room.

8 Look ***over / out***, there's a big hole in the road.

⑤ Complete the phrasal verbs in the questions.

ABOUT YOU

1 What time do you usually wake…… up……? ……

2 Have you ever had to p…… o…… a fire? ……

3 What was the last form you f…… i……?

4 Is there any food, drink or activity you've g…… o…… recently? ……

5 When was the last time you t…… some clothes a……? ……

6 Have you ever b…… d…… in a car? ……

7 Have you ever s…… u…… all night? ……

8 Do you ever r…… i…… other people in your class in the street? ……

⑥ Complete the sentences with a suitable phrasal verb.

▶ I didn't hear my alarm clock and didn't wake up until 9 o'clock.

1 We didn't need the files any longer, so I …… them …… .

2 You can't smoke in here. You'll have to …… that cigarette …… .

3 It was getting dark, so I …… the light …… .

4 She didn't expect to see Ellie; she just …… …… her in the street.

5 My niece wants to …… …… politics as a career.

6 I had to …… …… a form to get a new passport.

7 The car …… …… and I had to phone for help.

8 I asked the driver to stop, and he …… …… outside the police station.

9 I'm looking for an English course, so I need to …… …… a few schools.

10 I can't hear the radio very well. Could you …… it ……, please?

⑦ ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 5, or talk to another student.

TEST YOURSELF

84 Phrasal verbs: meaning

A Meaning

Sometimes the meaning of a phrasal verb is very similar to the meaning of the base verb, e.g. **sit down, stand up, lie down, wake up, save up (for sth), hurry up, hang sth up**:

*I'm **saving up for** a new computer.*
***Hang** your coat **up** behind the door.*

More often, the meaning of a phrasal verb is different from the meaning of the base verb:

*We **set off** for the coast at about 7.30.*
*I **picked up** a bit of Greek when I was on holiday.*
*Greg **turned up** late again, so the boss gave him a warning.*
*She told me she was leaving but I couldn't **take it in**.*
*The boys **take after** their father: they're all very practical.*
*The neighbour is so noisy. I can't **put up with it** any longer.*
*They offered me a trip to Paris, but I **turned it down**. I'm too busy.*

GLOSSARY

set off	start a journey SYN **set out**
pick sth up	learn sth without formal lessons
turn up	arrive, appear
take sth in	understand what you hear, see or read
take after sb	look or behave like an older member of your family
put up with sth/sb	suffer sth/sb unpleasant and not complain about it
turn sth/sb down	refuse an offer, etc. or the person who makes it

SPOTLIGHT different meanings

Some phrasal verbs may have more than one meaning, sometimes with a different grammatical pattern.

- *The plane couldn't **take off** because of bad weather.* (= leave the ground)
- *Jonah's business has really **taken off**.* (= suddenly start being successful)
- *It was hot so I **took** my jacket **off**.* (= remove)

1 Change the base verb to a phrasal verb.

▶ I asked them to stand. up
1 I sat on the bed. ....
2 They woke late this morning. ....
3 I'm saving for my holiday. ....
4 He asked me to lie over there. ....
5 I told them to hurry. ....
6 Where shall I hang my jacket? ....

2 Circle the correct answer(s). Be careful: both answers may be correct.

▶ The plane took *up* / [✓ *off*] an hour late.
1 The flat they offered me looked rather dirty so I turned it *out / down*.
2 I don't know how you put *up / out* with my brother.
3 We want to set *out / off* before the traffic gets bad.
4 It was hot, so I *took / put* off my tie.
5 The lesson was difficult. I couldn't take it all *after / in*.
6 The children didn't *take / turn* up until midnight.
7 I didn't actually study French. I just *picked / took* it up.
8 She decided to *lie / lie down* on the floor.

3 Complete the dialogues.

▶ The children's behaviour is terrible.	~ I know. I can't put up with it much longer.
1 Did you start early?	~ Yes, we .... at about seven.
2 Do we have to leave now?	~ Yes, so .... !
3 Why haven't you kept your coat on?	~ I .... it .... because it was wet.
4 Is his career going well?	~ Yes, it's really ....
5 What time did the builder arrive?	~ He was late and finally .... at 11.00.
6 Alice is so good at maths.	~ She .... her father. He's a maths professor.
7 How did you learn to play the guitar?	~ I .... it .... watching YouTube videos.
8 Did they offer Ned the job?	~ Yes, but he's going to .... it .... The salary is terrible.

TEST YOURSELF

B In the classroom

TEACHER How are you **getting on,** Suki?
STUDENT I can't **work out** question seven.
TEACHER OK. **Leave** it **out** and **go on to** the next one.
STUDENT Fine, thank you.

TEACHER Could you **pick up** those bits of paper and put them in the bin?

TEACHER OK, I'm afraid we've **run out of** time. Please **tidy up** before you go.

STUDENT Shall I **give out** the dictionaries?
TEACHER Yes, but could you **put** them **back** when you've finished.

TEACHER If we **get through** the exercises today, we can **go over** the answers tomorrow.

GLOSSARY

get on (with sth)	make progress with sth you are doing
work sth out	find an answer to an exercise, a problem, etc.
leave sth out	not include sth SYN **omit** *formal*
go on (to sth)	continue (with sth) SYN **move on (to sth)**
pick sth up	take hold of sth and lift it to a higher place OPP **put sth down**
run out (of sth)	finish your supply of sth: *I've* ***run out of*** *coffee.*
tidy up	make sth tidy; put everything in the correct place
give sth out	give one of sth to each person in a group SYN **hand sth out**
put sth back	return sth to its place
get through sth	complete a task or activity
go over sth	look at, think about or discuss sth carefully from beginning to end SYN **go through sth**

4 Make sentences from the words.

▶ go / can / later / we / it / over We can go over it later.
1 out / bread / afraid / run / we've / of / I'm ....
2 chairs / before / put / the / go / back / you ....
3 you / out / them / could / hand ? ....
4 work / get / with / I / on / must / my ....
5 it / difficult / out / if / it's / leave ....
6 tried / out / couldn't / it / I / work / but / I ....

5 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

▶ We put everything in order before we left. We tidied up before we left.
1 Do you want us to omit the next exercise? ....
2 Do you think we'll complete the book by the end of term? ....
3 I couldn't find an answer to the last question. ....
4 Do the exercise for homework and we'll check it on Thursday. ....
5 I asked her about her course yesterday. She's not doing very well. ....
6 Let's finish this first, then we can continue with Exercise 6. ....

6 Complete the sentences with a suitable phrasal verb.

▶ If you don't want to do it, you can leave it out .
1 Could you .... the books to the other students, Claude?
2 I'd like to .... Unit 5 by Friday, then start Unit 6 on Monday.
3 I don't know why the dictionaries aren't on the shelf. I .... them .... yesterday.
4 You all did the homework last night, didn't you? How did you .... ?
5 Marcel, you've got stuff everywhere. Make sure you .... before you leave.
6 I can't write any more: I've .... of paper.
7 We couldn't .... the answer until the teacher gave us some help.
8 My bag was very heavy. I had to keep .... it .... and putting it down.

TEST YOURSELF

85 Expressions (1)

A In conversation

A **How's it going** with that flat you're buying?

B Well, there are **one or two** things still to organize, but it's fine **so far**. We're **about to** see the lawyer to go through a few more documents, then we hope to exchange contracts in a **week or so**.

B Great. And are you moving in **straight away**?

A Well, we haven't **made up our minds** about that yet. There's **quite a bit** to do – putting in a new bathroom and decorating, **for a start** – so we may have to ask my brother to **do us a favour** and let us stay in his spare room **for a while**.

SPOTLIGHT *mind*

There are a number of expressions using **mind**:

make up your mind decide

- *Come on!* ***Make up your mind!***

change your mind change your decision or opinion

- *I was going to Paris, but I've* ***changed my mind.***

never mind = it doesn't matter

- *I forgot the letter. ~ Oh,* ***never mind.***

GLOSSARY

How's it going?	a spoken phrase used to ask sb about their progress or general situation	**straight away**	immediately; now
one or two	a few	**quite a bit**	a fairly large amount or number
so far	until now	**for a start** *inf*	words you use when you give your first reason for sth
be about to do sth	be going to do sth very soon	**do sb a favour**	do sth to help sb
or so	used to show a number is not exact or accurate: *a week/day, etc.* ***or so***; SYN **or two**	**for a while**	for a short period of time

1 **Find seven more expressions using words from each box.**

for ✓ quite straight never
make up so a week for

far your mind away a while ✓
a bit or two a start mind

▶ for a while ……… ……… ………
……… ……… ……… ………

2 **Make correct sentences from the words.**

▶ money / I / have / a / start / don't / enough / for For a start, I don't have enough money.
1 do / a / could / you / favour / me ? ………
2 up / I / yet / made / haven't / mind / my ………
3 new / in / going / your / how's / job / it ? ………
4 she's / her / to / new / about / course / start ………
5 month / they'll / a / for / be / or / away / so ………
6 you / again / mind / your / have / changed ? ………

3 **Agree with the questions using an expression that keeps the same meaning.**

▶ Are you going away for a bit?	~ Yes, just for a week or so.
1 Has the job been OK until now?	~ Yeah, ……….
2 Are you staying at Henry's for a few weeks?	~ Yes, ……….
3 Are you going immediately?	~ Yes, ……….
4 Have you got a few ideas?	~ Yes, ……….
5 Is there a lot to do on the new house?	~ Yes, ……….
6 Have you both decided where to go yet?	~ Yeah, we've ……….
7 Did you help her?	~ Yes, I ……….
8 Is the class finishing very soon?	~ Yes, it's ……….

TEST YOURSELF

B Short responses

In conversation, we often use common expressions as short responses.

A I've just passed my driving test.
B Oh, **well done. Congratulations!**

A What do you **feel like** doing?
B **It's up to you.**

A Did you **tip** the waiter?
B **No way!** The service was terrible.

A Can I ask you another question?
B No, **go away!** I'm trying to work.

A Are you **going away** this summer?
B **That depends.**

A Is anyone sitting here?
B No, **help yourself.**

A I'm afraid I **can't make it** tonight.
B Oh, **what a pity.**

GLOSSARY

well done	used when sb has just done sth very well SYN **congratulations** used when sb is getting married, etc.
feel like sth / doing sth	want to do sth
it's up to you	= it's your decision or responsibility
tip	give sb a small amount of extra money to sb who serves you, e.g. in a restaurant **tip** *n*
no way! *inf*	a strong way of saying 'no'
that depends	words you use to show that sth is not certain SYN **it depends**
help yourself	used to tell sb they can do sth or take sth
make it	If you **can't make it**, it means you won't be able to go to sth at a particular time.
what a pity	used to express sadness or disappointment SYN **what a shame** ALSO **that's a pity/shame**

SPOTLIGHT *go away*

Go away can mean:

1 leave the place where you live for at least one night, usually to go on holiday: *We're **going away** for the weekend.*
2 tell somebody to leave a person or place, usually because they are disturbing you SYN **leave sb alone**

4 Positive, negative, or not sure? Write *P*, *S* or *not sure*.

▶ No way! N
1 That's a pity. …………
2 Congratulations! …………
3 It depends. …………
4 Leave me alone. …………
5 What a shame. …………
6 Well done. …………
7 It's up to you. …………
8 I don't feel like it. …………
9 He gave me a tip. …………

5 Replace the underlined words with words that keep the same meaning.

▶ I'll have to leave the course – I'm too busy. ~ What a pity. shame
1 Can I ride your horse? ~ Certainly not. …………
2 Oh, well done. …………
3 Are you going next week? ~ Possibly. …………
4 Leave me alone! …………
5 What do you want to do? …………
6 Where shall we go? ~ You decide. …………
7 Do you need this chair? ~ No, take it. …………
8 I'm afraid I can't come this evening. …………
9 He gave some extra money for service to the driver. …………

6 Complete the dialogues using a suitable expression.

▶ Are you going on Tuesday? ~ No, I'm afraid I can't make it.
1 Where shall we go? ~ I don't mind. …………
2 Can I borrow your car? ~ No …………! Your driving is terrible.
3 I've got a new job. ~ Wow! …………
4 Are you coming out with us? ~ No, I'm working! …………!
5 Could I borrow your dictionary? ~ Of course. …………
6 Why don't you want to go to the cinema? ~ I don't know. I just don't …………
7 Will you be here next week? ~ No, we're …………
8 Sam and Scarlett can't make it tonight. ~ Oh, …………

TEST YOURSELF

86 Expressions (2)

A Linking expressions

The Council are proposing to replace the old Avon Street multi-storey car park with new modern office space, a leisure park, and a much smaller underground car park. They say:

- they are doing it **in order to** reduce the number of cars in the town centre.
- it will **result in** less pollution, which is largely **due to** cars.
- **in contrast to** an earlier plan, this scheme provides much needed office space, **as well as** a leisure park.
- it is good for residents, and **what's more**, tourists will find it more attractive.
- that **even if** they kept a large car park, the existing one would have to be rebuilt at enormous cost.

At the same time, motorists say there won't be enough parking spaces in the town centre. Other residents have said they might support it, **depending on** the cost. **To put it another way**, they will support it if they don't have to pay too much for it.

GLOSSARY

in order to do sth	so that you can do sth
result in sth	make sth happen; cause
due to sth/sb	because of sth/sb
in contrast to sth	showing a difference between two things/people
as well (as sth/sb)	in addition to sth/sb
what's more	used for adding another fact; also
even if	used for saying that what follows *if* makes no difference
at the same time	used to introduce a contrasting fact **on the other hand**
depending on sb/sth	used for saying you are not certain of sth until other things have been considered
to put it another way	used to introduce a different way of saying the same thing **in other words**

1 Complete the expressions.

▶ due to..........
1 in other ....
2 depending .... the weather
3 what's ....
4 in contrast .... December
5 result .... war
6 even ....
7 at the same ....
8 in order .... improve conditions

2 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

▶ My father came to the concert as well as my mother.......... .
1 The accident was due to ....
2 I bought a telescope in order to ....
3 Sarah doesn't tell the truth. To put it another way, she ....
4 The beds were small, and what's more, ...
5 I wouldn't do a 50 km walk even if ....
6 The new machines will result in ....
7 It's not a very attractive suitcase and was expensive. At the same time, ...
8 We may have a picnic, depending on ....

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable expression.

▶ The new timetable is much better, and I think it will also result in.......... a better service.
1 With this phone, I get much more data .... unlimited free calls and texts.
2 To be honest, I think most of his success was .... luck.
3 This food mixer is difficult to use and clean. .... it was a bad buy.
4 The children are noisy and a bit rude, and ...., their parents are no better.
5 I may have time for lunch, ... what time I get there.
6 I had to go to the station .... buy some tickets.
7 .... Dad's old flat, which was small and dark, the new place has big rooms and is really light.
8 I don't think the job is well paid. ...., it's a good company with good prospects.

TEST YOURSELF

B Trouble with exams

Hi Abi

Well, yesterday's exam was a **total disaster**! I worked all night, trying to **learn** everything **by heart**, but it **didn't make any difference** – I still couldn't answer the questions. **I'm getting nowhere** and it's **kind of** worrying – I'm just getting **more and more** stressed. And I've got another three exams next week!

Send

Hi Tara

Look, you can only **do your best**. I wouldn't stay up all night, **if I were you**. You'd **be better off** having **an early night**. I usually stop every 30 minutes for a short break. Why don't you **give that a go**?

Send

GLOSSARY

total	complete: ***a total disaster***	**do/try you best**	do all or the most that you can
by heart	by remembering sth exactly: ***learn sth by heart***	**if I were you**	used when you are giving advice
		be better off (doing sth)	be in a more pleasant or suitable situation
make a difference	have an effect: ***make no difference / not make any difference***	**an early night**	an evening when you go to bed earlier/later than usual OPP **a late night**
get somewhere/nowhere	make/not make progress		
kind of *inf*	a little	**a go (at sth/doing sth)** *inf*	an occasion when you try to do sth: ***give sth a go/ have a go at sth***
more and more	an increasing amount or number		

4 Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ I'm having an early night. /I'm going to bed early. S
1 if I were you / if I knew you ....
2 It's a total disaster. / It's a complete disaster. ....
3 more and more / more or less ....
4 I'll give the game a go. / I'll try to play the game. ....
5 She learns verbs by heart. / She learns verbs easily. ....
6 I'm kind of busy. / I'm incredibly busy. ....
7 You'd be better off going to bed. / You'd prefer to be in bed. ....
8 I'm getting somewhere. / I'm making progress. ....

5 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go? Write it at the end.

▶ The meal was a total /– I'm never cooking fish for anyone again. disaster
1 You don't look well. I think you'd be off staying at home tomorrow. ....
2 Donna had a very night so she's tired and in a bad mood today. ....
3 I've never been horse riding, but I'd love to give a go. ....
4 When I was at school, we learnt irregular verbs heart. I can still remember them. ....
5 Whatever you say, it won't make difference. I'm not going to work! ....
6 I'm writing a novel, and it's very difficult. I feel I'm nowhere. I may just give up. ....
7 I know it's hard but if I you, I would try to put the children to bed earlier. ....
8 Marisa is kind odd, but she can be fun to be with. ....

6 Complete the dialogues.

▶ You've had no luck finding a job, then? ~ No, it's terrible. I'm getting nowhere .
1 Are you happy to try the race? ~ Yes, I'll ....
2 Are you going to bed so soon? ~ Yes, I need ....
3 Can you be here before ten tomorrow? ~ OK, I'll do ....
4 Did you talk to someone about your problems? ~ Yes, and it made ....
5 Is the new company making progress? ~ Yes, at last we're ....
6 Did you study poetry at school? ~ Yes, I still remember the poems I learnt ....
7 Are you looking forward to the holiday? ~ Yes, I'm getting more ....
8 What shall I do about the car? ~ I'd sell it, if I ....

TEST YOURSELF

Likes, dislikes and preferences

A Likes and dislikes

MISCHA BARON: the food king!

I'm **mad about** food and I **absolutely love** cooking.

I'm **very fond of spicy** Asian food, particularly Thai and Korean.

I'm **not very keen on** washing up afterwards, though!

As a child, I **didn't like** cabbage **very much**, but I've **got used to** it now.

There are only two things I really **dislike**: one is sweetcorn, and the other thing I **can't stand** is yoghurt.

I **don't** like takeaway food **at all**.

Meaning
be mad about sth/sb *inf* like sth/sb very much SYN **be crazy about sth/sb** *inf*
absolutely love (doing) sth *inf* love (doing) sth very much
be fond of sth/sb / of doing sth like or enjoy sth/sb, especially sth/sb you have liked for a long time
spicy having a strong taste because it contains powder of the seeds from a plant
be keen on (doing) sth *inf* (usually used in the negative) like or enjoy (doing) sth
get used to sth start to know sth well or accept it after a time
dislike *rather formal* not like sth/sb **dislike** *n*
can't stand (doing) sth strongly dislike SYN **hate**
not at all not in any way. If you **don't** like sth **at all**, you dislike it very much.

SPOTLIGHT word order with *like/enjoy*, etc.

Look at the word order in these examples.

- *I **like** cooking **very much**.* (NOT *~~I like very much cooking~~*.) ▪ *Jules **likes** Japanese food **a lot**.* ▪ *She **doesn't enjoy** eating meat **very much**.*

1 **Write the words and phrases in the wordpool in the correct column.**

hate ✓
can't stand
be mad about
not like (sth) at all
be fond of
be crazy about
absolutely love
be keen on

like very much	like	dislike
		hate

2 **Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.**

▶ I don't enjoy eating in street cafés. FOND I'm not very fond of eating in street cafés.
1 My sister absolutely loves seafood. CRAZY
2 I hate cooking for a lot of people. STAND
3 Sayid doesn't like spicy food very much. KEEN
4 My father really dislikes fish. AT ALL
5 I'm not very fond of fried food. LIKE; VERY MUCH
6 I'm starting to like the local food here. GET USED TO

3 ABOUT YOU **Correct the mistakes in the sentence beginnings.**

▶ I'm not very keen for … I'm not very keen on
1 I'm mad in …
2 I don't stand …
3 I very don't much like …
4 I not very fond of …
5 I love absolutely …
6 Recently, I've got use to …
7 I hate cook …

4 ABOUT YOU **Complete the sentences in Exercise 3. Write about food or other things you like or like doing. If possible, tell another student.**

▶ I'm not very keen on food that is very spicy.

TEST YOURSELF

B Preferences and responses

*In general, **do you prefer** black or white coffee?* *~ I **prefer** my coffee black.* *~ **So do I.***	**prefer X or Y** like one thing or person more than another **so do I** = me too (Use **so** to agree with a positive statement.)
Do you prefer** lamb **to** beef?* *~ Oh, no. I can't stand lamb.* *~ No, **neither can I.	**prefer X to Y** **neither/nor can I** I think the same as you. (Use **neither** to agree with a negative statement.)
Do you usually go to the office? *Yes, but I **prefer working** at home.*	**prefer doing (sth)**
Would you prefer to** / **Would you rather** – stay in or go out tonight?* *~ **I'd rather** stay in (**than** go out).* *~ **So would I.	**would prefer to do sth** would like to do one thing more than another thing SYN **would rather do sth**
*Shall we have rice or pasta? **Do you have a preference?*** *~ **I don't mind** what we have. **Whatever** you prefer.*	**Do you have a preference?** = Which do you prefer? I **don't mind.** = I don't have a strong opinion about it. **whatever** used to say it doesn't matter to the speaker which thing is chosen

SPOTLIGHT *so/neither do/have/can*, etc.

When we use **so** and **neither** to express the same opinion as the speaker, we use auxiliary verbs *be, do, did, have,* and modal verbs *would, can, should,* etc.

- *I like ice cream. ~ So **do** I.*
- *I don't mind sugar in coffee. ~ Neither **do** I.*
- *I've tried crocodile meat. ~ So **have** I.*
- ***I can't** stand butter. ~ Neither **can** I.*
- *I'd prefer water, please. ~ So **would** I.*
- *I didn't like that film. ~ Neither **did** I.*

5 One word is missing for each speaker. What is it, and where does it go?

▶ A Would you / banana or cherry yoghurt? prefer
B I /mind. don't
1 A I can't stand hip hop music.
B can I – I hate it. ....
2 A We can fly or drive. Do you a preference? ....
B Not really – you prefer. ....
3 A I rather see a film than sit here all evening. ....
B So I. ....
4 A I speaking English to writing it. ....
B do I. ....
5 A I mind where we go on holiday. ....
B do I. Anywhere hot! ....

6 Agree with the statements using *so* or *neither* and the correct verb and subject.

▶ I prefer working in a team. ~ So do I.
1 I'm mad about cooking. ~ ....
2 I've eaten a lot of spicy food. ~ ....
3 I can't stand people smoking next to me. ~ ....
4 Orange or apple juice? I don't have a preference. ~ ....
5 I'd rather have chicken than fish. ~ ....
6 I didn't like cabbage at school. ~ ....
7 I don't mind where we stay. ~ ....
8 I'd prefer to live in a city than a village. ~ ....

7 Complete the questions. ABOUT YOU

▶ Do you prefer getting up very early or very late? ....
1 .... you prefer to be a champion horse rider or a champion footballer? ....
2 Would you .... have a lot of friends or only a few close ones? ....
3 Would you .... to live an extra ten years, or have $1,000,000? ....
4 In general, I .... mind what time I eat in the evening. What about you? ....
5 Pop or classical music. Do you have a ....? ....
6 Do you prefer Mondays .... Fridays? ....

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 7, or ask another student.

TEST YOURSELF

88 Probability

Next week in the life of **pessimistic** Poppy, aged 15

Sunday: I'm going to a barbecue next Saturday. I'll **definitely** see Max (the boy I **fancy**).

Monday: My best friend Sarah said she's going. She's prettier than me, so Max is more **likely to** fancy her.

Tuesday: I've got nothing to wear – I **doubt that** he'll even notice me.

Wednesday: If he does speak to me, I **expect** he'll think I'm **silly**.

Thursday: I've heard there's another party on Saturday – Max **might** go there instead.

Friday: There's **a good chance** it'll rain tomorrow. The barbecue will be a disaster.

Saturday: Woke up with **a spot** on my face – I'm definitely not going. It's so **unfair**!

GLOSSARY

pessimistic (about sth)	always believing bad things will happen OPP **optimistic**
definitely	certainly; for sure
fancy sb *inf*	be sexually attracted to sb
likely (to do sth)	If sth is **likely**, it will probably happen. OPP **unlikely (to do sth)**
doubt (that)	think that sth probably will not happen or is not true
expect	think or believe sth will happen
silly	not sensible or clever; stupid
might	used to say that sth is possible SYN **may**
a chance	a possibility **a good chance** a more than 50% possibility
spot	an unpleasant red or yellow mark on the skin. Many teenagers have them.
unfair	not right, or not having the same advantages as sb else OPP **fair**

1 Good news or bad? Write *G* or *B*.

▶ I'm optimistic about the weather. G
1 They fancy each other. ....
2 She thinks he's silly. ....
3 The exam results were very unfair. ....
4 I've got a big spot on my nose. ....
5 She's very unlikely to fail the test. ....
6 There's a good chance we'll win. ....
7 I don't expect to get the job. ....

2 Complete the definitions.

▶ If you are ***pessimistic*** that something will happen, you believe it won't happen.
1 If something is ***definitely*** going to happen, it will .... happen.
2 If something is ***likely to*** happen, it will .... happen.
3 If something ***might*** happen, you can also say that it .... happen.
4 If there's ***a chance*** that something will happen, it means it's .... that it will happen.
5 If you ***expect*** something to happen, it means you .... it will happen.
6 If you think that something is ***unlikely***, it means it is .... not going to happen.
7 If you ***doubt that*** something will happen, it means you .... think it is going to happen.
8 If you are ***optimistic***, you always believe that .... things will happen.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capital letters.

▶ I'm not sure if we'll go out or not. MIGHT We might go out.
1 It's probable we'll lose the match. LIKELY ....
2 I'm sure you'll get there on time. DEFINITELY ....
3 I'm not sure if Keira will come. MAY ....
4 It's 75/25 whether they'll win the election. CHANCE ....
5 I don't think we'll see the film at 10.00. DOUBT ....
6 I think prices will probably go up. EXPECT ....
7 I don't think the sales results will be good. PESSIMISTIC ....

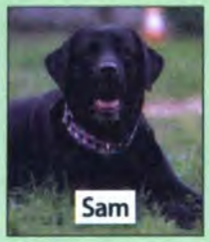
TEST YOURSELF

89 Similarities and differences

Labradors

In looks, Boss and Sam are almost **identical, except that** Boss is a bit bigger. Jake and Boss are **similar, except for** their colour. The **similarity between** Sam and Jake is that they both have large ears, **unlike** Boss whose ears are quite small. In character, though, none of them are **alike. Compared with** Jake and Boss, Sam is very lazy. In fact, he's **completely different** from the other two, **apart from** the fact that he'll eat anything – all Labradors will. With the other two, **the main difference** is that Boss is rather quiet **in comparison with** Jake.

Boss



Sam

Jake

GLOSSARY

identical	without a single difference SYN **exactly the same**
except	not including sb/sth (**except that** + clause OR **except for** + noun)
similar (to sb/sth)	like sb/sth, but not the same **similarity** (**between X and Y**) *n*
unlike	used when saying how one person/thing is different from another
alike	very similar (Don't use **alike** before a noun.)
completely different	different in every way
apart from sb/sth	except for sb/sth
the main difference	the most important difference

SPOTLIGHT *compare v* and *comparison n*

When you **compare** people or things, you say how they are different.

- *If you* ***compare*** *dogs* ***and/with*** *cats, dogs are usually noisier.*
- ***Compared with/to*** *dogs, cats are very clean.*
- ***In comparison with*** *dogs, cats are more independent.*

① **Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.**

▶ Barley is like my other dog. similar to
1 She's very tall compared with Bruno. ....
2 I liked all of the dogs except for the little one. ....
3 The two cats aren't very similar. ....
4 The most important difference is colour. ....
5 A Labrador is very big in comparison with a dachshund. ....
6 My two cats look exactly the same. ....
7 The dogs are, in every way, different. ....
8 My dog is different from other dogs – he doesn't like walks. ....

② **Complete the sentences.**

▶ If you compare the two books, it's amazing how different they are.
1 Mitzy is very .... to her brother Bo; they both love swimming in the local river.
2 .... with Rocky, my new dog is quite active. Rocky never moves!
3 There is one major .... between the two horses: they've both won important races.
4 This dog is like the one next door, ... that this one's got a lot more hair.
5 .... his very clean sister Gucci, Boris is a dirty, smelly dog.
6 Some people say my two cats are ...., but I think they're .... different.
7 I didn't enjoy the film about the dogs, ... from the ending which was great.
8 The main .... between the two cats is that Petra is heavier.

③ ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Write sentences about the similarities and differences between two members of your family or two cities in your country.**

TEST YOURSELF

90 Pleasure and annoyance

A Simple pleasures

I'm very happy **indeed** when I find money I didn't know I had.

Happiness is that first cold drink when you've been for a long run.

The **sight** of my dog running on the beach **lifts my spirits**.

I really **appreciate** it when taxi drivers help me with my luggage.

It **gives me** such **pleasure** when I manage to get the last free space in a car park.

I love the **familiar** smell of my mother's cooking. It's simple: nothing **fancy**.

Going on a skiing holiday and finding that the conditions are **ideal** – that's wonderful.

Holding hands with the person I love – that's **my idea of heaven**.

Waking up and finding I have another hour to sleep – that's often the **highlight** of my day!

GLOSSARY

indeed	a word which makes sth positive that you say stronger	**pleasure**	the feeling of being happy or enjoying sth **give sb pleasure**
happiness	the feeling of being happy	**familiar**	If sth is **familiar** to you, you know it well.
sight	seeing sb/sth	**fancy**	not simple or ordinary
spirits *pl*	a person's feelings or state of mind **lift sb's spirits** make sb feel happier (Sb's **spirit** is their mind, feelings and character.)	**ideal**	the best or exactly right SYN **perfect**
		heaven	the place where many people believe God is and where good people go when they die **my idea of heaven** *inf* a situation in which you are very happy
appreciate	be thankful for sth that sb has done for you	**highlight**	the best, most interesting or most exciting part of sth

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ spirits
- 1 heaven
- 2 indeed
- 3 happiness
- 4 highlight
- 5 ideal
- 6 familiar
- 7 appreciate

2 Match 1–7 with a–h.

- ▶ the sight of d
- 1 The highlight ……
- 2 Cycling gives me ……
- 3 I appreciate ……
- 4 The sun lifted ……
- 5 Walking in a forest is my idea ……
- 6 My ideal ……
- 7 Happiness ……

- a a lot of pleasure.
- b my spirits this morning.
- c meal contains fresh fish.
- d my children makes me happy ✓
- e of my week is football on Monday evening.
- f is loving someone and being loved.
- g of heaven.
- h your help.

3 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ I was very surprised / when I won the prize. indeed
- 1 The man carried my case from the train, and I really it. ……
- 2 The hotel is next to a beach, which is for people with young children. ……
- 3 Seeing the Taj Mahal was the of our trip to India. ……
- 4 The of my son riding a bike for the first time was fantastic. ……
- 5 I had a swim in the ocean today. It's my of heaven. ……
- 6 I don't like restaurants – I just like places with simple food. ……

4 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences with one word and your own ending.

- ▶ The highlight of my day is seeing my wife's face first thing in the morning.
- 1 I love the f…… smell of …… .
- 2 It gives me great p…… when …… .
- 3 I'm very happy i…… when …… .

TEST YOURSELF

B Annoying habits

A I'm so **fed up with** the guy in the flat next to me.
B Oh, dear. Is it the **usual** problem?
A Yes – his loud music really **annoys** me. **Even though** I've made **repeated** requests for him to turn it down, he just **can't be bothered to** do anything about it.
B Oh, that must really **get on your nerves.**
A And he's got another **annoying habit**: he leaves his rubbish in the hall near my front door. That really **upsets** me!
B Do you want me to **have a word with** him about that?
A No, **don't bother** – he won't listen to you.

SPOTLIGHT different uses of *bother*

He can't be bothered to do it. = He is too lazy to do it or not interested in doing it.
Don't bother. = Don't trouble yourself – it's not necessary.
I'm sorry to bother you = I'm sorry to interrupt you / stop you doing sth.

GLOSSARY	
fed up (with sth/sb)	bored or unhappy (with sth)
usual	that happens most often
annoy	make sb a little angry **annoying** *adj*
even though	although; used for introducing a fact that makes the main statement in your sentence very surprising
repeated	done many times
get on sb's nerves	make sb feel annoyed
habit	sth you do often or regularly without even thinking about it
upset *pt/pp*	**upset** make sb unhappy or angry
have a word with sb	have a short conversation with sb, usually privately

5 Rewrite the sentences in the correct order.

▶ my / fed / job / with / I'm / up / present   I'm fed up with this homework.
1 music / even / I / folk / don't / went / though / like / I   ……………………
2 later / word / I / you / could / a / with / have ?   ……………………
3 work / can't / to / I / be / today / bothered   ……………………
4 bother / Dan / I'm / you / sorry / to   ……………………
5 on / complain / who / get / nerves / people / my   ……………………
6 today / usual / up / she / the / got / at / time   ……………………

6 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Will you speak to Chika alone? ~ Yes, I'll have a word with her later.
1 Shall I shut the gate? ~ No, don't …………… . Leave it open.
2 Taki talks with his mouth full. ~ I know, it's a very bad …………… .
3 You don't look happy. ~ No, I'm …………… up with my job at the moment.
4 Are you going to tidy the house? ~ Not now. I can't be …………… .
5 That woman's talking very loudly. ~ You're right. It's getting on my …………… .
6 I'm sorry to …………… you. ~ No problem. How can I help?
7 Why is Lara crying? ~ I think somebody has …………… her – probably Jimmy.
8 When did the cleaner arrive? ~ Oh, at the …………… time, 9.00.
9 Have the police been to see you yet? ~ No, and I've made …………… requests.
10 Alua never washes up after breakfast. ~ Yeah, I've noticed! It's a very …………… habit.

7 Complete the questions.

ABOUT YOU

▶ Have you got any annoying habits? If so, what?
1 Is there anything you're …………… up with at the moment?   ……………………
2 Is there anyone that …………… on your nerves?   ……………………
3 Are there any jobs at home that you …………… be bothered to do?   ……………………
4 Has anyone …………… you today and made you angry? If so, how?   ……………………
5 Have you had a …………… with anyone today in private? If so, why?   ……………………
6 Does it …………… you when people do something wrong and don't say sorry?   ……………………
7 Is there anything you have to do even …………… you don't like doing it?   ……………………

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 7, or ask another student.

TEST YOURSELF

91 Making arrangements

ALEX Evan, we need to talk about the **presentation** in June. Can we **get together** next week at a time that's **convenient** for us both? I was thinking, **can you make it** on Monday morning?

EVAN Sorry, I'm not **available** then. **How about** Tuesday afternoon?

ALEX **I wish I could**, but I've got another meeting on Tuesday. Are you free on Wednesday morning?

EVAN **I'm supposed to** be seeing Jo Woods then, but I think I can **postpone** that. I'll **confirm it with you** later, but please **remind** me if I forget.

PLANNER CALENDAR

GLOSSARY

presentation	a formal talk at which sth is shown or explained to a group of people	**I wish I could**	= I want to, but it's impossible.
get together	meet	**be supposed to do sth/ be doing sth**	be expected to do sth or have to do sth SYN **be meant to do sth**
convenient	easy and not causing problems	**postpone**	decide that sth you had planned will happen at a later time SYN **put sth off**
Can you make it?	= Are you able to come?	**confirm sth (with sb)**	tell sb that a possible plan will definitely happen
available	free to see or talk to sb	**remind sb (of sth)**	help sb remember sth
How about ...?	= Can I suggest ...? SYN **What about ...?**		

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ I'm *supposed / meant* to work tonight. S

1 We *put the meeting off / postponed the meeting.* ....

2 *I wish I could / I'm going to* come. ....

3 *What / How* about meeting on Friday lunchtime? ....

4 Are you *available / convenient* next week? ....

5 Did you *remind / remember* him? ....

6 I'm not *free / available* to see you then. ....

7 Did you go to the *presentation / meeting*? ....

8 We can *confirm / get together* next week. ....

2 Complete the conversation.

A Jun, we must ▶ get .... together next week to plan for the **(1)** p............ . Can you **(2)** m............ it on Tuesday afternoon?

B I **(3)** w............ I could, but I'm busy all day. **(4)** H............ about Wednesday?

A No, I don't think I'm **(5)** a............ then. I'm **(6)** s............ to be seeing Callum about the business plan.

B Oh, dear! Wednesday's the only day next week that works for me. Could you possibly **(7)** p............ your computer meeting until the following week?

A I'm not sure. I'll have to talk to Callum. Maybe I can get **(8)** t............ with him the following week instead. OK, I'll **(9)** c............ that with you tomorrow.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals in the correct form.

▶ Can I suggest six o'clock? HOW How about six o'clock?

1 Can I meet you next week? TOGETHER ....

2 I'd love to, but I'm busy. WISH ....

3 Could you arrange the meeting for another time? PUT ....

4 Don't let me forget the appointment. REMIND ....

5 I'll tell you definitely tomorrow. CONFIRM ....

6 Are you able to come on Tuesday? MAKE ....

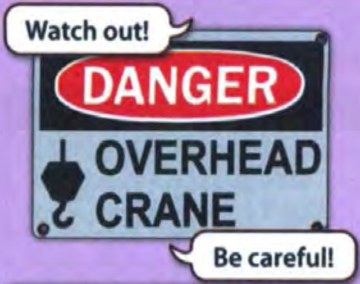
7 Is two o'clock a good time for you? CONVENIENT ....

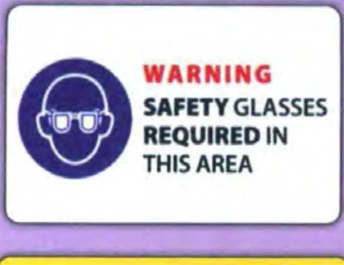
8 I'm supposed to finish this by seven. MEAN ....

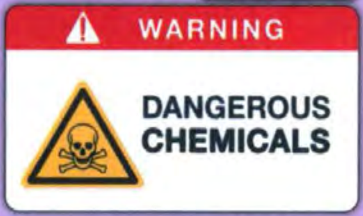
9 Will you be free to talk to me on Friday? AVAILABLE ....

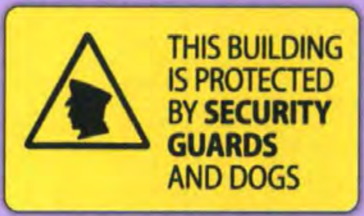
TEST YOURSELF

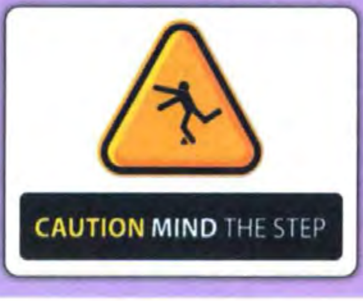
92 Warnings


Watch out!
DANGER
OVERHEAD CRANE
Be careful!


WARNING
SAFETY GLASSES REQUIRED IN THIS AREA


WARNING
DANGEROUS CHEMICALS


THIS BUILDING IS PROTECTED BY SECURITY GUARDS AND DOGS


CAUTION MIND THE STEP

DANGER
No Access
Deep open shafts
DANGER MINES – WORKERS AND OFFICIALS ONLY

GLOSSARY

warning	a notice or statement that tells you to be careful **warn sb (of/about sth)**
safety	the state of not being dangerous: ***safety glasses/helmet/boots***
require *formal*	**1** officially demand or order sth: *Passports **are required** at the border.* **2** need: *Sick patients **require** kindness and understanding.*
chemical	a substance that is used or produced in a chemical process, e.g CO_2, NaCl **chemical** *adj*
security	activities involved in protecting people, buildings and countries from danger: ***a security guard***
guard	sb whose job is to protect a place or person **guard** *v*
caution	(used in notices) be careful
mind	used to tell sb to be careful of sth: ***Mind your head.***
mine	a deep hole in the ground where people dig for coal, gold, etc.
official	sb who is in a position of authority, sometimes in government **official** *adj*

① **Circle the words that can be nouns.**

careful[✓ security]warningofficialmineguardbecarefulwarnsafetychemicalrequirecaution

② **Put the words in the correct order.**

▶ mind / is / dish / your / that / hot / fingers / so That dish is hot, so mind your fingers.
1 mines / look / officials / after / the ....
2 the / safety / are / glasses / laboratory / required / in ....
3 mind / you / the / says / sign / warning / the / step / should ....
4 bottle / chemicals / are / that / there / dangerous / in ....
5 the / security / at / there / in / are / night / guards / building ....
6 watch / that / means / should / a / sign / caution / you / out ....

③ **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Be careful ! There's a car coming!
1 There are security .... outside all government offices to protect workers.
2 Why didn't you .... me about the dog? It attacked me!
3 .... the boxes in the hall when you leave the building.
4 Watch .... ! There's a snake in the grass.
5 Anyone working on the new houses is .... by law to wear a .... helmet.
6 Those enormous dogs .... the owner's property. No one would go near them.
7 There's a big yellow sign which says '.......... – children playing in street'.
8 There's an .... notice on the door about safety in the office.
9 The .... industry, which produces plastics, soap and medicines, is a huge business worldwide.

TEST YOURSELF

93 Opinions

A Asking for and giving opinions

A **Apparently**, the government's current **thinking** is to give university students free education. **What do you think about** this?

B **Personally, I think** it's a good idea. It would be fairer for students who can't really afford higher education.

B Yes, but can the country afford it? **Surely** that will just mean higher taxes for everyone? Anyway, **it seems to me** we need more skilled workers, such as builders.

A **I see what you mean,** but we do need highly skilled and **qualified** workers as well.

B True, but **the thing is**, we've already got too many graduates who can't get jobs.

SPOTLIGHT giving opinions

Personally, I think (that) … and **It seems to me …**, are common ways of giving opinions. You may also hear: **In my opinion, …** *formal* and **If you ask me, …**

GLOSSARY

apparently	based on what you have heard or read
thinking (on sth)	ideas and opinions about sth
What do you think about …?	used to ask sb's opinion about a general topic (SYN **How do you feel about** …?): *What do you* ***think about*** *science fiction?* We usually use **think of** when asking about a person or thing: *What do you* ***think of*** *his new book?*
surely	used to say that you are almost certain of what you are saying, and you want sb to agree with you
I see what you mean (but …)	used for telling sb that you understand what they are saying, but you may not agree
qualified	having passed the exams or completed the training necessary to do a particular job **qualify** *v*
the thing is *inf*	used to introduce an important fact, reason or explanation

① **Form correct sentences from the words.**

▶ difficult / is / the / to / solve / thing / it's The thing is, it's difficult to solve.
1 think / this / you / idea / do / what / of ? ……
2 I / is / think / good / personally / a / idea / it ……
3 qualified / we / more / surely / need / workers ? ……
4 choice / to / it / no / seems / we / have / me ……
5 it / disaster / if / me / ask / a / you / was ……
6 an / will / soon / apparently / there / be / election ……

② **Rewrite the opinions using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.**

▶ I think the government is wrong. ASK If you ask me, the government is wrong.
1 I think we should do something. SEEM ……
2 What do you think about that? FEEL ……
3 I think we should help them. OPINION ……
4 What does the army think about that? THINKING ……
5 I understand what you're saying, but … SEE ……
6 If you ask me, that's stupid. PERSONALLY ……

③ **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Personally……, I thought the film was awful.
1 ……, the government made a mistake with the figures, or so I've heard.
2 If you …… ……, the most important thing is to find a new manager.
3 …… you don't think the Earth is flat? I can't believe it!
4 We both think it's important, but the …… is, no one knows what to do about it.
5 Do you understand the government's …… on drugs?
6 …… do you think about the problems in prisons at the moment?
7 I …… what you mean, but hospitals definitely need more money.
8 It …… to me that we need to stop using petrol as soon as possible.

TEST YOURSELF

B Points of view

Yes, no or sometimes?

- I have the same **point of view** on things as my parents.
- I enjoy **expressing my opinion** online.
- I'**m against** freedom of speech **in some cases.**
- I'm **prepared to** admit when I **have no idea about** a particular **topic.**
- There are some subjects I have **fixed** ideas about, and I'm not **willing to** discuss.
- I sometimes **change my mind** when I'm discussing things with people.
- I don't like to **judge** people only on their opinions.

GLOSSARY	
point of view	the particular opinion or attitude that sb has about sth
express	tell or show what you are thinking by words, looks or action: ***express your opinions/feelings***
be against sth	If you **are against sth**, you do not agree with it. OPP **be in favour (of sth)**
in some cases	in some situations
prepared to do sth	happy to do sth SYN **willing to do sth**
have no idea (about sth) *inf*	used to emphasize that you do not know sth
topic	a subject that you talk, write or learn about
fixed	(of ideas) not changing
change your mind (about sth)	change your decision or opinion
judge	form an opinion on sth/sb, based on the information you have

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ change / case S
1 prepared / favour ....
2 idea / mind ....
3 willing / opinion ....
4 favour / opinion ....
5 judge / against ....
6 fixed / express ....

5 Circle the correct answer.

▶ Are you [✓ *willing*] / *against* to accept the plans?
1 I think what they suggest is true in some ***case / cases***.
2 Are you ***expressing / changing*** your mind about who you will vote for?
3 It's an interesting ***point / topic*** of view, but I don't agree with it.
4 I have ***not / no*** idea about the unemployment situation.
5 Is he ***in favour / against*** of the proposal?
6 I don't ***judge / express*** people based on the way they look.

6 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Is he in favour of it? ~ No, he's against it.
1 Are you prepared to do it? ~ Yes, I'm .... to do it.
2 Is the information always true? ~ No, it's only true in some ....
3 Do you still believe in life after death? ~ Yes, I haven't changed my .... about that.
4 Will you speak at the meeting? ~ Yes, I plan to .... my opinion.
5 Does everyone in the class agree? ~ No, there are several different .... of view.
6 It's not an easy subject to discuss. ~ No, it's a difficult ....
7 Do you know what Daniel thinks? ~ No, I have no ....
8 Is Carol likely to change her opinion? ~ No, she has very .... ideas about how to study.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.

▶ My parents and I have the same point of view on many things, but not on politics.

TEST YOURSELF

94 Hopes and plans

A Making plans

A Ramiro says you're **making plans for** your grandmother's 90th birthday in July. **Are you thinking of** having a party or something else?

B Oh, a party, and we'**re expecting** about a hundred people, **actually.**

A Wow! And where do you **intend to** have it?

B On a river boat, and I'm **hoping to** get a jazz band too. In fact, **I'm about to** call them to **sort out** the arrangements with them. Oh, and don't say anything to grandma – it's all a big secret.

A I **wonder** how she'll react.

B She'll love it! And we're all really **looking forward to** it.

GLOSSARY

make plans (for sth)	prepare for sth you want to do in the future SYN **plan sth**
be thinking of/ about doing sth	have already thought about sth but not yet decided about it
expect	think or believe that sth/sb will come or that sth will happen
intend to do sth / doing sth	plan to do sth / doing sth **intention** *n* OPP **have no intention of doing sth**
hope to do sth	want to do sth and think that it is possible
be about to do sth	be going to do sth very soon
sort sth out	organize sth
wonder	ask yourself sth or want to know sth: ***I wonder why/ how/if,*** *etc. …*
look forward to (doing) sth	be happy and excited about sth that is going to happen

SPOTLIGHT *actually*

Actually is often used when adding new information or being more exact. SYN **in fact** Be careful: **actually** does not mean 'at the moment'.

- *He's German, isn't he? ~ Yes, he's from Berlin, **actually**.*

1 Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ Have you planned anything for tonight? / Have you made any plans for tonight? S

1 I wonder what time they'll arrive. / I'd like to know what time they'll arrive. ....

2 He's thinking of going to Ireland. / He intends to go to Ireland. ....

3 I live in Poland at the moment. / I live in Poland, actually. ....

4 I'm hoping to see Mark and Owen. / I'm looking forward to seeing Mark and Owen. ....

5 I don't intend to buy the car. / I've no intention of buying the car. ....

6 She's looking forward to seeing John. / She's expecting to see John. ....

7 I'm about to go out. / I'm hoping to go out. ....

8 We'll have to sort out the room for the meeting. / We'll have to organize the room for the meeting. ....

2 Complete the email.

We're ▶ thinking of taking six months off work this winter. At the moment, we're **(1)** .... plans to go travelling, and we're trying to decide exactly where to go. We **(2)** .... to spend most of the time travelling round Australia and New Zealand as we both have family there. I'm **(3)** .... to be able to get hotel work there, which will cover the cost of our accommodation. We're not **(4)** .... anything amazing, but at the same time, we've no **(5)** .... of sleeping in a tent for the whole time – in **(6)** ...., I'm **(7)** ....to look online at places to rent for the first place we go to.

If everything goes OK, we'll be in Sydney on Christmas Day, which will be fabulous. I'm really looking **(8)** .... to it. I **(9)** .... what Christmas is like in a hot country?

Send

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about yourself, or ask another student. Be careful with prepositions and verbs after the sentence beginnings.

▶ I am about to take my driving test, and I'm very nervous about it.

1 In the next few days, I'm planning ....

2 Tomorrow, I'm thinking of ....

3 Next weekend I'm looking forward ....

4 Tonight, I have no intention ....

5 Next week, I don't expect ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Spoken responses

Are you going to move house?

Responses	Meaning
✓ Definitely. ✗ Definitely not.	= Yes, I'm sure it will happen. = No, I'm sure it won't happen.
✓ I think so. ✗ I don't think so. / I doubt it.	= I think it will probably happen. = I think it probably won't happen.
✓ I hope so. ✗ I hope not.	= I want it to happen, but I don't know if it will. = I don't want it to happen, and I don't know if it will.
✓ I'm afraid so. ✗ I'm afraid not.	= I think it will happen and I'm unhappy about it. = I don't think it'll happen and I'm unhappy about it.
✓ I assume so.	= I think it will happen, but I cannot be sure.
✓ I expect so. ✓ I imagine so. ✓ I guess so.	= I think it will happen.
✓ I suppose so.	= I think it will happen, but I'm not completely happy about it.

④ **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

- ▶ expect / think D
- 1 definitely / afraid ....
- 2 doubt / but ....
- 3 assume / suppose ....
- 4 hope / suppose ....
- 5 imagine / guess ....
- 6 so / hope ....
- 7 think / expect ....

⑤ **Correct the mistakes.**

- ▶ I'm assume so. I assume so.
- 1 I doubt so. ....
- 2 I'm afraid no. ....
- 3 I don't think. ....
- 4 I guess it. ....
- 5 I afraid so. ....
- 6 I don't hope so. ....
- 7 Definitely no. ....
- 8 I'm expect so. ....

⑥ **Complete the dialogues, giving an explanation.**

▶ Is everything going OK with your holiday plans?	~ Yes, I hope so........, because we're leaving on Friday !
1 Are they making plans to have a party?	~ I don't know, but I i........ because ....
2 Is Ravi going to cook for us tonight?	~ I don't t........ because ....
3 Is Melissa planning to get married?	~ I h........ because ....
4 Are you going on holiday this summer?	~ I'm a........ because ....
5 Do you think Omar will get the job?	~ I a........ because ....
6 Are you expecting the team to win?	~ I d........ because ....
7 Are you intending to buy that laptop?	~ D........, because ....
8 Are you going to take the exam?	~ Yes, I s........, but ....

TEST YOURSELF

95 Obligation

SCHOOL RULES

When I was at school in the 1950s, we **had to** wear a uniform, which we hated. We **weren't allowed to** talk to the girls at the school next to ours, but, of course, nobody **obeyed** that rule. Smoking was **banned** everywhere. The teachers **made us** work very hard, and we **were forced to** stay after school some evenings to do several hours' homework. The **punishments** were terrible. One day, I was **behaving** badly in class and the teacher got very angry. I knew I **ought to** apologize but I didn't, so I was **punished**: he hit me with a stick. I've had a problem with people in positions of **authority** since then. I think teachers have an **obligation** to protect children, not hit them.

GLOSSARY

have to do sth	used for saying that sb must do sth, or that sth must happen ALSO **have got to do sth** **Have got to do sth** is more informal. It doesn't have its own past tense forms. It uses the same form as **have to do sth** does, i.e. **had to** (NOT ~~had got to~~).
allow sb to do sth	(often passive) tell sb that they can do sth
obey	do what you are told to do: ***obey the rules*** OPP **disobey**
ban	(often passive) say officially that sth is not allowed
make sb do sth	tell sb that they must do sth which they do not want to do SYN **force sb to do sth**
punishment	the act of making sb suffer for sth they have done wrong **punish** *v*
behave	do things in a certain way **behaviour** *n*
ought to do sth	used for saying what is the right thing to do SYN **should do sth**
authority	the power to give orders to other people
obligation	sth you must do because you have promised, or because of a law or rule

1 **Cross out one word.**

▶ Will the government ban ~~to~~ fast food?
1 Did she force to you to eat it?
2 They made us to sit there for an hour.
3 I wasn't be allowed to eat anything.
4 Did he always obey with the rules?
5 She punished to me because I was late.
6 They've have got to go out later.
7 You should ought to write and thank him.
8 He didn't have got to do the exercise.

2 **Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. The meaning must remain the same.**

▶ You must go this evening. HAVE GOT TO You've got to go this evening.
1 He behaved badly. BEHAVIOUR ....
2 They made us do it. FORCE ....
3 You can't smoke in here. ALLOW ....
4 You should see a doctor. OUGHT ....
5 He does what the teacher tells him to do. OBEY ....
6 How did they punish you? PUNISHMENT ....
7 You can't take bottles inside the stadium. BAN ....
8 You have to protect all students. OBLIGATION ....

3 **Complete the questions with a suitable word.**

When you were at school at the age of 14,

▶ did you have to buy your own books?
1 were girls .... to wear make-up?
2 did the teachers .... you do lots of homework?
3 what happened if you .... the rules?
4 did you always respect the .... of your teachers?
5 what did teachers .... you to do that you didn't like?
6 did children .... better or worse than nowadays?

ABOUT YOU

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

96 Asking for permission

Asking for permission	Giving (✓) and refusing (✗) permission	Notes
***Is it OK if I** leave now?*	*✓ **Yes, that's fine.** / ✓ **Yes, of course.***	
***Is it a problem if I** leave now?*	*✓ **No, go ahead.***	
***Is it all right if I** leave early?* ***Would it be all right if I** left early?**	*✓ **Yes, of course.*** *✗ **I'm afraid not.** I need you here. ***	Notice that after *would*, the *if*-clause is in the past tense.
***Can/Could I possibly** leave my coat here?* ***May I** leave my coat here?*	*✓ Yes, **feel free.** / ✓ Yes, **of course.*** *✗ **I'm afraid not.** I have to lock the door. ***	**Could** and **might** are more polite/ formal than **can**. **Feel free** is an informal response.
***Do you mind if I** sit here?* ***Would you mind if I** sat here?**	*✓ **No, go ahead.*** *✓ **No, that's fine.***	**Do/Would you mind if …?** means 'do you have a problem if …?' Notice that after *would*, the *if*-clause is in the past tense.
***I wonder if I could** use your mobile.* ***I was wondering if I could** use your mobile.**	*✓ **Help yourself.*** *✗ **I'm sorry, but** I'm expecting a call. ***	**I wonder** is a very polite request for permission, or for asking sb to do sth: ***I wonder if** you could help me.*

The expressions for permission at the top of the table are less formal than the ones at the bottom.

* These requests for permission are a little more formal than the other request in the pair.

** With a negative response, we usually give a reason.

1 Rewrite the requests for permission in the correct order.

▶ a / the / open / window / may / I / bit ? May I open the window a bit?
1 car / the / I / here / is / if / OK / it / park ? ....
2 took / if / all / be / would / it / car /right / I / the ? ....
3 wait / if / do / mind / you / I / here ? ....
4 I / ask / wonder / something / I / if / could / you ....
5 later / call / possibly / you / could / I / tonight ? ....
6 your / it / borrow / pencil / all / is / I / right / if ? ....

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ I wonder if I could use your tablet for a minute. ~ Yes, of course.
1 .... you mind if I borrowed this? ~ No, ... fine.
2 Is it a .... if I charge my phone here? ~ No, help ....
3 Would it be all .... if I gave my homework in late? ~ I'm ...., but I need it today.
4 Do you .... if I turn the TV on? ~ No, ... free!
5 I was .... if I could borrow the car tonight. ~ I'm .... not – I need it.
6 Could I .... speak to Mrs Levington? ~ Yes, of .... She's free now.

3 Write requests for permission and responses using the words given.

▶ You want to leave class early today. Use MIND in the question and FINE in the response.
(MIND) Do you mind if I leave class early today? ~ (FINE) Yes, that's fine.
1 You want to borrow a friend's shopping bag.
(ALL RIGHT) ....? ~ (FREE) ....
2 You want to switch the light on.
(OK) ....? ~ (AHEAD) ....
3 You want to take a day off work on Friday.
(WONDER) .... ~ (AFRAID) ....
4 You want to look at someone's newspaper.
(WOULD) ....? ~ (YOURSELF) ....

TEST YOURSELF

97 Formal and informal English

A Formal English

Most words and expressions are **neutral**, which means they are **neither** formal **nor** informal, and can be used in most situations. We use formal language in:

SPOKEN ANNOUNCEMENTS:
The play will **commence** in three minutes.
Passengers should **proceed to** Gate 7.

SPOKEN OR WRITTEN OFFICIAL STATEMENTS:
The robbery **occurred** in the early hours of the morning.

NOTICES:
Only food **purchased** here may be **consumed** on the **premises**.

OFFICIAL LETTERS OR EMAILS:
Please keep your receipt as proof of **purchase**.
If you **require** further **assistance**, …
Tickets can be **obtained** at the box office.
The decision was based **upon** advice given by doctors.

GLOSSARY

neutral	not having any strong qualities (so in this context, neither formal nor informal)
neither … nor …	not … and not
commence *formal*	begin/start
proceed (to/with sth) *formal*	move or travel in a particular direction
occur *formal*	happen
purchase *formal*	buy **purchase** *n*
consume *formal*	eat
premises	the buildings and land that a business owns or uses
require *formal*	need
assistance *formal*	help **assist** *v formal*
obtain *formal*	get
upon *formal*	on

1 Find six more pairs of neutral and formal words in the box.

get ✓ purchase help happen eat commence consume
need obtain ✓ buy assistance require occur start

▶ get / obtain ....
....

2 Replace the underlined words with a more formal word.

▶ Call us if you need more help. assistance
1 After check-in, please go to passport control. ....
2 The film will begin in five minutes. ....
3 You can buy tickets on the internet. ....
4 There was a castle on the hill. ....
5 We can get any size you need. ....
6 At what time exactly did this happen? ....

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ When does the performance commence ?
1 Please contact us if you .... further ....
2 It's hard to describe the colour: it was .... blue nor green.
3 The club is moving to larger .... on the edge of town.
4 Most of the rooms in my flat are .... in colour. I don't like strong colours.
5 Which European country .... the most cheese?
6 If you experience any difficulties, we can .... the tickets for you.
7 Wait for a green light, then .... if the road is clear.
8 The illness can .... at any time – often without warning.
9 Nurses are available to .... you with the shower and getting dressed.

TEST YOURSELF

B Informal conversation

Informal language is used widely in spoken English and in texts or emails to friends.

Where are the **kids?**

I haven't a clue.

What do you **fancy** doing tonight?

I'm not bothered, really.

Could you **give me a hand?**

Yeah, sure.

Cheers.

Hang on. I'll be with you in a minute.

It's OK, we've got **loads** of time.

What's up with Carrie?

She's got **a bit of a** problem, and I think she's pretty **fed up.**

SPOTLIGHT *cheers*

We use **cheers** in informal situations to mean either *thank you* or *goodbye*. It is also used to express good wishes when we have an alcoholic drink.

GLOSSARY

kid *inf*	child
I haven't a clue *inf*	= I don't know.
fancy (doing)sth *inf*	want sth or want to do sth
I'm not bothered	= I don't mind what we do / where we go.
give sb a hand *inf*	help sb SYN **lend sb a hand**
yeah *inf*	yes
hang on *inf*	wait a moment SYN **hold on**
loads (of sth) *inf*	lots (of sth)
What's up (with sb)? *inf*	= What's the matter (with sb)?
a bit of a/an *inf*	used when talking about unpleasant things to mean 'rather a': *It's **a bit of a** long walk to the station.*
fed up *inf*	bored or unhappy with a situation

4 Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

- ▶ yeah / yes S
- 1 I'm not bothered. / I'm not happy. ......
- 2 cheers / goodbye ......
- 3 fed up / hungry ......
- 4 I don't know. / I haven't a clue. ......
- 5 kid / teenager ......
- 6 hang on / wait a minute ......
- 7 What's the matter? / What's up? ......

5 Replace the underlined words with more informal words. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ Yes, I'll wait. Yeah
- 1 Could you help me? ......
- 2 Where are the children? ......
- 3 We've got a lot of time. ......
- 4 Could you wait a minute? ......
- 5 She's bored and unhappy. ......

6 Make sentences from the words.

- ▶ not / about / holiday / a / I'm / bothered — I'm not bothered about a holiday.
- 1 of / got / she / we've / time / says / loads ......
- 2 you / hand / today / me / could / lend / a ? ......
- 3 up / morning / with / what's / this / Matt ? ......
- 4 afraid / clue / I / a / I'm / haven't ......
- 5 this / do / fancy / what / doing / evening / you ? ......

7 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ What's up......? ~ Nothing. Why?
- 1 I'm writing a text. Could you ...... on a minute? ~ ......, sure.
- 2 See you tomorrow. ~ OK. ......!
- 3 Could you ...... me a hand? ~ Sorry, I've got a ...... problem today.
- 4 What do you want to do? ~ Oh, I'm not ......, actually. You decide.
- 5 What's ...... with Zoe this morning? ~ I haven't a ....
- 6 Do you ...... going out? ~ Yes. What would you like to do?

TEST YOURSELF

98 Writing a letter or email

Notes	Beginnings	Endings
If you are writing to a **stranger** or you don't know the person's name, use the phrases on the right.	**Dear Sir** **Dear Madam** **Dear Sir or Madam** OR **Dear Sir/Madam**	**Yours faithfully** (followed by your full name)
If you know the person's name, use *Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms, Dr,* etc. and their surname (not the first name). Use *Mrs* before a married woman's name, *Miss* before a single woman's name. Some women prefer *Ms* because it does not show whether they are married or not.	**Dear** Mr Wu **Dear** Miss Gilberto	**Yours sincerely** Less formal: **Best regards** **Best wishes** (followed by your full name)
If you know them quite well, you can use their first name.	**Dear** Rosa **Dear** Conrad	**Best wishes** **Best regards** **With kind regards** **Regards** **All the best** (followed by your first name)
For an informal letter or email to a friend or family member, use their first name. **Love (from)** is less common from a man writing to another man.	**Hi** Pavel **Hi** Mum **Dear** Cassie	**Love (from)** **Lots of love (from)** **Take care** (followed by your first name)

45 Muswell Rd
London NW4
15 April, 2020

Sunshine Holiday Cottages
Fore St
Truro

Dear Mr Ellison

Thank you for your email **confirming** our holiday **booking** at Bay Tree Cottage for 22-29 June. **As requested**, I have **transferred** £320 into your **account**, and will pay the **balance** by 20 May.

As we plan to do a lot of walking during our stay, **I would be grateful if you could** send me any **further** information you have about local places of interest, and **in particular**, it would be useful to know of any restaurants you might be able to recommend.

Please **let me know** if you need any further information.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely

Louise Robertson

Notice that we don't usually use contractions, e.g. ***I'll, haven't, I'd,*** in formal letters and emails.

GLOSSARY

stranger	a person that you do not know
confirm	say that sth is true or that sth will happen
booking	the arrangement you make in advance to have a hotel room, a seat on a plane, etc.
as requested *formal*	You use **as requested** to say that you are doing sth that sb has asked you to do.
transfer	move sth/sb to a different place **transfer** *n*
account	an arrangement with a bank that lets you keep your money there
balance	money that still has to be paid
I would be grateful if you could ...	used when you request sth politely SYN **I would appreciate it if you could ...**
in particular	SYN **especially**
let me know	tell me
I look forward to hearing from you.	used to say politely that you want the reader to reply to you

SPOTLIGHT *further*

1 comparative of *far*: *The station is* ***further*** *than the bank.* SYN **farther**

2 (usually before a noun) more: *Have you any* ***further*** *questions?*

Further to ... *formal* is used in letters to mention a previous letter or conversation about the same subject.

- ***Further to*** *my letter* ***of*** *July 5th, I am happy to pick up the keys by 10 a.m.*

① Read the letter again, then cover it and answer the questions. If the answer is *no*, explain why.

▶ Is Louise Robertson booking a holiday cottage? Yes, she is.
1 Is this the first time she has been in contact with Mr Ellison? ....
2 Why did Mr Ellison write? ....
3 What has Louise just done? ....
4 What happens on 20 May? ....
5 Are there any other things she wants to know? If so, what? ....
6 What is the first line of her address? ....
7 What's the first line of Mr Ellison's address? ....
8 When did she write the letter? ....
9 Which beginning did she use? ....
10 Which ending did she use? ....

② True or false? Write *T* or *F*. If false, explain why.

▶ If you're writing to a family member, you end it with ***Yours sincerely***. F – You probably end it with 'Love' or 'Lots of love'.
1 If you begin '***Dear*** Maria', you can end it with ***Regards***. ....
2 If you begin your letter ***Dear Sir***, you can end it with ***Best wishes***. ....
3 If you don't know the name of the person you are writing to, your beginning should be ***Dear Sir or Madam***. ....
4 If you write ***All the best*** at the end, you could also write ***Regards***. ....
5 If you begin '***Dear*** Miss Periskic', you should end ***Yours faithfully***. ....
6 If you are writing to your teacher, you should end ***Love from*** and then your full name. ....
7 ***Take care*** is an alternative ending to ***Best wishes***. ....

③ Which words are missing where the slashes (/) are? Write them at the end.

▶ For / details of the accommodation, please look at the website. further
1 As / I am sending you one month's deposit on the flat. ....
2 I would be / if you / phone me when you have the details. ....
3 Further / your letter / April 7th, I wish to confirm my booking. ....
4 I would / it if you could help me with this matter. ....
5 … and / particular, I would like to know about parking in the area. ....
6 Please let / know if you need any more information. ....
7 I look forward / hearing / you. ....
8 With / regards ....

④ Complete the two emails.

▶ Dear Ms Stephens

Thank you for your email of January 12. I am **(1)** .... £900 (£600 for rent and £300 for the agent's fee) for Flat 7, Walsingham Buildings. I would be **(2)** .... if you could email me as soon as the money has reached your **(3)** .... Many thanks.

Yours **(4)** ....

Jerzy Kowalski

Send

---

(5) .... Mr Buerk

I am just writing to **(6)** .... that I have received your bank **(7)** .... of £250 for Sunnybank Villa, Southwold, for the week of July 1st for two weeks.

I **(8)** .... be grateful if you could **(9)** .... me know a few days before your visit if you will be using all three bedrooms so that I can inform the cleaners. I would also **(10)** .... it if you could send me the **(11)** .... of £625 at least four weeks before your arrival.

Best **(12)** ....

Judy Kelveton

Send

TEST YOURSELF

99 Abbreviations and short forms

A Abbreviations

asap *inf*	= *as soon as possible*	**IQ**	= *intelligence quotient*: a way of measuring how intelligent sb is **intelligence** the ability to understand, learn and think
ATM	= *Automatic Teller Machine*: a cash machine	**ISP**	= *internet service provider*: e.g. AT&T, Comcast
CV	= *curriculum vitae*: (from Latin) a formal list of your education or work experience that you need when you apply for a job	**IT**	= *information technology*: the study or use of computers and electronic equipment
DIY	= *do-it-yourself*: making, painting or repairing things in your house yourself	**PC**	= *personal computer*
EU	= *the European Union*: A **union** is a group of people or countries that have joined together.	**PE**	= *physical education*: sport and exercise done at school as a subject
FAQ	= *frequently asked questions* (used in writing)	**PIN**	= *Personal Identification Number*: You use this with a bank or credit card, for example.
ID *inf*	= *identity*: a document that shows who you are; **ID card**	**VIP**	= *very important person*: sb who is famous or important

PIN is pronounced as the word *pin*, but most abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters, e.g. **BBC** is pronounced 'b-b-c'. It **stands for** the British Broadcasting Corporation.

① Complete the abbreviations.

▶ I didn't like PE when I was at school.
1 If you use an AT......, you'll need your ......IN.
2 If you apply for a job, send in a C...... .
3 I've got all the data for the project on my P...... .
4 We're expecting a visit from a VI...... .
5 My brother is clever and has a very high I...... .
6 He's good with computers: he works in I...... .
7 Are you any good at DI...... ?
8 You may have to show your I...... to the police.
9 How many countries are there in the ......U?
10 I need the information asa...... .
11 An IS...... provides customers with access to the internet.
12 'How do I fix my mobile?' is a common FA...... on the internet.

② What do these abbreviations stand for?

▶ EU The European Union
1 ID ......
2 VIP ......
3 DIY ......
4 IQ ......
5 asap ......
6 ISP ......
7 PIN ......
8 IT ......
9 FAQ ......

③ Answer the questions using the correct abbreviation.

▶ What's Comcast? It's an ISP.
1 Do you need this stuff quickly? Yes, ...
2 How can you prove who you are? ....
3 Where can I get cash? ....
4 What do I send if I apply for a job? ....
5 What are Germany, France and Italy all members of? ....
6 What do you sometimes need when you use your debit card in a shop? ....
7 What subject at school involves sport? ....
8 Did you paint this room yourself? ~ No, I'm not good at ....

TEST YOURSELF

B Short forms

These short forms are used in spoken and informal written English. They are more common than the longer forms, which are more formal, e.g. **flu** is more common and less formal than **influenza**.

Short form	Full form / Meaning	Short form	Full form / Meaning
ad, advert	**advertisement**	**lab** *inf*	**laboratory** (a special room where scientists work)
bike	**bicycle**	**maths**	**mathematics**
blog	**weblog** a personal record sb puts on their website saying what they do or what they think about sth	**photo**	**photograph**
deli	**delicatessen** a shop or part of a supermarket that sells cooked meat and cheese, and special or unusual food that comes from other countries	**plane**	**aeroplane**
exam	**examination**	**pop (music)**	**popular music**
(the) flu	**influenza** *formal* an illness like a cold but more serious	**pub**	**public house** *formal* a place where you can buy and drink alcohol and meet friends
fridge	**refrigerator**	**TV** **telly** *inf*	**television**
gym	**gymnasium** a room or building with equipment for physical exercise	**uni**	**university**
info	**information**	**vet**	**veterinary surgeon** a doctor for animals

4 Cover the table, then give short forms for these words.

▶ gym~~nasium~~ ..gym..........
1 veterinary surgeon ....
2 popular music ....
3 influenza ....
4 aeroplane ....
5 photograph ....
6 university ....
7 information ....
8 public house ....
9 mathematics ....
10 delicatessen ....
11 laboratory ....
12 weblog ....
13 advertisement ....
14 examination ....

5 Complete the dialogues with shortened words from the table.

▶ Did you have your camera with you in the mountains? ~ Yes, I took some ..photos.......... .
1 Do you still want to get a job? ~ Yes, I'm just looking at some .... now.
2 Do you fancy a drink at the .... tonight? ~ Well, I was planning to watch the ....
3 How are you? ~ I feel awful. I think I've got ....
4 Has Juno finished school now? ~ Yes, she's going to .... next year to study Maths.
5 Is Stef still working on his fitness? ~ Yes, he goes to the .... almost every day.
6 You don't like algebra, do you? ~ No, and I've got a .... exam tomorrow.
7 Did you drive into town? ~ No, I went on my ....
8 Did you take your cat to the ....? ~ Yes, we're waiting for test results from the ....
9 Could you buy some Parma ham from the ....? ~ I got some earlier – it's in the ....
10 Did you fly? ~ Yes, and it was a very small ....
11 What do you need for the trip? ~ I need some more .... about the transport system.
12 Do you often read this stuff? ~ Yes, there are some great .... on the internet.

6 Do you know or can you guess the short forms of these words?

▶ newspaper ..paper..........
1 telephone number ....
2 mobile phone ....
3 whiteboard ....
4 kilograms ....
5 celebrity ....
6 microchip ....
7 decaffeinated ....

TEST YOURSELF

100 American English

American English	**candy** [U]	**French fries**	**cell phone**	**cookies**
British English	**sweets**	**chips**	**mobile phone**	**biscuits**

American English	**elevator**	**faucet**	**truck**	**purse**	**pants**
British English	**lift**	**tap**	**lorry**	**handbag**	**trousers**

American English	Meaning	British English
appointment book / datebook	a book where you write what you are going to do. On a phone, PC, etc, **calendar** is the word in both American and British English.	**diary**
lawyer; (*more formal*) **attorney**	a lawyer	In British English, a **lawyer** who represents sb in court is a **barrister** and a **solicitor** is a lawyer who prepares legal documents.
drugstore	a shop that sells medicines and other types of goods	**chemist's/pharmacy**
garbage/trash [U] **garbage/trash can**	waste food, paper, etc. that you throw away a container outside your home where you put the waste	**rubbish** [U] **dustbin**
gasoline/gas [U]	fuel used in a car	**petrol** [U]
high school	a school for children aged 14 to18	**secondary school** (for children aged 11 to 16 or 18)
highway	a large important road in a town or between towns	**main road; motorway**
movie theater	a place where you see a **movie** (usually **film** in British English)	**cinema**
parking lot	a place where you can leave your car	**car park**
restroom	a room with toilets in a public place, e.g. in a restaurant. In American English, a **bathroom** is either a room with only a toilet in it in a home, or a room with a bath and/or a shower in it, and sometimes a toilet as well. A **bathroom** in British English is always a room with a bath and/or a shower (with or without a toilet).	**toilet**
round trip OPP **one-way trip**	a journey to a place and back	**return (journey)** OPP **single (journey)**
sidewalk	the part of the road where people walk	**pavement**
store	a shop, large or small	**shop; department store**
subway	an underground train system. In British English, a **subway** is a path that goes under a busy road so that people can cross safely.	**underground**
vacation	a period of time away from work or school, often spent travelling for pleasure	**holiday**
yard	In British English, a **yard** is an area outside a building, usually with a hard surface: *a school/prison yard*	**garden**

1 **Circle the American words.**

lift[✓ faucet]sweetsFrenchfriesone-waytriprestroomtheatergarbagebarrister elevatormotorwayattorneyrubbishgasolinecandyhighway

2 **Combine the parts to form six more American English words.**

high ✓	side	cell	sub	appointment	drug	trash
phone	way ✓	walk	store	can	book	way

▶ highway ....

....

3 **Correct the spelling mistakes.**

▶ moovie movie
1 garbbage ....
2 faucit ....
3 haighway ....
4 subwei ....
5 pantes ....
6 candie ....
7 attourney ....
8 gasolin ....
9 perse ....
10 appointement book ....
11 vaication ....

4 **Complete the sentences using American English words.**

▶ What age do you start high school in America?
1 Do you know what's playing at the movie .... ?
2 It took us ages to find the parking ....
3 Do you want French .... with your steak?
4 My journey to go and visit with my brother is a ninety-mile round ....
5 Excuse me, where's the rest .... ?
6 Is your son doing well in high .... ?
7 Have a .... ~ No, thanks, I don't like sweet things.
8 Let's not walk downstairs – we can take the ....
9 Someone stole Lara's keys and cell phone from her ....
10 Are you planning to come back? ~ No, I just bought a .... ticket.

5 **Replace the British English words with American English words.**

▶ When does the ~~shop~~ open? store
1 Where are you going for your holiday? ....
2 What should I do with this rubbish? ....
3 We had to go to court, so I needed a good barrister. ....
4 I wrote the meeting with Jo in my diary. ....
5 He drives a big lorry. ....
6 Would you like another biscuit? ....
7 Could you turn on the tap? ....
8 I took the underground to the museum. ....
9 We can't use the pavement here. ....
10 The children are playing in the garden. ....

6 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 What's your cell phone number? ....
2 How often do you use the subway? ....
3 When did you finish high school? ....
4 How far is your nearest movie theater? ....
5 What was the last movie you saw? ....
6 How often do you eat French fries? ....
7 Where did you go for your last vacation? ....
8 Do you use an appointment book? ....
9 Do you eat a lot of cookies or candy? ....
10 Have you ever needed to use an attorney? ....

TEST YOURSELF

Vocabulary building

The words in **bold** are all in the units in the Intermediate level.

The words in blue are people.

TEST YOURSELF – cover one column and say the word or words in the other column.

VERB	NOUN
act	**act**, **acting**, **actor**
achieve	**achievement**
add	**addition**
advertise	**advertising**, **advert**, **advertisement**
advise	**advice**
agree	**agreement**
analyse	**analysis**
announce	**announcement**
appoint	**appointment**
apply	**application**
argue	**argument**
assist	**assistance**
attach	**attachment**
attract	**attraction**
behave	**behaviour**
believe	**belief**
bleed	**bleeding**
breathe	**breath**, **breathing**
camp	**camping**
celebrate	**celebration**
cheat	**cheating**
choose	**choice**
collect	**collection**, **collector**
combine	**combination**
communicate	**communication**
compare	**comparison**
complain	**complaint**
conclude	**conclusion**
confirm	**confirmation**
confuse	**confusion**
connect	**connection**
consume	**consumer**
contain	**container**
dance	**dance**, **dancing**, **dancer**
define	**definition**
develop	**development**
direct	**director**
discover	**discovery**
discuss	**discussion**
divide	division
donate	**donation**
draw	**drawing**
elect	**election**
emphasize	**emphasis**

VERB	NOUN
employ	**employment**, employer, employee
encourage	encouragement
entertain	**entertainment**
evaluate	evaluation
examine	**examination**
exhibit	**exhibition**
explain	**explanation**
explode	**explosion**
explore	**exploration**
export	**export**, **exporter**
fight	**fight**, **fighter**
fluctuate	**fluctuation**
govern	**government**
improve	**improvement**
injure	**injury**
interrupt	interruption
intend	**intention**
invent	**invention**
investigate	**investigation**, investigator
involve	involvement
kill	**killing**, killer
know	**knowledge**
land	**landing**
laugh	laughter
locate	**location**
lose	**loss**
manage	**management**, **manager**
market	**market**, **marketing**
marry	**marriage**
mix	**mixture**, **mix**
motivate	**motivation**
murder	**murder**, **murderer**
operate	**operation**
paint	**painting**, painter
pay	**payment**
pollute	**pollution**
practise	**practice**
pray	**prayer**
predict	**prediction**
prefer	**preference**
produce	**production**, **producer**
promote	**promotion**
pronounce	**pronunciation**
protect	**protection**

VERB	NOUN
prove	**proof**
pray	**prayer**
promote	**promotion**
protect	**protection**
publish	**publishing**, **publisher**
punish	**punishment**
qualify	**qualification**
quote	**quotation**
recycle	**recycling**
reduce	**reduction**
recognize	recognition
recommend	**recommendation**
recycle	**recycling**
reduce	**reduction**
refer	**reference**, **referee**
reject	**rejection**
remind	**reminder**
remove	removal
repeat	**repetition**

VERB	NOUN
require	requirement
research	**research**, **researcher**
respond	**response**
retire	**retirement**
revise	**revision**
rob	**robbery**, **robber**
select	**selection**
serve	**service**, **servant**
shoot	**shooting**, shot
speed	**speeding**
summarize	**summary**
sunbathe	**sunbathing**
supply	**supply**, **supplier**
survive	**survival**
trade	**trade**, **trader**
translate	**translation**, translator
treat	**treatment**
warn	**warning**
weigh	**weight**

ADJECTIVE	NOUN
accidental	**accident**
allergic	**allergy**
alphabetical	**alphabet**
ambitious	**ambition**
anxious	anxiety
artistic	**artist**
basic	basis
bright	**brightness**
central	**centre**
cold	**cold**
convenient	**convenience**
cruel	**cruelty**
deep	**depth**
determined	determination
exciting	**excitement**
expert	**expert**
fashionable	**fashion**
historic	**history,** historian
industrial	**industry**
important	**importance**
individual	**individual**
industrial	**industry**
intelligent	**intelligence**
long	**length**
magic	**magic,** magician
mysterious	**mystery**
national	**nation**
native	**native**

ADJECTIVE	NOUN
painful/painless	**pain**
passionate	**passion**
patient	**patience**, **patient**
peaceful	**peace**
political	**politics**, **politician**
popular	**popularity**
powerful, **powerless**	**power**
prefer	**preference**
professional	**profession, professional**
proud	pride
rectangular	**rectangle**
religious	**religion**
responsible	**responsibility**
safe	**safety**
scientific	**science**, **scientist**
sexual	**sex**
similar	**similarity**
solid	**solid**
square	**square**
stable	**stability**
standard	**standard**
suitable	**suitability**
triangular	**triangle**
thick	thickness
valuable	**value**
violence	**violent**
voluntary	**volunteer**
wide	**width**

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE
circle	**circle**	**circular**
competition, **competitor**	**compete**	**competitive**
development	**develop**	**developing**
disappointment	disappoint	**disappointed, disappointing**
embarrassment	embarrass	**embarrassing, embarrassed**
entertainment, entertainer	**entertain**	entertaining
equality	equal	**equal**
excitement	excite	**exciting**
frustration	frustrate	**frustrating**
imagination	**imagine**	**imaginary**
impression	impress	**impressive**
lead, **leader**	**lead**	**leading**
motivation	motivate	**motivated**
organization, organizer	organize	**organized**
poison	**poison**	**poisonous**
prediction	**predict**	**predictable**
preparation	prepare	**prepared**
relation, **relative**	relate	**related**
risk	**risk**	**risky**
separation	**separate**	**separate**
shine	**shine**	**shiny**
success	**succeed**	**successful**
variety	**vary**	**various**
worry	**worry**	**worrying**, **worried**

ADJECTIVE	VERB
annoyed, annoying	**annoy**
amazing, amazed	amaze
calm	**calm (down)**
cool	cool (sth) (down)
delighted	delight
embarrassing, embarrassed	**embarrass**
educated, educational	**educate**
frightened, frightening	frighten
harmful	**harm**
organized	organize
qualified	**qualify**
relaxing, relaxed	**relax**
repeated	repeat

NOUNS AND VERBS WITH THE SAME FORM

access
attack
attempt
bend
benefit
bite
bomb
burn
campaign
challenge
charge
cheat
claim
coach
contact
damage
deal
delay
divorce
doubt
drop
exchange
export
fall
fine
flood
flow
focus
guard
guess
hate
host
hurry
impact
import
increase
influence
judge
kick
kiss
label
lack
light
like
look
measure
mention
move
need
network
order
plant
protest*
pull
push
purchase
queue
record*
refund*
release
rent
repair
request
respect
rise
sail
shake
share
shout
signal
slice
smell
sound
sting
stress
target
taste
tear
tip
touch
tour
trade
transfer*
travel
trick
update*
volunteer
vote
waste
wave
win

*Listen to the different pronunciation for the noun and verb on the APP.

Common irregular verbs

The verbs in bold are key vocabulary in the units of this book.

be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	**bent**	**bent**
bite	**bit**	**bitten**
bleed	**bled**	**bled**
blow	**blew**	**blown**
break	**broke**	**broken**
bring	**brought**	**brought**
build	**built**	**built**
burn	**burnt/burned**	**burnt/burned**
burst	**burst**	**burst**
buy	bought	bought
catch	**caught**	**caught**
choose	**chose**	**chosen**
come	**came**	**come**
cost	cost	cost
cut	**cut**	**cut**
deal	**dealt**	**dealt**
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	**dreamt/dreamed**	**dreamt/dreamed**
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	**fell**	**fallen**
feel	**felt**	**felt**
fight	**fought**	**fought**
find	**found**	**found**
fly	flew	flown
forget	**forgot**	**forgotten**
freeze	**froze**	**frozen**
get	**got**	**got**
give	**gave**	**given**

go	**went**	***gone** (ALSO **been**)
grow	**grew**	**grown**
hang	**hung**	**hung**
have	**had**	**had**
hear	**heard**	**heard**
hide	**hid**	**hid**
hit	hit	hit
hold	**held**	**held**
hurt	**hurt**	**hurt**
keep	**kept**	**kept**
know	**knew**	**known**
lay	**laid**	**laid**
lead	**led**	**led**
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	**left**	**left**
lend	**lent**	**lent**
let	**let**	**let**
lie	**lay**	**lain**
light	**lit**	**lit**
lose	**lost**	**lost**
make	**made**	**made**
mean	**meant**	**meant**
meet	met	met
oversleep	**overslept**	**overslept**
pay	**paid**	**paid**
put	**put**	**put**
quit	**quit**	**quit**
read	read	read
rid	**rid**	**rid**
ride	rode	ridden
ring	**rang**	**rung**
rise	**rose**	**risen**
run	**ran**	**run**
say	said	said
see	**saw**	**seen**

Gone or been?

We use the past participle ***gone*** to say that someone went somewhere and is still there – they haven't returned yet:
Where's Hannah? ~ She's (= she has) ***gone to the cinema***. (= Hannah is at the cinema now, or on her way to it.)

We use ***been*** to say that someone went somewhere but isn't there now – they have returned:
*I've **been** to the cinema this afternoon. I saw the new German film.* (= I went to the cinema and have now returned from there.)

sell	sold	sold
send	**sent**	**sent**
set	**set**	**set**
sew	**sewed**	**sewn/sewed**
shake	**shook**	**shaken**
shine	**shone**	**shone**
shoot	**shot**	**shot**
show	**showed**	**shown**
shut	shut	shut
sink	**sank**	**sunk**
sing	sang	sung
sit	**sat**	**sat**
sleep	**slept**	**slept**
smell	**smelt/smelled**	**smelt/smelled**
speak	**spoke**	**spoken**
speed	**sped/speeded**	**sped/speeded**
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
spill	**spilt/spilled**	**spilt/spilled**
spread	**spread**	**spread**
spring	**sprang**	**sprung**
stand	**stood**	**stood**
steal	**stole**	**stolen**
stick	**stuck**	**stuck**
sting	**stung**	**stung**
sweep	**swept**	**swept**
swim	swam	swum
take	**took**	**taken**
teach	**taught**	**taught**
tear	**tore**	**torn**
tell	**told**	**told**
think	**thought**	**thought**
throw	**threw**	**thrown**
understand	understood	understood
undo	**undid**	**undone**
upset	**upset**	**upset**
wake (up)	**woke (up)**	**woken (up)**
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	**wrote**	**written**

Answer key

Unit 1

1 1 identify
2 formal
3 foreign
4 context
5 translate
6 guessed

2 1 went through
2 basic
3 recognize/know
4 foreigners
5 informal
6 guess

3 1 context
2 record
3 translation
4 informal
5 recognize

4 *possible answers, from China*:
1 Yes, I do, but I sometimes use a dictionary.
2 Yes, I do it sometimes.
3 I usually write down the meaning in Chinese, and I sometimes write a translation, too.
4 Yes, I do. I often make a note of pronunciation.
5 No, I don't think so. I can only identify the words that are new for me.

5 1 repeat, repetition
2 pronounce, pronunciation
3 explain, explanation
4 revise, revision
5 argue, argument

6 1 study it again
2 successful
3 try to do something
4 make
5 discussion
6 a way of doing something
7 understand
8 wrong
9 function

7 1 pronounce
2 opportunity
3 revision
4 works/worked
5 chance
6 experiment
7 repetition/revision
8 arguments

Unit 2

1 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 S 6 D

2 1 encouraging
2 improving
3 obviously
4 effectively
5 motivation
6 clearly

3 1 while
2 slowing down
3 aware
4 express
5 effective
6 difficult
7 keen/motivated
8 encouraging; getting better

4 *possible answers, from Argentina*:
1 In my case, I still worry about my mistakes.
2 I don't think I'm slowing down – on the contrary, I think I'm making good progress.
3 I'm aware of my mistakes when I speak, and that sometimes makes me feel embarrassed.
4 I think I can express myself better, and I can also understand what people say.
5 I fully agree! Listening to songs in English is effective and fun.
6 I don't find it difficult to concentrate. I like learning English so it's easy for me to pay attention.
7 I'm very keen on reading. Reading in English helps me remember new words and phrases.
8 In my case, I need encouragement to go on learning. When my teacher praises my work, I feel encouraged.

5 1 fluently
2 includes
3 to do with
4 complex
5 in detail
6 suitable
7 aim
8 expanded
9 (wide) range of

6 1 goal/aim
2 unsuitable
3 native
4 contained
5 expanding
6 includes
7 range
8 achieved
9 do
10 fluent

7 *possible answers, from Argentina*:

VOCABULARY

I want to learn new words and phrases to be able to express ideas more efficiently. In particular, I'd like to learn more vocabulary related to my job (sales and finance).

SPEAKING

I want to speak more fluently and I'd like to improve my pronunciation, so that I can communicate more effectively.

READING

I'd like to be able to read complex texts without having to look up many words in the dictionary.

Unit 3

1 1 symbol
2 style
3 slang
4 emphasize
5 idiom
6 syllable
7 emphasis
8 for instance
9 definition

2 1 S
2 D
3 S
4 S
5 D
6 D
7 S
8 S

3 1 instance
2 definitions
3 build; provide; related
4 avoid
5 symbols; syllable
6 idiom; entry
7 define
8 stress

4 1 error; do sth wrong; fault
2 two
3 informal
4 No, it's informal.
5 /gaɪ/
6 used when speaking to a group of people of either sex

5 1 a No: it should be 'by mistake'.
b Yes

2 a Yes
b No: it should be 'My dad **earns** a lot of money in his job.'

3 a Yes
b No: a single woman can't be a guy, only a group of men and/or women.

Unit 4

1
1 full stop
2 colon
3 hyphen
4 brackets
5 semi-colon
6 exclamation mark
7 apostrophe

2
1 comma
2 question mark
3 exclamation mark
4 apostrophe
5 semi-colon
6 brackets
7 hyphen; dash
8 quotation marks; apostrophe; comma

3
1 details
2 instead
3 apostrophe
4 omit
5 interrupt
6 separate
7 connect
8 shopping list
9 question mark
10 abbreviation
11 exclamation

4
1 talking
2 information
3 formal
4 example
5 stop
6 together

5
1 list
2 instead
3 connect/join
4 details
5 abbreviation
6 such
7 leave
8 separate
9 interrupt
10 shopping

6
1 *She* needs a capital letter (not a small letter).
2 A comma is missing after *tall*.
3 A slash is missing between *in* and *on*.
4 A colon is missing after *choices*.
5 An apostrophe is missing after *boyfriend* and before *s*.
6 Commas are missing before and after *fortunately*.

Unit 5

1
1 D
2 S
3 S
4 D
5 S
6 D (*W* isn't pronounced in *wrist*.)
7 S

2
1 knee
2 lips
3 tongue
4 hips
5 fingernail
6 eyebrow
7 shoulder

3
1 (finger)nail
2 toes
3 thumb
4 wrist
5 tongue
6 neck
7 ankle
8 heel
9 chin
10 elbows
11 throat
12 stomach

4
1 hands
2 mouth
3 hands
4 hands
5 hands
6 mouth
7 hands
8 hands

5 1 g 2 a 3 f 4 b 5 d 6 c

6
1 fold
2 poured
3 bend
4 balance
5 roll
6 clapped
7 breathe
8 sweep
9 bit
10 kicking

Unit 6

1
1 D
2 S
3 S
4 D
5 D
6 D
7 S
8 S
9 S
10 D

2
1 fair hair
2 tattoo
3 beard; moustache
4 shape
5 broad
6 bald; bald
7 build

3
1 curly
2 fair
3 shoulders
4 shape/condition
5 tan/suntan
6 appearance

4 *possible answers, to questions in Exercise 2*:
1 My brother and sister both have / have both got fair hair.
2 Nobody has (got) a tattoo.
3 My brother has (got) a small beard and moustache.
4 My sister is in very good shape, but my brother is a bit fat.
5 My dad has (got) broad shoulders.
6 My dad is nearly bald now.
7 My brother is medium build.

to questions in Exercise 3:
1 I've got wavy hair.
2 I've got pale skin.
3 I haven't got broad shoulders.
4 I think I'm in quite good shape.
5 I don't like sitting in the sun, so I haven't usually got / don't usually have a tan.
6 No. My nose is too big, and I'm a bit short, but I don't think I'm ugly.

5
1 F
2 T
3 F
4 F
5 T
6 F
7 T
8 F

6
1 height; neat
2 tell; expecting
3 tallish
4 smooth; rough
5 figure
6 tell
7 hairstyle
8 pregnant; time

7 *possible answers*:
1 My daughter is pregnant at the moment. It's her first baby.
2 Most women in my family are of medium height, though one cousin is very tall and her sister is quite short.
3 I change my hairstyle a lot.
4 My cousin Chelo is quite short.
5 My two children's faces are roundish.
6 I do, and my husband does too.

Unit 7

1
1 P
2 N
3 P, but sometimes B
4 P
5 N
6 P
7 B
8 P

2
1 energetic
2 responsible
3 generous
4 easy-going
5 confident
6 disorganized
7 personality

3
1 f
2 h
3 g
4 a
5 d
6 b
7 i
8 e

4
irresponsible
hard-working
mean
insecure
stupid/crazy/irresponsible
disorganized
impractical

5 1 crazy
2 easy-going
3 practical/patient; organized
4 generous
5 confident
6 hard-working
7 responsible
8 energy
9 sensible; stupid
10 character; shy; ambitious

6 *possible answers*:
1 I'm quite ambitious. I work hard in my job and want to get better at it.
2 I'm definitely hard-working. I don't like working with lazy people.
3 I'm quite outgoing.
4 I'm impatient when people don't care enough about what they do.
5 I'm very organized. I plan my day carefully, answer emails immediately, and keep good records.
6 Yes, I'm quite cheerful at work and more so at home! I have an outgoing personality.
7 I'm practical, organized and sensible.
8 For me, generosity and patience are the most important qualities.

Unit 8

1 1 N
2 N
3 P
4 N
5 N
6 P
7 P
8 N
9 N
10 P
11 N

2 1 anxious
2 miserable
3 frightened/afraid
4 alone
5 lonely
6 relaxed
7 furious

3 1 delighted/pleased/glad
2 miserable / fed up / anxious/furious/disappointed
3 upset
4 frightened/scared/afraid
5 miserable / fed up
6 relaxed/pleased/glad
7 pleased/glad
8 frightened/scared/anxious/afraid
9 disappointed/furious/miserable/upset / fed up

4 1 F
2 T
3 F
4 T
5 F
6 T
7 F
8 T

5 1 guilty
2 stressed
3 upset; annoyed
4 occasion
5 mood
6 feelings
7 jealous
8 emotional

6 *from the questionnaire*:
a Yes, I am.
b No, I often get stressed.
c Yes, always.
d Yes, I do.
e No, because I get things wrong myself.
f Yes, very nervous.
g No, my mood changes all the time.

from Exercise 5:
1 Yes, I do too because I need to be careful about my weight.
2 No, I'm not feeling stressed at all.
3 No, I don't. They don't mind what I do.
4 Yes, it was.
5 Yes, I'm often in a very bad mood if I haven't slept well.
6 That's true: I don't show my feelings to most people, but I do to my best friend.
7 No, I don't get jealous about that.
8 Yes, sometimes.

Unit 9

1 1 need
2 loving
3 well/amazing/incredible, etc.
4 best (at sth)
5 dangerous/difficult
6 money
7 moment
8 ability
9 extremely/very
10 nice

2 1 talented
2 champion
3 charity
4 incredibly
5 qualities
6 raise
7 currently
8 brave
9 proud

3 *possible answers*:
1 At school I won the 100 metres and long jump.
2 Yes, I've raised money for a cancer charity.
3 I'm proud of my children, who are so loving and clever.
4 No, not particularly.
5 I think I'm quite brave: I climbed Kilimanjaro last year.

4 1 pretend
2 excuse
3 difficult
4 standard
5 expect
6 cruel
7 pleasant
8 unpleasant

5 1 No
2 No
3 Yes
4 Yes
5 Yes
6 No
7 Yes
8 No
9 No
10 No

6 1 excuse; pretends
2 make up / invent
3 standards; annoying; mean
4 expects; unpleasant; difficult

Unit 10

1 keep in touch, get on with someone, tell the truth, have something in common, sense of humour, make friends

2 1 reliable
2 trust
3 support
4 attitude
5 get on
6 common
7 touch
8 dishonest
9 dislikes
10 friendship

3 1 He makes friends easily.
2 We don't keep in touch. / We aren't in touch.
3 I don't get on with my father.
4 Kate has a (good) sense of humour.
5 Jo and Ellen have a lot in common.
6 You can rely on Phoebe. / Phoebe is reliable.

4 1 Hannah is **in** a serious relationship.
2 Lian broke **up** with Chen last week.
3 Paula and I met **one** another at university.
4 How did you get **to** know Anya?
5 We used to meet but not **any** longer.
6 She went **out** with him for two years.

5 1 other
2 fancied
3 relationship
4 wrong
5 broke
6 go
7 one
8 realized

6 1 another
2 together
3 longer
4 relationship
5 going out
6 get; know

7 *possible answers*:
0 I got to know her when I started work.
1 We've known each other for about ten years.
2 We get together a lot – once a week at least – and we text each other most days.
3 We used to go to clubs, but we don't any longer.
4 Yes, she's in a very serious relationship.
5 Her boyfriend Rudy is a good friend of my brother's.
6 They got together through me! I introduced them to each other.

Unit 11

1 1 F – Her other nickname was The Blonde Bombshell.
2 T
3 F – She grew up with foster parents and sometimes with her mother, a single parent.
4 F – A couple wanted to adopt her, but they couldn't.
5 F – She had an unhappy childhood.
6 F – She got divorced three times.
7 T
8 T

2 get married, according to somebody, adopt a child, get divorced, only child, single parent

3 1 divorced / a divorce
2 only
3 childhood
4 according
5 adopted
6 nickname
7 divorced / a divorce
8 source
9 romantic
10 complicated

4 1 No
2 Yes
3 Yes
4 No
5 No
6 Yes
7 Yes
8 No

5 1 generations
2 relatives/relations
3 date
4 father-in-law/brother-in-law
5 birth
6 coincidence

6 1 siblings
2 generations
3 related
4 originally
5 previous
6 twins; identical

7 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I've got a sister.
2 No, they don't.
3 Yes, I've got an aunt who lives in Canada.
4 Originally, my family came from Ireland.
5 They lived in Dublin.
6 Yes, I do. I know two women called Mara and Chloe who are identical twins.

Unit 12

1 1 the couple meet
2 get engaged
3 the wedding
4 the reception
5 the honeymoon
6 the anniversary

2 1 wedding
2 groom
3 religious
4 after
5 reception
6 husband and wife

3 1 civil; registry
2 bride
3 reception
4 make
5 custom
6 honeymoon
7 celebrate; anniversary
8 marriages

4 *possible answers, from India*:
0 Yes, couples do get engaged before marrying, but in most cases it's not really a private engagement. It's mostly a ceremony in which family and friends are invited and rings are exchanged.
1 In India, couples have both a religious ceremony as well as a civil ceremony in a registry office.
2 India is a diverse country with multiple religions, traditions and rituals. The wedding dress of a particular bride depends on the region and the customs of the community she belongs to. Most of the brides usually wear bright shades of red and maroon. However, there are brides who wear shades of white, gold and green as well.
3 Usually, there is a reception after the wedding ceremony.
4 Given the diverse cultures that you find in India, the wedding rituals differ from culture to culture, region to region. While in some weddings you may find the best man and the bridesmaid making a speech, in some others, you may find the older members of the family making a speech.
5 Yes, most of the communities in India follow the custom where the wife wears a wedding ring on her left hand – though there are exceptions.
6 Couples often go on a honeymoon after the wedding rituals are completed.
7 Couples usually celebrate their anniversary every year in their own way. It may or may not be a public event.
8 Yes, most marriages last forever in India.

5 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 S

6 1 No
2 No
3 Yes
4 Yes
5 No
6 No

7 1 apart
2 statistics
3 pressure
4 lack; constant
5 separated / split up
6 equal
7 separate
8 vary

8 *from the text*:
money problems
lack of communication
constant arguments
lack of equality
an affair
possible answers:

Some couples are not prepared for marriage.

Some couples think everything will be wonderful and then they are disappointed.

Couples stop loving each other.

One person is physically violent towards the other.

Couples are more interested in their careers than their marriage.

Unit 13

1 1 No
2 Yes
3 No
4 Yes
5 Yes
6 No
7 No
8 Yes

2 1 northern
2 flows
3 divides
4 western
5 eastern
6 mainly/mostly
7 features

3 1 Brazil, in South America / Latin America
2 Africa
3 Europe
4 Canada; the US
5 (northern) Africa
6 Argentina in South America / Latin America
7 Czech; Slovakia
8 Russia

4 *possible answers, from Kenya*:

One of the most important geographical features in Kenya is Mount Kenya, which is an extinct volcano. It is located in the central region of Kenya, just north of the equator. It is the highest mountain in Kenya at 5,199 metres and the second highest mountain in Africa. Mount Kenya has three peaks – Batian is the tallest, followed by Nelion and then Lenana.

5 rock, sandy, sailing, bay, horizon, protect, port, shore, beach, wave, rough, harbour, sand, cliff

6 1 horizon
2 rock
3 shore
4 cliff
5 harbour
6 beach
7 cave
8 sailing boat

7 1 rough
2 wave
3 protects
4 port
5 cliff/rocks
6 horizon
7 shore/beach
8 sandy

8 *possible answers, from Poland*:

I go to the Polish coast quite frequently – once a year or once every two years during summer. My family have a favourite beach near Kołobrzeg, which is over 550 km from Warsaw. We usually go there by car. The Baltic Sea is very cold but the beaches are lovely – wide, bright and clean. You can lie on the golden sand and watch the waves (which are not usually very high) or fishing boats or ships passing by on the horizon. I also enjoy walks along the coast with my feet in the water.

Behind the beach there is a forest. The Baltic Sea Cycling Route runs through the forest – it's so much fun to cycle there. When the weather is really hot, some people prefer having a walk in the cooler forest to lying on the beach.

Unit 14

1 1 ~~space~~ system
2 ~~moon~~ sun
3 ~~planet~~ star
4 ~~sun~~ moon
5 ~~star~~ planet
6 ~~planes~~ rockets
7 ~~big~~ great/good
8 ~~world~~ universe

2 1 space
2 planets
3 earth
4 incredible
5 approximately/roughly; reach
6 revolves/circles
7 rockets
8 satellite
9 solar
10 deal
11 words

3 the earth
the sun
the moon
other stars
other planets
a rocket

4 1 exist
2 explore
3 invention
4 carried out
5 discovered
6 analyse

5 1 scientists
2 discovery
3 confirmation
4 analyse
5 exploration
6 existence

6 1 exists
2 explore
3 satellites
4 carry out
5 solid; so far
6 confirmed
7 analysis
8 scientific
9 previously
10 spacecraft

Unit 15

1 pouring; shower

2 1 f 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 g 6 b

3 1 thunder and lightning; pouring with rain
2 sunshine
3 dreadful; foggy; showers; freezing

4 *possible answers for the UK*:
1 In the winter and early spring.
2 If we're lucky, we get a lot of sunshine in the summer, but spring and autumn can be sunny too.
3 Spring is generally mild, though we sometimes have sudden cold periods.
4 We get quite a lot of fog, especially in the early morning or by the sea.
5 No, not often – only in January or February where I live. I don't like the cold at all.

5 1 D
2 S
3 S
4 S
5 D
6 S
7 D
8 S
9 S

6 1 f 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 c

7 1 floods/destruction; damaged; branches; destroyed
2 drought; crops; starving; disasters
3 occurred/happened; damage; destroyed
4 extreme; violent/sudden; hurricanes; regularly

Unit 16

1 1 predictable
2 disappear
3 famine
4 atmosphere
5 disease
6 environment
7 pollution
8 harmful
9 liquid
10 gradual

2 1 B
2 G
3 B
4 B
5 G
6 B
7 B
8 B
9 B
10 G

3 1 solid
2 affect
3 unpredictable
4 the environment
5 human
6 melting
7 slowly
8 liquid
9 disappearing
10 atmosphere

4 1 heatwave; climate
2 liquid; solid
3 polluted; affects/affected
4 predict; rise
5 global; disappearing
6 spread
7 pollution; harmful
8 grain; famine
9 effects; warming
10 disease; spread

5 *possible answers*:
1 I'm extremely worried for future generations.
2 No, we don't.

3 Yes, the winters have become wetter, and the summers are warmer and drier. The spring arrives earlier than it used to.
4 Destruction of the rainforests, pollution from factories, cars and planes, the growth of cities.
5 Air and water pollution from factories and forms of transport.

Unit 17

1 country

2 1 F – A campaign is a plan to do a number of things to get a special result.
2 F – If you convince somebody, you make them believe something.
3 T
4 T
5 F – Wind, sun and water are examples of renewable energy. Coal and gas are not renewable forms of energy.
6 T
7 F – A developed country is rich with lots of modern industry.
8 F – Carbon dioxide is a gas.

3 1 targets
2 reduce
3 developing
4 convince
5 seriously
6 campaign(s)
7 energy
8 source

4 1 e 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 d

5 1 save; instead
2 energy
3 recycle; throw
4 impacts; individual
5 whenever; wherever
6 impact
7 recycling; rubbish

Unit 18

1 bear, leopard, eagle, butterfly, bee, mosquito

2 1 Yes
2 No
3 Yes
4 Yes
5 Yes
6 No
7 Yes
8 Yes
9 Yes
10 No
11 Yes

3 1 camels
2 creatures
3 wild
4 zoo
5 insect
6 wings
7 stripes
8 fur

4 *possible answers*:

People kill bulls in sport in some countries or possibly to eat them.

People kill tigers and leopards if they are hunters.

People kill mosquitos because they bite them and cause disease.

People kill wolves because they are a danger to some farm animals.

People kill crocodiles because they are dangerous.

5 1 F – Many are harmless.
2 T
3 F – The sun heats their bodies, but they can survive for a long time without food.
4 T
5 F – They don't have any bones.
6 F – They bite, but bees sting.

6 1 survival
2 expectancy
3 weight
4 poisonous
5 harmful; harmless
6 sting

7 1 survive
2 average
3 hunt
4 sting
5 up
6 vary
7 Poison
8 weigh

Unit 19

1 1 small/tiny
2 tired/exhausted
3 interesting/fascinating
4 good/brilliant
5 bad/dreadful
6 important/vital
7 big/enormous
8 frightened/terrified

2 1 terrified
2 tired
3 Both answers are correct.
4 furious
5 Both answers are correct.
6 essential
7 Both answers are correct.
8 good

3 1 fascinating
2 huge/enormous
3 brilliant
4 exhausted
5 terrified
6 dreadful/awful
7 tiny
8 amazed

4 1 relaxed
2 confused
3 disappointing
4 astonished
5 fascinating
6 embarrassed
7 worried
8 frightening

5 1 confused
2 embarrassed
3 disappointing
4 worrying
5 amazing
6 frightening
7 relaxing
8 disappointed

6 *possible answers*:
My exam results were disappointing.
It was embarrassing when I forgot his name.
The painter's use of colour was fascinating.
The film was frightening.
The holiday was very relaxing.
I was terrified by the film.
It was worrying when Kiko didn't arrive.

Unit 20

1 1 g 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 e

2 1 modern
2 inconvenient
3 public
4 artificial
5 pleased
6 ineffective
7 unexpected
8 permanent

3 1 mixed
2 effective
3 pleased/happy
4 -fashioned
5 unexpected
6 convenient
7 modern
8 negative
9 permanent
10 expected

4 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D

5 1 B 2 G 3 G 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 G

6 1 baggy
2 rare
3 an indirect
4 powerless
5 imaginary
6 careful
7 a guilty

7 1 careless
2 tight
3 innocent / not guilty
4 rare
5 direct
6 guilty

8 *possible answers*:

I think I look better in baggy jeans, to be honest.

It's cold in my country, so indoor pools are more useful.

I have a rare coin which belonged to my grandfather.

Usually I do, but if I find a route which has an interesting place to stop and explore, I might choose that.

Yes, I agree with it.

It's always good to be a careful driver, but not good to drive too slowly. That can cause problems for other drivers.

Do your best work. My mother always told me that.

Unit 21

1 1 seriously ill
2 absolutely love
3 completely/absolutely mad
4 feel strongly
5 highly likely
6 terribly sad
7 completely/absolutely/totally unnecessary
8 risen sharply

2 1 agree
2 damage
3 sorry; forgot
4 travelled
5 feel
6 sure/certain
7 unlikely
8 disappeared
9 fallen

3 1 vitally
2 highly
3 seriously
4 completely/totally
5 completely/totally
6 terribly

4 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S

5 1 On the whole
2 mainly
3 approximately
4 fairly/pretty/rather
5 rarely
6 frequently
7 fairly/pretty/rather
8 Generally; fairly/pretty/rather

7 *possible answers*:
1 I generally walk to work.
2 I rarely go on the underground now because I don't live in London any more.
3 I go to the gym regularly – most weeks.
4 I saw a film called *Widows*, which was pretty good.
5 I read a fairly boring book recently about the life of Paul McCartney.
6 I find it slightly annoying when people tell me I'm putting on weight.

Unit 22

1 1 S
2 D
3 S
4 S
5 D
6 D
7 S
8 D

2 1 eventually
2 necessarily
3 especially/particularly
4 naturally / of course
5 actually / in (actual) fact
6 specifically
7 perfectly
8 hardly

3 1 we were hungry.
2 didn't. / bought it last year.
3 athletics/swimming / ice hockey, etc.
4 it took much longer than that.
5 see.
6 they got here / arrived.
7 put your money in there / press that button.

4 1 No
2 No
3 Yes
4 Yes
5 No
6 Yes
7 No
8 Yes

5 1 heavily
2 suddenly
3 clearly
4 effectively/successfully
5 calmly/effectively
6 angrily
7 secretly/in secret
8 properly
9 carefully
10 badly

Unit 23

1 **usually green on the outside:** green beans, lettuce, broccoli, watermelon, cucumber, cabbage, mint, mango (Sometimes it's yellow or red.)

2 1 D
2 D
3 S
4 D
5 D
6 S
7 D
8 D
9 S
10 D
11 S

3 1 d) A pear is a kind of fruit, and the others are vegetables.
2 a) Garlic is a vegetable and the others are fruit.
3 c) Parsley is a herb and the others are vegetables.
4 b) Herbs are a group of plants, e.g. mint and parsley, and the others are vegetables.
5 c) Bunch is a quantity of bananas, cherries or grapes, and the other three items are types of fruit.

4 1 melon
2 cabbage
3 watermelon
4 grapes
5 broccoli
6 pineapple
7 lettuce
8 green beans
9 mango
10 courgette
11 sweetcorn
12 cherries
13 pears
14 garlic
15 red pepper
16 cucumber

5 **FRUIT**: melon, watermelon, grapes, pineapple, mango, cherries, pears
VEGETABLES: cabbage, broccoli, lettuce, green beans, courgette, sweetcorn, garlic, red pepper, cucumber

6 grapes, cherries, pears; sometimes sweetcorn, sometimes mango

7 *possible answers, from Kenya*:

grapes: Yes, I like red grapes in particular.

mint: No, mint is not common where I live.

mixed vegetables: Yes, I like mixed vegetables, especially with rice.

courgettes: No, I don't like courgettes at all.

watermelon: Yes, I like watermelon and find it refreshing on a hot day.

garlic: Yes, I like garlic in my food.

parsley: No, I don't like parsley in my food.

cherries: Yes, I like cherries, although they are not common where I live.

fruit salad: Yes, I like fruit salad very much.

pears: Yes, I like pears and eat them a lot when they are in season.

sweetcorn: Yes, I like sweetcorn, but it is rather expensive.

mango: Yes, I like mangoes very much.

frozen green beans: No, I don't like frozen green beans.

Unit 24

1 1 No 3 No 5 Yes 7 Yes 9 Yes
2 Yes 4 No 6 Yes 8 Yes 10 No

2 1 T
2 T
3 F – A fizzy drink contains bubbles.
4 F – Peanuts are a type of food.
5 F – You put apples in a basket. / You put flowers in a vase.
6 T
7 F – You wash your clothes with soap powder.

3 **CAN**: cola, fizzy drink, beer
TIN: tuna, tomatoes
CARTON: milk, fruit juice
JAR: coffee, jam, chilli powder
TUBE: toothpaste, glue
PACKET: crisps, chilli powder, peanuts
VASE: flowers

4 a carton of milk, two tins of tuna, a packet of cocoa powder, a tube of toothpaste, a jar of raspberry jam, a large packet of crisps, a can of fizzy drink, a can of cola, a packet of peanuts, a tube of glue

5 several, amount, weigh, length, approximate, loaf, exactly, a couple of, more or less

6 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

7 1 The room **measures/measured** approximately 4 metres by 3 metres.
2 I only take one **spoonful** of sugar in my coffee, thanks.
3 Sergio Aguero is 1.7m tall, **more** or less.
4 There are a **couple** of men standing outside. Oh, it's Yusuf and Omer!
5 He had a sandwich with two **slices** of ham in it and a tomato.
6 Could you buy a small **loaf** of bread at the supermarket? Thanks.
7 We only need a small **amount/quantity** of butter to make this cake.
8 The height of Burj Khalifa in Dubai is **exactly** 828m - no more and no less.
9 I think there were **approximately/more or less** 30 people at the meeting, but I didn't count them.
10 What is the **length** of an Olympic swimming pool? ~ I think it's 50m.

Unit 25

1 1 G 3 B 5 G 7 G
2 G 4 G 6 B 8 G

2 1 lose weight
2 a recipe
3 invest in
4 have a responsibility to
5 proper
6 skills
7 go on a diet
8 flavour

3 1 skills
2 properly
3 ingredients
4 recipe
5 diet
6 plenty
7 flavour

4 *possible answers:*
3 No. Now I try to use fewer ingredients and make life simpler.
4 Yes. I use a recipe when I cook something for the first time.
5 Generally, yes, but probably a bit too much chocolate.
6 Yes. I drink quite a lot of water, but probably not enough.
7 Yes, I love food with plenty of flavour.

5 1 chop
2 add
3 mash
4 boil
5 bake
6 roast
7 stock
8 pan/saucepan
9 method

6 1 chopped
2 fried
3 with
4 together
5 pan
6 added
7 boil
8 frying
9 method
10 minced
11 saucepan
12 fry
13 stock

7 *possible answers, from the Czech Republic*:
1 **minced**: meat, pork, beef, meat loaf (= a dish made with minced meat)
2 **fried**: cheese, carp, chicken, pork, cauliflower, veal, meat, fish
3 **roast**: pork, chicken, beef, potatoes, vegetables
4 **boiled**: potatoes, vegetables, eggs (e.g. hard-boiled), water
5 **baked**: bread, cakes, biscuits, buns, pastries, pies
6 **mashed**: potatoes

Unit 26

1 1 What **is/was** the watch worth?
2 They reduced ~~down~~ the price.
3 We placed **an** order for a new car.
4 Did she charge ~~to~~ you for the coffee?
5 I bought a second ~~of~~ hand car.
6 I ordered ~~to~~ some new glasses.
7 We asked **for** a discount.
8 Is the market worth ~~to~~ seeing?
9 There was no **charge** for drinks: they were free.

2 1 Did you ask him to reduce (the price of) the coat?
2 Is the furniture very valuable?
3 Were the goods (that you bought) expensive?
4 Is it a used car?
5 Did you place an order for the new printer this morning?
6 What's Julio's flat worth?
7 Did they charge you for the repairs?
8 Did the shop assistant give you a discount?

3 *possible answers*:

1 I love to buy goods that are reduced! It sometimes means I make bad choices, though.
2 Yes, I might. It really depends what's wrong with it.
3 I don't think so.
4 Yes, I sometimes buy second-hand books online.
5 Yes, I once bought an antique chair online. It was quite expensive.
6 Often!

4 1 work
2 package
3 take
4 complain
5 delivered
6 set
7 complained about
8 gadget

5 1 delivered
2 set
3 gadget
4 working
5 complaint
6 sent it back
7 refund
8 exchanged

6 *possible answers*:

1 F – I complained in a shoe shop last summer about some sandals I'd bought. They gave me a refund.
2 T
3 F – I haven't got many gadgets apart from a smartphone.
4 F – I don't have a problem with this.
5 T
6 It depends, but most online goods are delivered quickly – sometimes the next day – but some take ages to arrive.

Unit 27

1 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 D

2 1 underwear
2 tights
3 denim
4 blouse
5 pattern
6 wool
7 vest
8 raincoat
9 plain
10 baggy

3 1 F – Gabby's got a cap on.
2 T
3 T
4 F – She's got a plain woollen jacket on.
5 F – She's wearing a denim skirt.
6 T
7 F – She's dressed in baggy trousers.
8 T
9 T
10 F – She's carrying her jacket.

4 1 raincoat
2 baggy
3 coloured
4 undo
5 get dressed
6 plain; striped; patterned
7 've got / have
8 dressed
9 bra; knickers; vest
10 underpants/pants; vest

5 1 woollen
2 dressed
3 tight
4 denim
5 underwear
6 fur
7 necklace; earrings
8 raincoat
9 plain
10 undressed

6 *possible answers*:

1 I usually wear cotton jumpers in spring, but if it's unusually cold, I put on a woollen jumper.
2 I put my underwear on first: underpants and then a vest.
3 I prefer baggy jeans – they're more comfortable.
4 I've got three pairs and I wear them all the time.
5 I buy them in a department store or sometimes in the market.
6 No, I haven't. I don't like the idea of wearing fur.
7 No, I'm not.
8 Yes, it rains a lot so I often have to put a raincoat on.
9 Plain socks. They match everything.
10 I take off my shoes and socks first.

Unit 28

1 1 matches
2 fashionable
3 outfit
4 fashion
5 suits
6 essential

2 1 matched/matches
2 stylish/smart
3 latest
4 occasion
5 brand
6 out of fashion / unfashionable
7 elements

3 1 essential
2 matches
3 out of fashion / unfashionable
4 fashionable / in fashion
5 stylish
6 outfit

4 1 casual
2 designer
3 attract
4 quality
5 label
6 consumer

5 1 high
2 designers
3 quality
4 casual
5 profit
6 attract
7 labels

6 1 casual
2 consumers
3 aim
4 quality
5 trade
6 money

7 *possible answers*:

1 I wear casual clothes a lot, but that's because I work at home.
2 In my country, I think that's true. People have less money these days.
3 I know I should, but I don't always do it.
4 I agree. They're often very badly made.
5 I definitely agree. It employs a lot of people and is an important part of the economy.
6 I don't agree – it's worth spending money on good quality trainers.

Unit 29

1 1 D
2 S
3 D
4 S
5 S
6 D
7 S
8 D

2 1 pale
2 lack
3 confused
4 times
5 upset
6 cough
7 symptoms

3 1 lack
2 symptoms
3 painful
4 upset
5 sore
6 temperature
7 cough
8 confused
9 check-up

4 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I often lack energy in the morning.
2 A sore throat, a temperature, a headache and a cough are common.
3 Not really, though my feet are a bit painful. I ran five kilometres yesterday.
4 Yes, milk sometimes.
5 I drink hot lemon juice with honey.
6 I don't do anything unless it goes on for a long time.
7 Yes, I always get a cold in winter with a terrible cough.
8 Yes, often, especially if I fall asleep during the day.
9 Last summer. It was fine.

5 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F

6 1 I **tripped** over
2 The boy was **bleeding**
3 Potatoes are **poisonous**
4 three people were **injured**
5 My sister has **suffered**
6 I was **bitten**
7 make the **muscles**
8 The fire started by **accident**

7 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, a few times.
2 No, I've never suffered from a serious burn, but I've burnt myself slightly a few times.
3 No, never, fortunately.
4 Yes, I was bitten by my own dog once.
5 No, I haven't.
6 No, I haven't.
7 I've had bleeding from my nose a few times, but never from my ear.

Unit 30

1 de**cide,** unwell, arrange, enough
doctor, treatment, patient, sample
re**mem**ber, get over, successful, consultant, take care of
personal, benefit, operate, hospital

2 1 patient 2 consultant 3 patient 4 nurse 5 patient 6 doctor 7 nurse 8 patient 9 patient

3 1 treat
2 risk
3 benefit
4 care for / take care of
5 sample
6 emergency
7 unwell
8 X-rays/scans
9 operate
10 successful

4 1 examined
2 tests
3 operation
4 emergency
5 into
6 risks
7 successful
8 enough
9 get over
10 take care

5 *possible answers, from India*:
1 I went to hospital a few months ago for a regular check-up.
2 No, I haven't.
3 In India, nurses take care of the patients, but a family member or an attendant is usually present with the patient to look after their relative or friend.
4 Normally, you have to make an appointment to see a consultant. It depends on how serious the problem is.
5 No, you don't need to see a doctor before you see a consultant in India.
6 After an operation, a patient is normally kept under observation in the hospital, after which they can go home to recover.

Unit 31

1 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 S 7 S

2 1 lights
2 road
3 tram
4 station
5 light

3 1 petrol station
2 street lights
3 bend
4 main road
5 roundabout
6 pavement
7 divides
8 traffic lights
9 road sign
10 tram

4 *possible answers*:
I can see: a road sign, a straight road, street lights and a pavement.

5 1 ambulance
2 scene
3 serious
4 emergency
5 occur
6 block
7 avoid
8 sports car
9 force

6 1 surface
2 avoid
3 scene (of the accident)
4 skidded
5 emergency services
6 occurred
7 blocked
8 condition

7 1 blocked
2 force
3 serious
4 lane
5 ambulance
6 cyclist
7 sports
8 skidded

Unit 32

1 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 B 6 G 7 B 8 G

2 1 effect
2 concentrate
3 fell
4 tips
5 ahead
6 prepared
7 close
8 kept

3 *possible answers, from Hungary*:
1 The tips are useful. I don't drive yet, but it is good to know about these things.
2 It's generally 50km per hour.
3 Mostly yes. If they don't, the police will fine them.
4 People change their summer tyres to winter ones. This is how they prepare for snow and ice on the roads. They also use antifreeze to protect their car and have an ice scraper ready for frosty mornings. Those going to ski in Austria also keep snow chains in the boot of their car.
5 Using their mobile phones while driving can lead to serious accidents. It can also cause problems if drivers are very tired and haven't slept enough.

4 1 speeding
2 driving licence
3 Both **do up** and **fasten** are correct.
4 insurance
5 signalled
6 ended up
7 Both **luckily** and **fortunately** are correct.
8 damaged
9 a fine
10 luck

5 1 **took** the driving test
2 **red** light
3 **failed** the test
4 **passed** and got
5 **licence**. I bought
6 **insurance** to protect
7 **fasten / do up** the seat belt
8 **signal** to turn
9 **damage** to the passenger door
10 **ended** up
11 **fix** some of the faults.

Unit 33

1 1 office
2 traffic
3 express
4 station
5 machine
6 in
7 trip
8 stopping
9 travel
10 pass
11 travel

2 1 ticket machine
2 main stations
3 service
4 journey
5 travel
6 bus pass
7 catch; miss
8 traffic jam

3 1 rail
2 journey
3 change
4 ticket/booking
5 time
6 missed
7 destination
8 travelling

4 1 B
2 G
3 B
4 G
5 B
6 G
7 B
8 B
9 G
10 B

5 1 due
2 connection
3 held up / delayed
4 cancelled
5 commute
6 get
7 pick; up
8 warning
9 delay / hold-up
10 broke down

6 *possible answers*:
1 F – I live in Switzerland, and they are very rarely cancelled.
2 F – No, I don't often get held up.
3 T – Yes, I've missed connections once or twice.
4 That's true.
5 That's true.
6 That's true. I was delayed for a whole day once when travelling by train in India. There was a problem with the train.

Unit 34

1 1 S
2 S
3 D
4 D in British English, but the same in American English
5 S
6 S

2 **IN THE AIRPORT BUILDING**: check-in, queue, departure lounge, arrivals
IN OR ON THE PLANE: be airsick, wing, take-off, cabin, landing

3 1 checked in
2 throughout
3 airfare
4 departure lounge
5 took off
6 on schedule
7 arrivals
8 queued
9 departure
10 schedule

4 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I do.
2 It depends. The queues are very long in the holidays.
3 I have a coffee, check my messages or listen to music.
4 I don't like either very much.
5 I prefer to sit near the wing, but I don't know why.
6 No, I like to get up sometimes.
7 No, fortunately not.
8 No, we were delayed for about four hours because of bad weather.
9 No, I haven't, and it's not something I'm very keen to do.

5 1 access
2 private
3 advantage
4 pleasure
5 standard
6 economy
7 business
8 entertainment
9 luxury
10 disadvantage

6 1 private
2 entertainment
3 experienced
4 afford
5 access
6 pleasure
7 advantage
8 standard

7 1 experiences
2 standard
3 access
4 pleasure
5 board
6 luxury/experience

8 *possible answers*:
1 I haven't had many interesting experiences, but I once sat next to Ryan Gosling on a flight.
2 No, not really. The service is often slow.
3 That's true.
4 That's not true. I love flying and think it's very exciting.
5 That's true.
6 That's not true. My uncle once took me on a flight to Switzerland, and we went first class. I normally fly economy class.

Unit 35

1 1 indoors
2 backpack
3 campsite
4 level
5 outdoor
6 camping
7 countryside
8 facilities
9 indoor
10 outdoors

2 1 sure
2 level
3 facilities
4 camping
5 case
6 indoors
7 outdoor
8 hiked

3 1 countryside
2 campsite
3 facilities
4 put
5 tent
6 unless
7 hike
8 backpack

4 1 S
2 D
3 S
4 D
5 D
6 S

5 1 T
2 F – A break is a short holiday.
3 F – A police station is not usually one of the sights in places people go to on holiday. One of the sights might be a castle, a beautiful view from a hill, etc.
4 T
5 F – If a place is remote, there aren't many people there at all.
6 T
7 T
8 F – If you head home, you are going towards home.

6 1 **sunbathing** at the seaside
2 more **remote** location
3 **make** a reservation
4 the **sights** in a new city
5 **seaside** holiday
6 a weekend **break**
7 look **forward** to
8 turn **out**

7 *possible answers:*
1 Not really. I go very red and burn.
2 I prefer a town where I can see the sights, go to restaurants, etc.
3 Yes, I generally make a reservation to be safe.
4 Yes, I love museums, galleries, architecture, etc.
5 I like being at the seaside, but I prefer to sit in cafés and in the shade.
6 Yes, I do. I prefer to do that often, rather than have a long holiday.
7 I don't enjoy travelling very much – it makes me nervous.
8 Yes, they do. I don't like unpleasant surprises!

Unit 36

1 1 participate
2 apologize
3 concentrate
4 succeed
5 benefit
6 disagree
7 compare
8 prevent
9 complain
10 apply
11 rely

2 1 with
2 on
3 about
4 in
5 on
6 of
7 about
8 in
9 of

3 1 with
2 about
3 from
4 to
5 for
6 about
7 to
8 in
9 of
10 from
11 on
12 in

4 1 apply for
2 rely/depend on
3 apologize for
4 vote for
5 prevented us from
6 agree with
7 care about
8 tastes/tasted of
9 complained to

5 *possible answers:*
1 on my best friend quite a lot because he organizes most of my social life for me.
2 about food in restaurants, and also service in shops.
3 for anyone who thinks that climate change isn't happening.
4 about people I knew at school years ago.
5 about what TV programme they want to watch.
6 for forgetting things, like other people's birthdays.
7 about the future and whether I'll be happy.
8 with my friends when we discuss football.
9 on my parents – I want to be independent.

Unit 37

1 alternative
advantage
experience
connection
poverty
disadvantage (In the phrase 'advantages and disadvantages', *dis-* is often stressed: disadvantage.)

2 1 for
2 of
3 for
4 of
5 between
6 about
7 to
8 in

3 1 rise in
2 disadvantage of
3 doubts about
4 respect for
5 experience of
6 cause of
7 alternative to
8 connection between

4 *possible answers:*
1 I like the idea of people who commit minor crimes being asked to do work for the community as an alternative to prison.
2 I think teenagers need to have some limited experience of working. It's good for them to see life in the adult world.
3 I think it's a good thing. Women should be equal to men in the top jobs.
4 The advantages are the services (hospitals, schools, transport, etc.), which are generally better.
5 I think they should have a lot of respect for older people, who have a lot to offer.
6 We need the roads to be better, not more of them.
7 The connection is very strong in my country. Drug users need money for their drugs, and they sometimes steal to get it. Organized crime is a big problem in society.
8 The main causes of poverty in my country are inequality and a lack of education.
9 Yes, I'm worried that some food is not grown organically (naturally), and we don't know what that will do to our health in the future.

Unit 38

1 in time, in the meantime, at times, for ages, for a while, at last, in a hurry

2 1 time
2 long
3 while; meantime
4 last
5 hurry
6 ages

3 1 in time
2 on time
3 for ages
4 for long
5 At the time
6 at last
7 for a while
8 by the time
9 in the meantime / meanwhile

Unit 39

1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 S 7 S

2 **with**: something wrong, angry, fed up, pleased
to: similar, rude, grateful, polite
of: tired, aware, scared, jealous, proud

3 1 Is he aware of the problem?
2 I'm fed up with writing essays.
3 Sophia is jealous of her younger sister.
4 He's not involved in marketing now.
5 Egypt is famous for the pyramids.
6 I wasn't prepared for the exam.

4 1 about
2 in
3 of
4 in
5 in
6 of
7 on
8 of
9 about
10 for

5 1 proud
2 similar
3 frightened/scared
4 fed up
5 wrong
6 grateful
7 jealous
8 pleased

6 *possible answers*:

I'm very grateful to my parents for everything they've done for me.

I get fed up with all the rubbish on the streets.

I'm proud of my older brother. He's just passed his driving test at the fifth attempt.

I'm bored with my maths homework.

I'm usually polite to everyone.

At the moment I'm worried about my English exam next week.

Unit 40

1 1 S
2 S
3 D
4 S
5 D
6 D
7 D
8 S

2 1 for
2 On
3 over
4 at; from
5 in
6 in
7 in
8 on
9 for

3 1 In general / On the whole
2 for life
3 for free
4 at risk / in danger
5 on the street(s)
6 in public
7 In general / On the whole
8 In recent years / In general / On the whole

4 *possible answers*:

I hate people arguing in public and I never do it myself.

I think if they are happy, they should.

I go for a run nearly every morning and I do breathing exercises every day.

We should put pressure on the government to help them with education, social housing and mental health support.

Yes, I do that anyway.

No, I think things have got a lot worse, both economically and politically.

Yes, I think so. Everyone knows about the danger of plastic today.

Yes, I think they can be.

Yes, I do!

5 by chance, on earth, by mistake, at least, in detail, on average, in particular, in that case

6 1 at least
2 in particular
3 by chance
4 At the end
5 in the way
6 On average
7 on the/my way

7 1 A taxi will be very expensive. ~ OK, **in that case**, let's take the bus.
2 I picked up Ben's scarf **by mistake** because it looked very similar to mine.
3 We met Maxine **by chance** when we were on holiday in Rome. It was a strange coincidence.
4 What **on earth** is that man doing with a box over his head?
5 We spent ages waiting for the box office to open, and **in the end** we went home.
6 My parents want to know about the party **in detail**. I hope you can remember what happened!

Unit 41

1 1 pot
2 coal
3 remote control
4 owl
5 cotton
6 comb
7 shawl
8 shampoo

2 1 creature
2 material
3 device
4 substance
5 object/thing
6 stuff
7 container

3 *wrong answers*:
1 children
2 bee
3 tree
4 spoon
5 towel
6 bag
7 melon

4 1 Soap is a substance you use to wash (yourself) with / Soap is stuff you …
2 A snake is a long, thin creature with no legs.
3 A tin is a metal container for food and drinks.
4 A hairdryer is an electrical device for drying your hair.
5 A fork is an object / a thing you use to pick up and eat food.
6 Denim is a material which is used to make jeans.

5 1 D (in British English)
2 D
3 S
4 S
5 D
6 D
7 S
8 D

6 1 boot
2 stone
3 metal
4 woollen
5 pipe
6 silver
7 statue
8 fork
9 gold
10 wooden

7 1 leather
2 stone; brick; wood
3 wood; metal
4 rubber
5 iron; steel; stone; bricks
6 gold; silver
7 cardboard; wood

8 *possible answers*:

My phone is made of metal and plastic, the carpet is made of wool, my pen is made of plastic and metal, the house wall is made of stone, my ring is made of gold, my shoes and handbag are made of leather, the bottom of my shoes are made of rubber, and my jumper is woollen.

Unit 42

1
1 needle
2 string
3 hammer
4 scissors
5 drill
6 rope
7 hole
8 cotton
9 glue

2
1 needle
2 scissors
3 rope
4 a hammer
5 a drill
6 tape
7 cotton
8 bang

3
1 tools
2 scissors; pins; sew; cotton
3 stick; glue
4 rope
5 hole
6 bang; nail
7 together; string
8 hang

4 *possible answers*:

I like sewing, so I've got needles, pins, scissors and cotton. I use tape and glue when I'm working in the study or if I break anything, like a bowl or cup. I haven't got a drill, but I have got a hammer and some nails. I've always got string to tie things together, but not rope.

5 wipe, dust, dirt, mess, fix, cloth, mend, properly, mud, repair

6
1 come and **fix/repair/mend** it
2 there's **mud/dirt** all over
3 get **rid** of it
4 what is **wrong** with
5 to **wipe** the cupboards
6 isn't **working** properly
7 to **repair/mend** the hole
8 **tidy** up, please

7
1 mess
2 tidy
3 dust/dirt
4 dirt/dust
5 rid
6 decorate
7 wrong
8 repaired/fixed/mended
9 properly
10 fix/mend/repair

Unit 43

1
1 property / entrance; property / entrance
2 balcony / garage
3 cottage / jam
4 cottage / impressive
5 ceiling / lead; ceiling / lead
6 face / historic

2
1 leads
2 cottage
3 garage
4 entrance
5 moving
6 onto
7 faces
8 historic

3
1 property
2 historic
3 ceilings
4 face
5 impressive
6 setting

4 *possible answers*:
1 I live in a house which was built in 1960. There are no other houses nearby.
2 No, it's not old. I used to live in a historic building, but it needed a lot of work.
3 Yes, it does, and it's very light.
4 It faces a valley and one or two farm buildings.
5 It has a lovely garden, and the kitchen is very big and bright.
6 Yes, the countryside is very near me, and the setting is beautiful.

5 block of flats, waste ground, leisure centre, shopping mall, office block, power plant, retail store

6
1 locate
2 commercial
3 mall / shopping mall
4 addition
5 residents
6 block
7 retail store
8 town hall
9 heating

7
1 leisure centre, waste ground, shopping mall, town hall, retail stores
2 apartment
3 residents

8 *possible answers*:
1 We don't have a power plant near the town. There's an area of waste ground near the river where the council wants to build some new houses. There's a big leisure centre and a small shopping mall. The town hall is in the centre of town, and there are hundreds of retail stores.
2 No, I don't live in an apartment block now, but I used to live in one about twenty years ago.
3 There were only about ten residents in my block.

Unit 44

1
1 Put the plant in the ~~boil~~ soil
2 She's planted a ~~bow~~ row
3 You can support the plants with little ~~stocks~~ sticks
4 Could you ~~pack~~ pick
5 We walked along the ~~bath~~ path
6 Did you ~~plane~~ plant
7 She put a ~~lager~~ layer
8 I need a couple of ~~pets~~ pots

2
1 No, plants are bigger than seeds. / Seeds are smaller than plants.
2 No, sticks can support your plants.
3 No, leaves grow above the ground.
4 No, you plant seeds in layers of soil.
5 No, you pick flowers, fruit and vegetables when they've grown.
6 No, the edge of a table is on the outside.
7 No, a path in a garden is where you walk.

Unit 45

1
1 point
2 square
3 curve
4 diamond-shaped
5 round
6 rectangle
7 pointed
8 chart
9 triangle
10 diagram
11 shell-shaped

2 1 round
2 rectangular
3 circle
4 curved/round
5 square
6 point
7 diagram; chart
8 angles
9 shapes
10 triangular

3 1 a straight path
2 a triangular road sign
3 a curved needle
4 shell-shaped pasta / pasta in the shape of shells
5 a pointed toe (of a shoe) / a pointed shoe
6 a rectangular box / a box in the shape of a rectangle

Unit 46

1 1 ignore
2 scene
3 relaxing
4 impression
5 sense
6 shocking
7 industrial

2 1 Five.
2 In the background/ distance.
3 On the bank of the river. / On the river.
4 Yes, they are.
5 Bright.
6 Peaceful.
7 Ordinary.
8 No, there aren't any.

3 1 work
2 feeling
3 don't
4 picture
5 light
6 factories
7 artist, photographer, etc.
8 nobody

4 1 industrial
2 background
3 heat
4 peace
5 just
6 impression
7 gentleman
8 shocking

5 1 peace
2 foreground
3 background
4 distance
5 just
6 ignoring
7 ordinary
8 rest
9 off

6 *possible answers*:
1 Vassily Kandinsky.
2 Yes, in 1911.
3 It's an abstract painting and has lots of amazing shapes, patterns and colours.
4 I like the many different ways I can interpret it, depending on my mood. I also like the colours.

Unit 47

1 1 listen to
2 smell
3 hear
4 sound like
5 touch
6 press
7 see
8 feel
9 watch
10 feel

2 1 press
2 can; sounds
3 looking
4 touch
5 looked
6 tasted
7 listen
8 smell
9 looks
10 feels

3 1 looks dirty
2 sounded tired
3 tastes (very/too) sweet
4 felt wet/damp OR it smelled horrible, etc.
5 look clean
6 felt cold
7 smells wonderful/great/lovely, etc.
8 sounded easy

4 *possible answers*:
1 like an accident. OR as if/though somebody has dropped something.
2 as if/though she has fallen over.
3 as if/though they're having an argument. OR like an argument.
4 as if/though they're going to lose.
5 like a good idea. OR as if/though it's going to be fun.
6 as if/though he might jump. OR as if/though he's repairing/painting it.

5 *possible answers*:
1 I look like my father, but not my mother.
2 Yes, my sister and I look very similar / look like each other.
3 Yes, I do.
4 No, not usually.
5 I feel nervous before going on a long journey.
6 Yes, I love the taste of garlic.
7 Yes, I do. I love that smell.
8 Yes, generally I feel quite positive about the future.

Unit 48

1 steal, send, commit

2 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D 7 S

3 1 committed
2 criminal
3 legal
4 stole
5 property
6 prisoners
7 act
8 serious; prison/jail
9 minor; against
10 broken
11 killings
12 fine

4 *The following are wrong*:
1 murder
2 parking
3 break in
4 burglary and theft
5 robbery

5 1 T
2 F – You stab someone with a **knife**.
3 T
4 T
5 F – You **rob** a bank.
6 T
7 F – You shoot someone with a **gun**.

6 1 broke; stole; stabbed
2 criminal; theft
3 robbed/attacked; shoot (*also possible*: murder/kill)
4 murdering (*also possible*: killing); shot
5 burglar
6 robbed
7 Theft; assaults
8 robbery/theft

Unit 49

1 1 The police
2 The person that the police believe is responsible for the crime.
3 The police
4 The victim
5 The witness or witnesses
6 The victim
7 The person the police believe is responsible for the crime.
8 The person that the police believe is responsible for the crime.

2 1 report
2 Victims
3 investigate
4 took place
5 arrest
6 evidence
7 charge
8 court

3 1 reported
2 prove
3 charged
4 caught; arrested
5 investigation
6 witnesses
7 victims; taken
8 court

4 1 T
2 T
3 F – The jury determines whether the person is guilty or not.
4 T
5 F – If the person is innocent, they will go free. / If the person is guilty, they may go to prison.
6 F – The judge decides the punishment.

5 2 h
3 g
4 e
5 b
6 d
7 f
8 a
9 i

6 1 court; tried
2 punishment
3 examined
4 witness
5 whether
6 jury; determine; guilty
7 purpose
8 trial; judge

Unit 50

1 breathing difficulty, mental illness, suffer from asthma, allergic to certain types of food, various illnesses, treat a sick patient

2 1 allergy
2 breathing
3 various
4 disease
5 young
6 issue/difficulty
7 treat; variety
8 allergic

3 1 breathing
2 difficulty
3 treated
4 disease
5 suffered
6 mental
7 various
8 treatment
9 illness

4 save money, as soon as possible, care for the elderly, limit what we spend, an ageing population, old age

5 1 carer
2 economic
3 strength
4 Fitness
5 equally
6 working
7 possibly

6 1 ageing
2 possible
3 elderly
4 care
5 age
6 fit; long
7 tax, limit

7 *possible answers:*
1 Yes, we also have a problem with an ageing population in my country.
2 No, I'd like to stop work when I'm sixty if possible.
3 Yes, sadly I think that's true.
4 That's sometimes true, but often they don't live near their parents, so they have to pay for care.
5 That's not true. You have time to do what you want, and you have a lot to give to younger generations. You also get pleasure from different things in life, especially nature.
6 I try to do that.
7 Yes, I agree with that. I'll be old one day.

Unit 51

1 1 T
2 T
3 F – Only one person can be elected in each area.
4 F – Parliament and the government are not the same thing. Some members of parliament are in the government, but some are not.
5 T
6 F – The party with the majority of elected MPs usually forms the government.

2 1 hold
2 elected
3 power
4 vote
5 MPs / Members of Parliament / politicians
6 votes; majority
7 political parties
8 represent
9 system

3 1 In South Korea, elections are held every four years for the National Assembly and every five years to elect the president.
2 At the moment, Moon Jae-in is the President, and the largest party in the National Assembly is the Democratic Party of Korea.
3 Moon Jae-in, of the Democratic Party, has been in power since 2017; and Chung Sye-kyun, also of the Democratic Party, has been the Prime Minister since January, 2020.
4 Lee Hae-chan is the Leader of the Democratic Party of Korea.
5 There are 300 members of the National Assembly.

4 1 public
2 do it
3 keep them safe
4 give it your attention
5 live in
6 suggest
7 want
8 a plan agreed by a group

5 1 announcement
2 focus
3 on
4 objective
5 infinitive
6 for

6 1 policy; announce
2 immigrants
3 persuade
4 measures
5 aim
6 due
7 focus; need
8 protection

Unit 52

1 1 d 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 g 6 c

2
1 enemy/enemies
2 leader
3 bomb
4 soldier
5 weapons
6 explode

3
1 firing
2 army
3 bomb; explosion
4 battle/fight; injured
5 leader; escape
6 control; enemy
7 weapons
8 fought; fighters

4
1 less
2 don't want
3 part
4 try
5 the fighting has not ended
6 sure
7 long
8 made a decision with them

5
1 reached
2 lasting
3 involved
4 fighting
5 talks
6 attempt
7 determined
8 agreement
9 rejects
10 war

6 *possible answers:*
1 agreement
2 attempt
3 ten minutes / an hour / a week, etc.
4 talks
5 offer/help/idea, etc.
6 win / pass the exam / stop smoking / find a solution (almost any positive decision)

Unit 53

1
1 decade OR decade
2 princess OR princess (*Princess* is usually stressed on the first syllable when followed by a name, e.g. Princess Michiko.)
3 republic
4 develop
5 president
6 monarchy
7 available
8 discovery
9 development
10 independence
11 nuclear

2 king/queen; invention/discovery; monarchy/republic; decade/century; nuclear/power

3
1 independent
2 princess
3 republic
4 royal
5 president
6 theory
7 expedition
8 decade
9 challenge
10 power station

4
1 invented; available
2 discovered; challenged
3 royal
4 president
5 Prince; king; ruled
6 independence; independent
7 released
8 development
9 led; expedition
10 nuclear

5
1 theory
2 Queen
3 president
4 decade
5 Princess
6 republic
7 Leader
8 claimed; challenged; claim
9 developed

6 *answers at the time of writing (2019):*
1 Charles Darwin
2 Jordan
3 Barack Obama
4 2010s (2012)
5 She was the wife of Charles, Prince of Wales, the eldest son of Queen Elizabeth II.
6 Russia
7 Kim Jong-un
8 Edmund Hilary
9 Sigmund Freud

Unit 54

1 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B

2
1 T
2 Don't know.
3 T
4 F – Victims are more willing to report crimes.
5 F – Young people get drunk less.
6 F – Young people drink less for a combination of factors.

3
1 trend
2 violence
3 account
4 combination
5 expert
6 consume; drunk
7 fear
8 records
9 enquiry

4
1 compete
2 consequence
3 homeless
4 donation
5 volunteer
6 passionate
7 voluntary
8 society
9 retired

5
1 helps
2 feeling
3 instead
4 nowhere
5 paid
6 result
7 working

6
1 voluntary
2 passion; volunteering
3 raise
4 compete
5 donations
6 donate/give
7 society
8 force

7 *possible answers, from the Czech Republic:*

There are plenty of charities in the Czech Republic. The most famous cancer charities are Dobrý anděl (Good Angel) and Liga proti rakovině (League against Cancer). They raise money on special occasions. For example, on Flower Day every May, volunteers sell bright yellow flowers to support the League. DMS, i.e. donation text messages, have probably become the most popular way of contributing. Of course, you can always send donations to the charities' accounts.

These big charities compete for donations, but they work on a different basis. The League always have a 'topic' of the year – this year it was lung cancer – while Dobrý anděl tell people about concrete cases of people/families who need help because of the illness.

These charities have 'transparent' accounts, which means we can see where the money from our donations goes. And this may be a good solution to the problem described in the text.

Unit 55

1 run, overslept, burst, dealt, set, frozen, grown

2 1 burst
2 overslept
3 frozen
4 sank
5 dealt with
6 sprang out of
7 ran away
8 grew
9 lay
10 alarm

3 sprung; set off; deal with; burst; set

4 *possible answers*:

I never spring out of bed: I get up really slowly.

I've never set off a burglar alarm or fire alarm by mistake, but the fire alarm went off at school once when there was a fire in the kitchen.

I've had to deal with two difficult bosses, one very strange colleague but no difficult students.

Yes, I've burst balloons, but only by accident.

I once set an alarm clock for 6.00 in the evening instead of 6.00 in the morning and missed my plane!

5 1 hidden
2 thrown
3 shaken
4 blown
5 spilt
6 shone
7 bent
8 lit
9 shot
10 laid

6 1 horse
2 cup
3 pencil
4 water
5 boxes
6 fire
7 wall
8 gloves

7 1 led
2 spilt
3 lit
4 bent
5 hid
6 shone
7 tore
8 hung; up
9 blown
10 laid

Unit 56

1 + **infinitive**: agree, offer, manage,
+ ***-ing* form**: give up, imagine, avoid, keep
infinitive or *-ing* form: prefer, like, begin, continue

2 1 pretended
2 admitted
3 consider
4 need
5 risk
6 expected

3 1 intend
2 mind
3 attempted
4 kept
5 refused
6 suggested
7 expect
8 risk

4 1 living
2 to be/become
3 doing
4 going
5 to help
6 to be

5 1 afford
2 fancy
3 pretend
4 tend
5 imagine
6 planning

6 *possible answers*:
1 I managed to pass a Greek exam.
2 I intended to throw away some old stuff in the garage, but I still haven't.
3 I agreed to help a friend with his painting.
4 I refused to cook dinner for my brother two days ago – he's so lazy.
5 I forgot to send a birthday card to Rachel on time, so it arrived two days late.
6 I took up singing recently. I joined a choir and really enjoy it.

Unit 57

1 1 herself
2 themselves
3 himself
4 yourself
5 myself
6 ourselves
7 yourselves

2 1 care
2 cut
3 pay / buy one
4 hurt
5 control
6 behave

3 1 teaching myself / learning by myself
2 pay for myself
3 calm myself
4 looking at myself
5 killing themselves
6 behave themselves

4 *possible answers*:
0 No, I always enjoy myself at parties.
1 That's true.
2 It depends – sometimes I pay for myself, and sometimes I pay for the other person or they pay for me.
3 That's true: I breathe deeply, and I try to do something different, like listening to music or going for a walk.
4 I don't think that's true, except when I'm brushing my hair or getting dressed.
5 Yes, sadly, I think that's true.
6 In my country that's certainly true.

Unit 58

1 1 take
2 bring
3 take
4 Both answers are correct.
5 take
6 takes
7 Both answers are correct.
8 take
9 take

2 *possible answers*:
1 took the bus / took a taxi.
2 took his advice.
3 take milk or sugar?
4 takes (me) fifteen minutes.
5 take them to the staffroom/library/room next door, etc.?
6 took it with him.
7 take two tablets twice a day with food.
8 take size 42, and these are too small.

3 *possible answers*:
1 It takes me 45 minutes.
2 I take milk, but no sugar.
3 I take size 44.
4 I took/did an accountancy exam for my job.
5 I take lots of pictures of interesting trees and my family.
6 I usually take their advice, but they don't give me advice very often.

Unit 59

1 1 collection
2 abstract
3 artist
4 period
5 paintbrush
6 landscape
7 portrait
8 exhibit
9 collector
10 sculpture
11 technique
12 exhibition

2 1 portrait
2 landscape
3 still life
4 frame
5 exhibition
6 collector
7 work of art
8 paintbrush
9 abstract
10 technique

3 1 sculptures
2 range
3 period
4 portrait
5 landscapes
6 still
7 abstract
8 techniques
9 work
10 effect
11 exhibited
12 collection

4 1 d 2 e 3 h 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 g

5 1 moved
2 original
3 image
4 optimistic
5 remember
6 happiness
7 reacted
8 destruction

6 *possible answers*:
1 Picasso's painting called *Guernica* makes me very sad, but art doesn't usually move me to tears.
2 It depends. Some abstract art makes me really think and it moves me, but very dark abstract paintings can be depressing.
3 *The Wedding Dance* by Pieter Bruegel makes me laugh.
4 I have a few original paintings which I bought from a friend of mine. They are of beautiful interiors of buildings with a few people sitting quietly in them. I also have a couple of paintings I did myself. They're not very good, though.

Unit 60

1 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 S

2 **people**: critic, screenwriter, producer

3 1 genre
2 fame
3 critics
4 influenced
5 award
6 content
7 combination
8 cinema
9 combines

4 *possible answer*:
A film I really enjoyed was *Boyhood*, which was made over the 12 years of a young boy's life as he was growing up; the genre is a 'coming of age' movie. The director and screenwriter is Richard Linklater. The script developed during the filming. It won a Golden Globe Award and a British Film Academy Award for Best Film, and the critics loved it.

Unit 61

1 1 local
2 role
3 professional
4 stage
5 wear
6 part in a play

2 1 They put their plays on in a **small local** theatre.
2 It's **an amateur** group.
3 It's a **drama** group.
4 Sam writes **some of** the plays.
5 I **don't do much acting.**
6 I once played a **servant** in a comedy.
7 I help with costume and **stage design.**
8 I take a **small** role in **some of** the plays.

3 1 play
2 role
3 stage
4 costumes
5 leading
6 curtain
7 drama

Unit 62

1 1 S
2 D
3 S
4 D
5 D
6 S
7 S

2 1 organ; organist
2 trumpet; trumpeter
3 cello; cellist
4 drums; drummer
5 saxophone; saxophonist
6 bass guitar; bass guitarist
7 keyboard; keyboard player

3 1 lead; Queen
2 guitarist; Rolling Stones
3 conductor
4 drums; Beatles
5 saxophone
6 trumpet
7 cellist
8 bass; Rolling Stones
9 keyboard
10 trumpeters; record

4 1 Yes
2 Yes
3 No, you see it.
4 Yes
5 Yes
6 No, they like you very much.
7 Yes
8 No, it isn't.
9 Yes
10 Yes

5 1 release
2 well
3 impact
4 recording
5 fans
6 admired
7 fan
8 songwriter
9 live
10 touring
11 impact
12 visual
13 influence
14 alive
15 sadly

Unit 63

1 channel, talk show, documentary, host, guest, soap opera, series, episode, chat show

2 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 b

3 1 episode
2 game
3 chat/talk; guests
4 channel
5 soaps / soap operas
6 hosts
7 drama
8 documentary

4 *possible answers*:

I don't really like soap operas and almost never watch them.

I enjoy documentaries but it depends on the topic: some are not very interesting for me.

I always watch the news at some point in the day, largely from habit.

I don't like game shows at all and never watch them.

I occasionally watch chat shows if I'm interested in the guests.

I really like drama series, and I think there are some excellent ones on TV at the moment.

5 1 of 2 sets 3 in 4 far 5 top

6
1 That programme is a repeat.
2 On top of that, I was too tired to finish watching it.
3 Young people typically prefer online viewing.
4 That programme had five million viewers.
5 I watched a lot of TV in my youth.
6 A lot of people were critical of the programme.

7
1 critical
2 shift
3 lifestyle
4 indicate
5 aged
6 far

Unit 64

1 international, daily, forever, currently, cultural

2
1 S
2 D
3 D
4 S
5 D
6 D
7 S
8 D

3
1 cultural
2 journalist
3 published
4 headline
5 editor
6 daily; version
7 current affairs
8 journals

4 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I read a paper.
2 I mostly read it online.
3 I read a paper every day, but spend more time reading the paper version at weekends.
4 Mostly national news and sport.
5 I hope not, but I think they might.

5
1 If you raise something, it goes higher/up.
2 If somebody commits suicide, they die.
3 If you protest against something, you are unhappy about it.
4 If you claim something, you say it is true (but it may not be).
5 If you retire, you stop working for the rest of your life.
6 If you quit, you leave your job.

6
1 c
2 h
3 i
4 f
5 a
6 e
7 d
8 g

7
1 rate
2 retirement
3 duty
4 quit
5 banned
6 suicide; among
7 spending

8 *possible answers, from Poland*:
1 The birth rate in Poland kept falling until 2004, then it went up for a couple of years, and in the last few years it has been quite stable.
2 Currently, the retirement age is 65 for men and 60 for women. The current government lowered it a year ago, but I think the next government may need to raise it again.
3 The fuel duty keeps going up steadily nowadays.
4 Donald Tusk quit as prime minister of Poland in 2014. He then became the President of the European Union.
5 Restaurants banned smoking a few years ago, and cinemas ask people to turn their mobile phones off.
6 Yes, it's true that suicide is more common in Poland now. Psychologists say it's because of stress, anxiety and bullying, e.g. on social media of young people's peers.
7 Many people agree public spending on the health service in Poland is not sufficient. There aren't enough medical staff as they don't earn satisfactory salaries and so they emigrate to richer countries where the pay is better. There are also long queues for patients waiting to be diagnosed with specialist equipment and waiting to be operated on.

Unit 65

1 1 **Fiction**: sci-fi, ghost stories, historical novel (sometimes based on real people and events but not true stories), crime stories
Non-fiction: reference book, biography, autobiography

2
1 ghost/crime
2 poetry/poems
3 reference/non-fiction
4 pleasure
5 mystery
6 alphabet
7 biography
8 poets
9 alphabetical
10 published

3 *possible answers, from Hungary*:
1 I read both but I prefer fiction. Stories are good to escape from your everyday life.
2 I have to read a lot for work, but when I have some free time I love reading for pleasure.
3 Poetry reminds me of school so I prefer the other two. If I had to choose, I would read sci-fi as murder mysteries are sometimes too obvious and too easy to solve.
4 Not very often. I have always liked history so when I read, I prefer reading historical novels, e.g. war novels like *Catch-22* or *Birdsong*.
5 I love reading about my favourite artists or sportspeople. I have read the autobiography of Katinka Hosszú, whose nickname is The Iron Lady.
6 No, I don't, but the files on my laptop are in alphabetical order.

4 attract, attention, chapter, original, narrative, summary, summarize, recommendation

5
1 attention
2 title
3 original
4 theme
5 chapters
6 well
7 cover

6 1 narrative
2 theme
3 plot
4 chapter
5 cover
6 known
7 recommendation
8 survey

7 *possible answers*:
1 That's true – I often read fast-moving books.
2 No, I never read anything where the main theme is war.
3 That's sometimes true, but I'm also very interested in the characters and their relationships.
4 If I don't like a book, I usually read about 100 pages before I give up.
5 That's definitely true.
6 That's not true because I often read books by authors who aren't well known but have been recommended to me by a friend.
7 I think that's true, but it depends on the friend!
8 That's generally true.

Unit 66

1 1 weightlifting
2 cycling
3 gymnastics
4 fencing
5 athletics

2 1 figures
2 record
3 race/medal
4 Professionals
5 take part / participate
6 takes place
7 holds/broke
8 competitor

3 1 figures
2 compete
3 record
4 competitors; professionals
5 race
6 medal; competition
7 broke; coached
8 competitive
9 amateurs
10 competed / took part / participated

4 host, qualification, championship, nation

5 1 The first **host** nation was Uruguay.
2 The first **tournament** was held in 1930.
3 Thirteen different **nations** took part in the first tournament.
4 Every country has to qualify, **except for** the host nation.
5 Thirty-two teams have competed in **recent** championships.
6 Brazil has won the **final** five times, and therefore the championship.
7 The **champions** in 2018 were France.
8 The winners receive a large **cup**.

6 1 Cup; held; nations/teams
2 champions; final
3 tournaments/championships (*also possible*: competitions)
4 Currently; qualified
5 host; tournament/championship (*also possible*: competitions)

Unit 67

1 1 tennis player
2 golfer
3 athlete
4 boxer
5 (motor) racing driver
6 rugby player
7 skier
8 gymnast

2 1 a referee
2 a goalkeeper
3 a racing driver
4 a linesman
5 a hockey player
6 supporters/fans
7 a tennis player
8 rugby players

3 1 helmet
2 whistle
3 stick
4 waving; flag
5 shouting
6 net
7 racket
8 bat

4 1 length
2 width
3 maximum
4 depth
5 worldwide
6 so

5 1 pool; long; wide; minimum depth
2 stadium; spectators
3 worldwide; court
4 stadium; therefore; covered

6 1 football; Madrid (Spain)
2 Wimbledon (England); tennis
3 football; London (England)
4 Italy; Germany; motor racing
5 football; Turin (Italy)

Unit 68

1 **beauty**: bury, contest
occasion: religion
approach: parade
celebration: entertainment
festival: neighbourhood, celebrate

2 1 Yes
2 No
3 No
4 No
5 Yes
6 No
7 No
8 Yes

3 1 c
2 f
3 g
4 d
5 h
6 a
7 b

4 1 buried
2 celebration
3 dress up
4 ceremony
5 approach
6 neighbourhood/community
7 entertainment
8 community

5 1 site
2 occasion
3 costume
4 folk(s)
5 a lot
6 God
7 celebrate
8 buried

6 1 neighbourhood
2 dressed up
3 dancers
4 occasions; fireworks
5 mean

7 *possible answers, from Argentina*:
1 There are many festivals in my city, but there's one in my neighbourhood that I really like. It's the Annual Tango Festival, and it usually takes place in August every year. People from all over the world come to see dance contests and concerts.
2 I've never dressed up for a festival, but I've always liked traditional costumes!
3 In the Annual Tango Festival there are performances by professional dancers and musicians.
4 There are no fireworks at the Tango Festival! Sometimes there are fireworks on Independence Day and New Year's Eve.
5 Personally, the Tango Festival means a lot to me because it's a celebration of part of my cultural heritage.

Unit 69

1
1 login
2 hardware
3 username
4 data
5 app
6 freeze
7 stored

2
1 log in
2 data
3 engine
4 network
5 log off
6 app
7 images

3
1 software; images
2 search
3 username
4 FAQ
5 log out (*also possible*: log off)
6 apps/applications

4 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I do. I like playing around with images.
2 I tend to use Google a lot.
3 No, I've got a lot of different usernames and I can never remember them!
4 Yes, I do, especially for health websites.
5 Yes, I do – it's very important for security, I think.
6 I use the weather app, the BBC app, WhatsApp and Facebook.

5
1 S
2 S
3 D
4 D
5 S
6 D
7 S

6
1 mouse
2 charge it / plug it in
3 power/energy
4 delete/remove
5 download

7
1 low; charge; plug; charger
2 connected; supply
3 Wi-Fi
4 batteries, wireless
5 download
6 deleted
7 is running; update
8 start

Unit 70

1
1 S
2 S
3 D
4 S
5 S
6 D in British English

2
1 inbox
2 attachment
3 link
4 all
5 forward
6 junk; delete
7 replied
8 folders

3 *possible answers*:
1 I often send documents to do with work to my customers. I send photos to my friends and family quite often.
2 No, I don't delete messages very often – only junk mail.
3 It isn't completely full, but I always forget to empty it.
4 About 10.
5 Yes, often. I'm in a group of friends, and we often forward messages, especially if there are photos or interesting news items.

4
1 S
2 D
3 S
4 S
5 S
6 D
7 S

5
1 social
2 contact
3 networking
4 selfie
5 profile
6 post
7 instantly/immediately
8 share
9 blog
10 tweet
11 promote

6 I use social media all the time – several times a day, in fact. This is mainly to keep in touch with my friends.

I've never written a blog.

I quite often share photos online for my friends to see – not of myself, but of places I've been to, or interesting meals in restaurants.

Yes, I connect with my sister and cousins all the time on social media, mainly through WhatsApp.

I've never taken a selfie.

I've written a very short profile; I don't want to give too much information about myself online.

I don't have a business to promote.

Unit 71

1 unreliable

2
1 unnecessary
2 unlocked
3 unreliable
4 unfair
5 unlucky
6 unsuitable

3
1 unreliable
2 unable
3 unfair
4 unfit
5 unlikely
6 unsuitable
7 unnecessary
8 unplug
9 unlock

4 ***un-***: unkind, unfriendly, unexpected, unusual, unpopular; BUT impolite, impractical and impatient (Adjectives beginning with *p-* quite often form opposites with the prefix *im-*.)

5
1 R
2 W; dishonest
3 R
4 R
5 W; illegal
6 R
7 W; illegible

6
1 disagree
2 retake
3 reappear
4 dishonest
5 illegible
6 disorganized
7 irregular
8 illegal

7
1 irregular
2 dishonest
3 rearrange
4 illegal
5 disagree
6 retake

8 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, there are a lot of irregular verbs in Spanish.
2 Yes, I think so.
3 Yes, I do it sometimes if I've decorated the room, or when I feel like a change.
4 Yes, it's illegal, but quite a lot of people do it.
5 No, not really. I have similar views to most of my friends.
6 Yes, it is.

questions at the top:

It's illegal to ride a motorbike without a crash helmet.

Yes, I think it is.

Yes, it does. It's very important for lawyers to be well organized.

Sometimes. It depends how strongly I feel about the subject – and how much I like the person!

Yes, you can.

Yes, but only in unusual circumstances. If someone is being very aggressive and rude to me, I might be impolite to them, but that hardly ever happens.

I'm not sure. Doctors use computers so much these days. Maybe their handwriting is less important than it was in the past.

Yes, it's just a question of sitting down and learning them.

I often reuse plastic water bottles, and I recycle them if they're very old.

Unit 72

1 1 D 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D

2 1 knowledge
2 improvement
3 conclusion
4 attraction
5 confusion
6 prayer
7 quotation/quote
8 encouragement

3 1 quoting
2 feel
3 confused
4 prayer
5 reached; improvements
6 breathe
7 knowledge

4 1 G
2 G
3 G
4 G
5 B
6 G
7 B
8 B
9 G

5 1 powerful; powerless
2 creamy
3 fashionable
4 practical
5 various
6 central
7 shiny

6 1 industrial
2 economical (*also possible*: practical)
3 fashionable
4 creamy
5 humorous
6 powerless
7 various
8 valuable (*also possible*: practical)

7 ***-al***: natural, emotional, musical;
-able: drinkable, reliable; **BUT** healthy

Unit 73

1 1 as a result
2 Since
3 due to
4 so
5 as well
6 As
7 but also
8 In addition

2 **ADDITION**: as well; but also
REASON: due to; since; as
RESULT: as a result; so

3 1 close (early) / stay closed
2 she couldn't / wasn't able to
3 was horrible/disgusting/terrible
4 didn't have
5 get in / open the door
6 they're not (very)
7 the room was / I was
8 won't be able to / can't
9 clauses

4 1 e
2 i
3 b
4 c
5 d
6 f
7 a
8 h

5 1 despite
2 However
3 spite
4 although/though / even though
5 In; still
6 even
7 that

6 *possible answers*:
1 he still loved/liked her.
2 she is careful with it / doesn't spend much.
3 the other, it wasn't very good/clean; it was noisy/dirty, etc.
4 I don't think I'll get it / I haven't got enough experience for it.
5 she's still quite cheerful / there's a good chance she'll get better.
6 the delays on the roads / the bad weather / the fog.
7 had a bad accident / doesn't like driving at night.

Unit 74

1 1 F – If you are required to do something, you **have** to do it.
2 T
3 F – Secondary school continues up to at least **16** for everyone.
4 T
5 F – There are usually **three** terms in a school year.
6 F – A lunch break is **sometimes** an hour (45 minutes to an hour).
7 T
8 F – The teacher sets homework for the students. / The students do the homework that the teacher sets.
9 F – Schools in Britain can be state or private schools.

2 1 attend
2 primary
3 secondary; state; private
4 last
5 staff
6 set (*also possible*: give)
7 head
8 deputy
9 carry on / continue

3 *possible answers, from Iran*:
0 In Iran, we had three terms a year in primary school, and two terms a year in middle school and high school.
1 You are required to attend school in Iran from the age of seven.
2 I was five when I started primary education.
3 When I was twelve years old, I started secondary school. You didn't have to pay: it was a state school, not a private school.
4 Most lessons last about one and a half hours.
5 There were about 50 members of staff at my school.
6 In secondary school, the teachers used to set us lots of homework.
7 We never saw the head teacher very much, because he was always very busy.

8 It was the head teacher's deputy who was responsible for the school rules. In Iran, if a student breaks the rules it is very common for his/her parents to be summoned to the school, which is so embarrassing for the student.
9 I wanted to carry on at school after the age of 16 and go to university, so I didn't leave.

4 1 Yes
2 No
3 Yes
4 Yes
5 No
6 Yes

5 1 (You have to) follow his instructions.
2 Don't communicate with anyone.
3 Your attitude is important.
4 I was relieved to finish the exam.
5 Don't waste (your) time.
6 He wouldn't cheat. / He isn't a cheat.
7 I was pleased when the exam was over.
8 Are dictionaries essential?
9 We had a written test.

6 1 attitude
2 instructions
3 cheat
4 planning
5 essential
6 waste
7 relief

Unit 75

1 1 D
2 S
3 S
4 D
5 S
6 D
7 D
8 S

2 tutor, undergraduate, researcher, lecturer, a graduate

3 1 c
2 a
3 f
4 h
5 g
6 e
7 b

4 1 an undergraduate
2 seminar
3 campus
4 thesis
5 tutor
6 university
7 a postgraduate
8 laboratories
9 educated

5 1 education
2 undergraduate
3 degree
4 seminars
5 tutor
6 academic
7 graduate
8 graduates
9 research
10 thesis

6 *possible answers, from India:*
1 Most degrees in India take three years to complete.
2 Medical degrees usually take the longest time to complete.
3 Yes, many students go on to pursue higher education after they leave school.
4 If a student moves out of his town to study in a particular institution, they may choose to live on campus.
5 Yes, many students go on to do postgraduate degrees.
6 Yes, universities often hold conferences.

Unit 76

1 see: campus, accustomed, importance, assignment
shoe: tuition, accommodation
zoo: fees, revise, reason

2 1 used
2 by myself / alone
3 iron
4 accommodation
5 take out a loan
6 for this reason
7 tend to
8 campus

3 1 part-**time** job
2 the importance **of** revision
3 arrive **on** time
4 away **from** home
5 used **to** studying
6 there **on** my own
7 brothers **at** university
8 tend **to** study
9 Could you **iron**

4 1 rent
2 payment
3 on time
4 tend
5 revision
6 manage
7 freedom
8 take out
9 importance

5 1 away
2 accommodation
3 campus
4 fees
5 loans
6 part-time
7 used

6 *possible answers, from China:*
1 In my country, China, university students usually live at home.
2 Not many students choose to live in student accommodation.
3 Students live in town. The campuses are not far away from the town. Some campuses are in the town.
4 Students need to pay tuition fees.
5 Some students have to take out loans to pay the bills.
6 Many students get part-time jobs to help pay the bills and tuition fees.
7 Students are often used to working on their own.

Unit 77

1 1 F – An estate agent sells homes. / A travel agent sells holidays.
2 T
3 F – An importer imports goods to sell, and an exporter exports goods.
4 T
5 T
6 F – A mechanic repairs engines in cars.
7 T
8 F – A postman delivers letters and packages.
9 F – An exporter exports goods/products from their own country to another country.
10 T

2 1 living
2 estate
3 hairdresser
4 agent
5 delivered
6 imports
7 engine (*also possible*: car)
8 priest
9 pharmacist/chemist
10 importer
11 agency
12 photography

3 *possible answers:*

a hairdresser, a mechanic, an estate agent, a travel agent, sailor

a postman/postwoman probably don't need a lot of training.

a photographer, and sometimes a hairdresser

I would be most interested in being a pharmacist, or even a priest.

4 deal with requests, be in charge of the keys, be responsible for the bookings, greet somebody

5 1 complained
2 dealt
3 duties
4 charge
5 involve
6 responsible
7 emergency
8 hired

6 1 involves
2 duty
3 deal
4 responsible
5 sure
6 complaints

Unit 78

1 1 benefits
2 cake
3 computer systems
4 Teaching
5 Elementary
6 A university degree
7 navy
8 field

2 1 career/job
2 air force
3 structure
4 serve
5 benefits
6 advanced
7 technical
8 skills
9 qualifications

3 *possible answers*:
1 Personally, I wouldn't like a career in the armed forces.
2 If I were in the forces, I think I'd prefer to be in the navy because I like being at sea.
3 I have a university degree.
4 I'd like to have a law degree, then I could have a different career.
5 Yes, I'd like to be able to play a musical instrument, and I'd like to speak more languages.
6 It's not easy, but I'd prefer to work in different fields if possible. That seems more interesting to me.

4 1 D
2 S
3 S
4 S
5 D
6 S
7 S

5 1 G
2 B
3 not sure
4 B
5 It's probably bad news if they were forced to retire.
6 G
7 It's probably bad news as it is a less senior job.
8 G

6 1 appointed
2 managed
3 occupation
4 unemployed
5 remain
6 assistant
7 diploma
8 retired
9 unemployment
10 CV / Curriculum Vitae

Unit 79

1 1 application, selection, confirmation, request, contact

2 1 They say they will contact ~~to~~ me.
2 Have you got a work **permit**?
3 I got the job on the **basis** of my qualifications.
4 He gave me some good **advice**.
5 I have to **confirm** it in writing.
6 They said I must **choose** the best one.
7 He **gave** me some good advice.

3 1 requested
2 position
3 attended
4 require
5 receive

4 1 advised
2 confirmation
3 satisfactory
4 automatic
5 select/choose
6 discriminate; race
7 apply; application
8 process
9 candidates
10 sex/gender

5 1 apply
2 attended / went for
3 contact
4 references
5 candidates
6 permit

6 *possible answers*:
1 I've applied for several different jobs: in teaching, as a social worker and as a bank worker.
2 I've had quite a few – probably over twenty in all.
3 Twice. I got a job in a bank, and then more recently as a teacher.
4 My college lecturer was my referee for the teaching job, and a school teacher was my referee for the bank job.
5 Yes. I worked in Australia one summer when I finished college, and I had to have a working holiday visa for that.

Unit 80

1 1 B 2 G 3 G 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 G

2 1 annual
2 before
3 capital/finance
4 interest
5 inflation
6 production

3 1 rate
2 profit
3 financial; invest
4 tax; loss
5 turnover
6 producers

4 1 $2 OR 20%
2 has risen significantly
3 fell slightly
4 stable (*also possible:* the same)
5 risen steadily
6 peak
7 growth/increase/rise

5 1 rose/increased / went up
2 significantly
3 rise/increase / go up
4 peak
5 gone
6 by
7 fall/drop
8 fluctuated
9 stable / the same

6 1 rose slightly
2 significant rise
3 remained stable / stayed the same
4 dropped / fell / went down slightly
5 dropped / fell / went down significantly/sharply

Unit 81

1 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B

2 1 up the business / the business up
2 of business
3 supplier(s)
4 underpaid the workers
5 overcharged us
6 percentage

3 1 research
2 goods
3 competitors
4 suppliers
5 optimistic; ambitious
6 run the company

4 1 customers
2 in
3 effort
4 share
5 clients
6 be taken over
7 over
8 reputation

5 1 takeover
2 reputation
3 effort
4 market
5 survival
6 in more business

6 1 share
2 survive
3 brand
4 growth; market
5 taken
6 effort

Unit 82

1 1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 G

2 1 section
2 demand
3 strengths
4 threat
5 skills
6 resources
7 opportunity
8 analyse

3 1 skills
2 advertise
3 strengths
4 market
5 reduce
6 analysis; weaknesses
7 skilled
8 Advertising

4 1 f 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 b

5 1 ignored
2 strategy
3 aim/goal
4 data
5 highlight
6 predictions/forecasts

6 1 ignored
2 forecasts/predictions
3 assume
4 target
5 gathered
6 realistic
7 market
8 evaluate

7 *possible answers*:

I agree that all the advice is important. I don't think one piece of advice is more important than another, but some companies make the mistake of assuming what people want, and they also fail to evaluate their strategies to find out if they are actually working.

Unit 83

1 1 No
2 Yes (switch sth on)
3 No
4 No
5 Yes (fill sth in)
6 Yes (put sth on)

2 1 –
2 get into sth / swimming, etc.
3 –
4 takes up sth / a lot of space, etc.
5 –
6 –
7 ran into sb / Nina, etc.
8 –

3 1 W – I've gone off tea.
2 R
3 R
4 W – Why did they stay up so late?
5 W – I ran into Tina today in town.
6 W – She can't switch it off.
7 R
8 W – Did you fill it in?

4 1 of
2 up
3 up
4 into
5 off
6 out
7 up
8 out

5 1 put out
2 filled in
3 gone off
4 threw; away
5 broken down
6 stayed up
7 run into

6 1 threw them away
2 put that cigarette out
3 switched the light on
4 bumped into/ ran into
5 get into
6 fill in
7 broke down
8 pulled up
9 check out
10 turn it up

7 *possible answers*:
1 I wake up very early, about 6 o'clock.
2 Not personally, but I once saw a fire in a house and rang the fire brigade.
3 I filled in a form for a magazine subscription last week.
4 Yes, I've gone off tea recently. I drink coffee almost all the time now.
5 I threw a T-shirt away a few days ago: it had a hole in it.
6 Yes, I've had to stop and change a tyre a couple of times.
7 Yes, I stayed up all night during the last election to see the results.
8 I ran into Christophe in town last week.

Unit 84

1 1 sat down
2 woke up
3 saving up
4 lie down
5 hurry up
6 hang up my jacket / hang my jacket up

2 1 down
2 up
3 Both are correct.
4 took
5 in
6 turn
7 picked
8 Both are correct.

3 1 set off / set out
2 hurry up
3 took it off
4 taken off / taking off
5 turned up
6 takes after
7 picked it up
8 turn it down

4 1 I'm afraid we've run out of bread.
2 Put the chairs back before you go.
3 Could you hand them out?
4 I must get on with my work.
5 If it's difficult, leave it out. (OR Leave it out if it's difficult.)
6 I tried but I couldn't work it out.

5 1 leave out
2 get through
3 work out
4 go over / go through
5 getting on
6 go on to / move on to

6 1 hand out / give out
2 get through
3 put; back
4 get on
5 tidy up
6 run out
7 work out
8 picking; up

Unit 85

1 quite a bit, straight away, never mind, make up your mind, so far, a week or two, for a start

2
1 Could you do me a favour?
2 I haven't made up my mind yet. OR I haven't made my mind up yet.
3 How's it going in your new job?
4 She's about to start her new course.
5 They'll be away for a month or so.
6 Have you changed your mind again?

3
1 so far
2 for a while
3 straight away
4 one or two / two or so
5 quite a bit
6 made up our minds
7 did her a favour
8 it's about to finish/end

4
1 N
2 P
3 not sure
4 N
5 N
6 P
7 not sure
8 N
9 P

5
1 No way!
2 congratulations
3 It/That depends.
4 Go away!
5 feel like (doing)?
6 It's up to you.
7 help yourself
8 make it
9 tipped

6
1 It's up to you
2 way
3 Well done / Congratulations
4 Go away / Leave me alone
5 Help yourself
6 feel like it
7 going away (for a week)
8 what a pity/shame OR that's a pity/shame

Unit 86

1
1 words
2 on
3 more
4 to
5 in
6 if
7 time
8 to

2 *possible answers*:
1 bad weather / a driving error / bad road conditions
2 look at the stars
3 is a liar / lies all the time
4 they were very hard/uncomfortable
5 you paid me
6 greater efficiency / better quality / higher production
7 it's very light and practical / I can get a lot in it / it is good quality
8 the weather / how we feel

3
1 as well as
2 due to
3 To put it another way / In other words
4 what's more
5 depending on
6 in order to
7 In contrast to
8 At the same time / On the other hand

4
1 D
2 S
3 D
4 S
5 D
6 D
7 D
8 S

5
1 be **better** off
2 very **late** night
3 give **it** a go
4 verbs **by** heart
5 it won't make **any/a** difference
6 I'm **getting** nowhere
7 if I **were** you
8 kind **of** odd

6
1 give it a go
2 an early night
3 my best
4 a (big) difference
5 getting somewhere
6 by heart
7 and more excited
8 were you

Unit 87

1 **like very much**: be mad about, be crazy about, absolutely love
like: be fond of, be keen on
dislike: can't stand, not like at all

2
1 My sister is crazy about seafood.
2 I can't stand cooking for a lot of people.
3 Sayid isn't (very) keen on spicy food.
4 My father doesn't like fish at all.
5 I don't like fried food very much.
6 I'm getting used to the local food here.

3
1 I'm mad **about**
2 I **can't** stand
3 I don't like … **very much** (after the object)
4 **I'm** not very fond of
5 I **absolutely love**
6 Recently, I've got **used** to …
7 I hate **cooking**

4 *possible answers, from Kenya*:
1 I'm mad about samosas.
2 I can't stand boiled eggs.
3 I don't like spinach very much, but I can eat it.
4 I'm not very fond of githeri (= a dish of maize and beans).
5 I absolutely love baking, especially cakes.
6 Recently, I've got used to eating pilau (= a hot spicy dish of rice and vegetables and often pieces of meat or fish). My neighbour is from the coast and she has taught me how to prepare it. I really like it now.
7 I hate cooking spaghetti. I have to keep on stirring it or else it sticks together.

5
1 **Nor/Neither** can I – I hate it.
2 We can fly or drive. Do you **have** a preference? Not really – **whatever** you prefer.
3 I'**d** rather see a film than sit here all evening. So **would** I.
4 I **prefer** speaking English to writing it. **So** do I.
5 I **don't** mind where we go on holiday. **Neither/Nor** do I.

6
1 So am I.
2 So have I.
3 Neither/Nor can I.
4 Neither/Nor do I.
5 So would I.
6 Neither/Nor did I.
7 Neither/Nor do I.
8 So would I.

7
1 Would
2 rather
3 prefer
4 don't
5 preference
6 or/to

8 *possible answers, from Kenya*:
1 I'd prefer to be a champion footballer. I want to be successful and make my family proud.
2 I'd rather have a lot of friends because I enjoy talking to other people.
3 I'd prefer to have $1,000,000 so that I could live in an expensive house and drive an expensive car.
4 I prefer to eat before 8.00 p.m. on school nights.
5 Actually, I don't like either of them.
6 I prefer Fridays because I don't go to school on Saturday.

Unit 88

1 1 G 2 B 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 G 7 B

2 1 certainly
2 probably
3 may
4 possible
5 think/believe
6 probably
7 don't
8 good

3 1 We're likely to lose the match. / It's likely that we'll lose the match.
2 You'll definitely get there on time.
3 Keira may come.
4 There's a good chance they'll win the election.
5 I doubt (that) we'll see the film at 10.00.
6 I expect (that) prices will go up. / I expect prices to go up.
7 I'm pessimistic about the sales results.

Unit 89

1 1 in comparison
2 apart from
3 alike
4 main
5 compared
6 identical
7 completely
8 unlike

2 1 similar
2 Compared
3 similarity
4 except
5 Unlike
6 alike/similar; completely
7 apart
8 difference

3 *answers from a British person*:

Oxford and Cambridge are alike in many ways. They both have famous universities and many beautiful old buildings. Another similarity is that it takes just under an hour from both cities to get to London on the train. However, apart from the universities, there is one main difference. Compared with Cambridge, Oxford is bigger and livelier, or so some people say.

Unit 90

1 1 heaven
2 indeed
3 happiness
4 highlight
5 ideal
6 familiar
7 appreciate

2 1 e 2 a 3 h 4 b 5 g 6 c 7 f

3 1 I really **appreciated** it.
2 which is **ideal/perfect**
3 the **highlight** of our trip
4 The **sight** of my son
5 It's my **idea** of heaven.
6 **fancy** restaurants.

4 1 I love the **familiar** smell of my mother's perfume.
2 It gives me great **pleasure** when my children run in from school in the afternoon.
3 I'm very happy **indeed** when the day is over and I can sit and read.

5 1 I went even though I don't like folk music.
2 Could I have a word with you later?
3 I can't be bothered to work today.
4 Dan, I'm sorry to bother you. OR I'm sorry to bother you, Dan.
5 People who complain get on my nerves.
6 She got up at the usual time today. OR Today she got up at the usual time.

6 1 bother
2 habit
3 fed
4 bothered
5 nerves
6 bother
7 upset
8 usual
9 repeated
10 annoying

7 1 fed
2 gets
3 can't
4 upset/annoyed
5 word
6 upset/annoy
7 though

8 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I'm fed up with the weather. It rains all the time, and I want to get out for a walk.
2 Not really.
3 Yes. I can't be bothered to tidy up the living room. Everybody makes a mess and leaves it all for me to sort out!
4 Yes! A dog has made a hole in my fence and come into my garden. I'm very annoyed about it.
5 Yes. A friend rang to tell me about her sister, who is very ill. It was a private conversation.
6 Yes, it upsets me a lot.
7 I have a lot of things to do that I don't like doing, for example, cleaning my car, emptying the bins, washing the floor.

Unit 91

1 1 S
2 D
3 S
4 D
5 D
6 S
7 D
8 D

2 1 presentation
2 make
3 wish
4 How
5 available
6 supposed
7 postpone / put off
8 together
9 confirm

3 1 Can we get together next week?
2 I wish I could, but I'm busy.
3 Could you put the meeting off until another time?
4 (Please) remind me about the appointment. / Can you remind me about the appointment?
5 I'll confirm it/that with you tomorrow.
6 Can you make it on Tuesday?
7 Is two o'clock convenient for you?
8 I'm meant to finish this by seven.
9 Will you be available to talk to me on Friday?

Unit 92

1 warning, official, mine, guard, safety, chemical, caution

2
1 Officials look after the mines.
2 Safety glasses are required in the laboratory.
3 The warning sign says you should mind the step.
4 There are dangerous chemicals in that bottle.
5 There are security guards in the building at night.
6 A caution sign means that you should watch out.

3
1 guards
2 warn
3 Mind
4 out
5 required; safety
6 guard
7 caution
8 official
9 chemical

Unit 93

1
1 What do you think of this idea?
2 Personally, I think it's a good idea.
3 Surely we need more qualified workers? / We need more qualified workers, surely?
4 It seems to me we have no choice.
5 If you ask me, it was a disaster.
6 Apparently, there will be an election soon. / There will be an election soon, apparently. (OR There will soon be an election, apparently.)

2
1 It seems to me we should do something.
2 How do you feel about that?
3 In my opinion, we should help them.
4 What is the army's thinking on that?
5 I see what you mean, but …
6 Personally, I think that's stupid.

3
1 Apparently
2 ask me
3 Surely
4 thing
5 thinking
6 What
7 I see
8 seems

4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S

5
1 cases
2 changing
3 point
4 no
5 in favour
6 judge

6
1 willing
2 cases
3 mind
4 express
5 points
6 topic
7 idea
8 fixed

7 *possible answers*:

No, I don't spend any time expressing my opinion online. I prefer to speak to people directly.

I'm not sure about this. I don't think people should be able to express views where they are trying to make people attack each other.

I'm certainly prepared to admit if I have no idea about a topic, which is quite often, actually.

Yes, there are a few, such as sex and religion.

Yes, I sometimes change my mind.

It depends. If they are very extreme views, that tells me something important about the person.

Unit 94

1
1 S
2 D
3 D
4 D
5 S
6 D
7 D
8 S

2
1 making
2 intend/plan
3 hoping/expecting/ planning
4 expecting
5 intention
6 fact
7 about
8 forward
9 wonder

3 *possible answers*:
1 to tidy up my office. It's in a terrible mess.
2 going to the cinema with a friend.
3 to going to London to see an exhibition.
4 of doing any work.
5 to see anyone until Tuesday, when I go to my salsa class.

4 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S

5
1 I doubt it.
2 I'm afraid not.
3 I don't think so.
4 I guess so.
5 I'm afraid so.
6 I hope not. / I hope so.
7 Definitely not.
8 I expect so.

6 *possible answers*:
1 **imagine so** because it's their 30th wedding anniversary / they love parties.
2 I don't **think so** because his wife usually does the cooking / because he isn't feeling very well.
3 I **hope not** because I don't like her boyfriend very much / she's too young to get married / I **hope so**, because she seems very happy with Tom.
4 I'm **afraid not** because we haven't got much money at the moment / my father is ill, and I don't want to leave him alone.
5 I **assume so** because he's the best man for the job / he's very popular and hard-working.
6 I **doubt it** / **don't think so** because they're playing very badly this season / they're playing against a fantastic team.
7 **Definitely**, because it's the best one on the market. / **Definitely not** – it's too expensive.
8 I **suppose so**, but I'd prefer to wait and take it next year / I don't want to because I don't think I'll pass.

Unit 95

1
1 ~~to~~
2 ~~to~~
3 ~~be~~
4 ~~with~~
5 ~~to~~
6 ~~have~~ (OR ‘ve)
7 ~~should~~
8 ~~got~~

2
1 His behaviour was bad.
2 They forced us to do it.
3 You aren't allowed to smoke in here.
4 You ought to see a doctor.
5 He obeys the teacher.
6 What was your punishment? / What punishment did they give you?
7 Bottles are banned inside the stadium.
8 You have (got) an obligation to protect all students.

3
1 allowed
2 make
3 disobeyed / didn't obey
4 authority
5 force
6 behave

4 *possible answers*:
0 We didn't have to buy our own books, but nowadays you often do.
1 Girls weren't allowed to wear any make-up, but some girls broke the rules.
2 Yes, they did: we had about three hours homework every day.
3 Sometimes you had to see the head teacher, or stay for an extra hour after school.
4 Most of the time, yes.
5 They forced us to spend the break time outside, even when it was cold and raining. I didn't enjoy that at all.
6 I think we had to behave better in the past. We were mostly very polite to all the teachers.

Unit 96

1 1 Is it OK if I park the car here?
2 Would it be all right if I took the car?
3 Do you mind if I wait here?
4 I wonder if I could ask you something.
5 Could I possibly call you later tonight?
6 Is it all right if I borrow your pencil?

2 1 Would; that's
2 problem; yourself
3 right; sorry
4 mind; feel
5 wondering; afraid
6 possibly; course

3 *possible answers*:
1 Is it all right if I borrow your shopping bag? ~ Feel free.
2 Is it OK if I switch the light on? ~ Yes/Sure, go ahead.
3 I wonder / I was wondering if I could take the day off on Friday. ~ I'm afraid not. I need you.
4 Would you mind if / Would it be OK if I looked at your newspaper? ~ Help yourself.

Unit 97

1 buy/purchase; help/assistance; happen/occur; eat/consume; start/commence; need/require

2 1 proceed
2 commence
3 purchase/obtain
4 upon
5 obtain; require
6 occur

3 1 require; assistance
2 neither
3 premises
4 neutral
5 consumes
6 obtain/purchase
7 proceed
8 occur
9 assist

4 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S

5 1 give/lend me a hand
2 kids
3 loads
4 hang/hold on
5 fed up

6 1 She says we've got loads of time.
2 Could you lend me a hand today?
3 What's up with Matt this morning?
4 I'm afraid I haven't a clue.
5 What do you fancy doing this evening?

7 1 hang/hold; Yeah
2 Cheers
3 give/lend; bit of a
4 bothered
5 up; clue
6 fancy

Unit 98

1 1 No, she has already received an email from Mr Ellison.
2 He wrote to confirm her booking and ask for payment.
3 She has just transferred £320 into Mr Ellison's account.
4 She will pay the balance.
5 She wants to know about places of interest, and in particular about restaurants in the area.
6 45 Muswell Rd, London NW4
7 Sunshine Holiday Cottages, Fore St, Truro
8 15 April, 2020
9 Dear Mr Ellison
10 With kind regards

2 1 T
2 F – If you begin with *Dear Sir*, you end with *Yours faithfully*.
3 T OR *Dear Sir/Madam*
4 T
5 F – You should end *Yours sincerely*, or if it is less formal, *Best regards*, *Best wishes* or *With kind regards*.
6 F – You should end with *Best wishes*. If the teacher knows you well, you can end with your first name, but if not, use your full name.
7 F – *Take care* is more informal.

3 1 As **requested,** I am sending you one month's deposit on the flat.
2 I would be **grateful** if you **could** phone me when you have the details.
3 Further **to** your letter **of** April 7th, I wish to confirm my booking.
4 I would **appreciate** it if you could help me with this matter.
5 and **in** particular, I would like to know about parking in the area.
6 Please let **me** know if you need any more information.
7 I look forward **to** hearing **from** you.
8 With **kind** regards

4 1 transferring
2 grateful
3 account
4 sincerely
5 Dear
6 confirm
7 transfer
8 would
9 let
10 appreciate
11 balance
12 regards/wishes

Unit 99

1 1 ATM; PIN
2 CV
3 PC
4 VIP
5 IQ
6 IT
7 DIY
8 ID
9 EU
10 asap
11 ISP
12 FAQ

2 1 identity
2 very important person
3 do-it-yourself
4 intelligence quotient
5 as soon as possible
6 internet service provider
7 personal identification number
8 information technology
9 frequently asked questions

3 1 asap
2 Show your ID (card)
3 At an ATM
4 Your CV
5 The EU
6 Your PIN (number)
7 PE
8 DIY

4 1 vet
2 pop (music)
3 flu
4 plane
5 photo
6 uni
7 info
8 pub
9 maths
10 deli
11 lab
12 blog
13 ad/advert
14 exam

5 1 ads/adverts
2 pub; TV/telly
3 (the) flu
4 uni
5 gym
6 maths
7 bike
8 vet; lab
9 deli; fridge
10 plane
11 info
12 blogs

6 1 phone number
2 mobile
3 board
4 kilos
5 celeb(s)
6 chip
7 decaff
(ALSO Decaf)

Unit 100

1 French fries, one-way trip, restroom, theater, garbage, elevator, attorney, gasoline, candy, highway

2 sidewalk, cell phone, subway, appointment book, drugstore, trash can

3 1 garbage
2 faucet
3 highway
4 subway
5 pants
6 candy
7 attorney
8 gasoline
9 purse
10 appointment book
11 vacation

4 1 theater
2 lot
3 fries
4 trip
5 room
6 school
7 cookie/candy
8 elevator
9 purse
10 one-way

5 1 Where are you going for your **vacation**?
2 What should I do with this **garbage/trash**?
3 We had to go to court, so I needed a good **attorney/lawyer**.
4 I wrote the meeting with Jo in my **appointment book / date book**.
5 He drives a big **truck.**
6 Would you like another **cookie**?
7 Could you turn on the **faucet**?
8 I took the **subway** to the museum.
9 We can't use the **sidewalk** here.
10 The children are playing in the **yard.**

6 *possible answers*:
1 123-4567
2 Hardly ever, because my city doesn't have a subway.
3 I graduated from high school ten years ago.
4 There are two movie theaters about ten minutes from my apartment.
5 About once a month.
6 I eat French fries maybe once a week, sometimes less.
7 I went to Morocco for my last vacation.
8 Yes, I've kept an appointment book for the last five or six years.
9 I eat chocolate – that's about it.
10 No, I haven't.

Word list

All the words/phrases in **bold** in this Word list are from the Oxford 3000. The numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

abbreviation 4
about *as in* **be about to do sth** B1 85, 94
absolutely B1 19, 21; **absolutely love (doing) sth** 87
abstract *adj* 59
academic *adj* B1 75
access B1 *as in* **have access to sth** 34
accident *as in* **by accident** 29
accidentally B2* 29
accommodation B1 76
according to sth A2 11
account *n* (in a bank) B1 98
account for sth B2 54
achieve A2 2, 60
achievement B1 2
act *n* B1 48
act *v* A2 61
acting *n* 61
actually A2 22, 94
accustomed to (doing) sth 76
ad B1 99
add *v* A1 25
addition *n* B1 43; **in addition (to sth/sb)** B1 73
admire B1 62
admit B1 56
adopt (a child) B2 11
advanced B1 78
advantage A2 34, 37
advert 99
advertise A2 82
advertisement A2 99
advertising *n* A2 82
advice *n* A1 79
advise *v* B1 79
affair B2 12
affect A2 16, 32
afford B1 *as in* **can/can't afford (to do) sth** B1 34, 56
afraid A1 8; **I'm afraid so/not** A2 94, 96
after a while 2
against A2 *as in* **against the law** 48; **be against sth** B1 93
age *v* B1 50
aged B1 63
ageing 50
agent B1 77
agree with sb/sth A1 36, 56, 71
agreement B1 52
ahead *adv* B1 32; **go ahead** B1 96
aim (to do sth) *v* B1 28, 51, 82
aim *n* B1 2, 51, 82
airfare 34
air force 78
airsick 34
alarm *n* B1 55
alcohol B1 32
alcoholic *adj* B1 32
alike C1* 89
alive A2 62
all *as in* **all over the world** A1 67; **Is it all right if …?** 96
All the best 98
all the same 73
allergic 50
allergy 50
allow A2 95
alone A2 8, 76
along with sth B1 25
alphabet 65
alphabetical 65
also A1 73
alternative (to sth/sb) A2 37
although A2 73
amateur *adj* C1* 61; *n* C1* 61, 66
amazed B1 19
amazing A1 19
ambition B1 7
ambitious B1 7
ambulance B2* 31
among A2 64
amount A2 24
analyse B1 14, 82
analysis B1 14, 82
angle B2 45
angrily 22
angry (with sb) A1 39
ankle A2 5
anniversary B2 12
announce B1 51
announcement B1 51
annoy B1 90
annoyed B1 8
annoying B1 9, 90
annual *adj* B2 80
anxious B2 8
apart *adv* B1 12
apart from sb/sth B1 89
apartment block 43
apologize B1 36
apostrophe 4
app A2 69
apparently B2 93
appear B1 6
appearance A2 6
application B1 79
application form 79
apply for sth A2 36, 79
appoint C1* 78
appointment 78
appointment book (US English) 100
appreciate B1 90
appreciate B1 *as in* **I would appreciate it if you could …** B1 98
approach *v* B2 68
approximate *adj* 24
approximately B1 14, 22, 24
argue A2 1; **argue about sth** 36; **argue with sb** B1 36
argument A2 1
armed B2 *as in* **the armed forces** 78
army A2 52, 78
around the world A1 50

arrange A2 30, 56
arrangement *as in* **make an arrangement** B1 77
arrest *v* B1 49
arrival B1 34
arrivals (at an airport) B1 34
article 41
artificial B2 20
artist A1 59
as
  (= because) 73
  a consequence 54, 73
  far as possible 50
  if B1 47
  long as possible 50
  quickly as possible 50
  requested 98
  soon as I possibly can 50
  soon as possible B1 50
  though B2 47
  well (as sth/sb) A2 86
  well A2 73
asap 99
ask *as in* **if you ask me** 93
assault *n, v* C1* 48
assignment B1 76
assist B1 97
assistance B2* 97
assistant *adj* A2 78
assume B2 82; **I assume so** B1 94
asthma 50
astonished 19
astonishing B2* 19
at
  last B1 38
  least A2 40
  risk (from/of sth) B1 40
  school A1 76
  the end (of sth) A1 40
  the same time A1 86
  the time A2 38
  times 29, 38
  university A1 76
  war 52
athlete A2 67
athletics 66, 67
ATM 99
atmosphere B1 16
attachment B2 70
attack *v, n* A2 18, 48
attacker 48
attempt *n* B2 52, *v* B2 52, 56
attend A2 74, 79
attitude B1 10, 74
attorney (US English) C1* 100
attract B1 28, 72; **attract sb's attention** 65
attraction B1 72
authority B1 95
autobiography 65
automatic B2* 79
available A2 53, 91
average *adj* A2 18
average *n* A2 *as in* **on average** B1 40
avoid (doing sth) A2 3, 31, 56
award *n* A2 60
aware B1 *as in* **be aware of sth** 2, 39
away from somewhere A1 76
awful A2 19
background A2 46
backpack 35
badly A2 22
baggy 20, 27
bake B1 25
balance *n* (= money to be paid) B1 98
balance *v* B1 5
balanced diet 25
balcony 43
bald 6
ban *n* B1 64; *v* B1 64, 95
bang 42
bank (of a river) B1 46
barrister 100
baseball player 67
based (in a place) A2 39; **based on sth** A2 39
basic B1 1
basis B1 79; **on a regular basis** B1 40
basket B2* 24
bass guitar 62
bat *n* B2* 67
bathroom (US English) A1 100
battery B1 69
battle B1 52
bay C1* 13
BBC 99
be
  about to do sth B1 85, 94
  accustomed to (doing) sth 76
  against sth 93
  better off 86
  born 11
  careful 92
  crazy about sth/sb 87
  expecting a baby 6
  fond of sb/sth / doing sth 87
  held up 33
  in favour (of sth) B1 93
  in a good/bad mood 8
  keen on (doing) sth 87
  mad about sth/sb 87
  meant to do sth C1* 33, 91
  prepared for sth 32
  related to sb 11
  sure to do sth 35
  thinking of/about doing sth 94
  to do with sth/sb 2
  used to (doing) sth B1 76
  wrong with sth 42
beach A1 13
bear *n* A2 18
beard 6
beauty B1 68
bee B1 18
begin A1 56
behave A2 95; **behave yourself** A2 57
behaviour A2 95
belief B1 12
believe in sth A2 36
bell B1 41
belong to sb A2 36

bend *n, v* (= go in a curve) B1 31; *v* (= make sth curved) B1 55; *v* (= move your body) B1 5
benefit *n* A2 30, 78
benefit *v* B1 36, 78
better *as in* **be better off** 86
best *as in* **do/try your best** 86
Best regards 98
Best wishes 98
bicycle A1 99
bike A1 99
biography C1* 65
birth A2 11; **give birth** 11
birthday A1 11
biscuit A2 100
bite *n* (= pain) B1 29
bite *v* (= cut with your teeth) B1 5; (= cause pain) B1 18
bit *as in* **a bit of a …** B2 97; **a little bit** B1 22
blanket B2* 41
bleed C1* 29
bleeding *n* 29
block *n* B1 43; **block of flats** B1 43
block *v* B1 31
blog *n* A1 70, 99
blouse 27
blow *v* B1 55, 67
blunt 25
board *v* B1 34
boil *v* A2 25
bomb *n, v* B1 52
bone A2 18
booking B2* 77, 98
booking office 33
bored with sth A1 39
born *as in* **be born** 11
bother *as in* **can't be bothered to do sth** 90; **don't bother** 90; **I'm not bothered** 97; B1 **sorry to bother you** 90
boxer 67
bra 27
bracket 4
branch B1 15
brand *n* B1 28, 81
brave B1 9
break *n* (= short holiday) B1 35; (= short rest) A1 74
break *v as in* **break a record** 66; **break the law** B1 48
break down (of a car) 33, 83
break into sth 48
break up (with sb) B1 10
breath B1 72
breathe B1 5, 72
breathing B1 50
brick B2* 41
bright A2 46
brightness 46
brilliant A2 19
broad (shoulders) B2 6
broccoli 23
brother-in-law 11
bubble B1 24
build *v* **(your vocabulary)** A2 3
bull 18
bump into sb 83
bunch B2 23
burglar 48
burglary 48
burn *v* A2; *n* B2 29
burst C1* 55
bury B1 68
bus pass 33
business class 34
butterfly 18
by accident 29
by chance 40
by heart 86
by mistake 40
by the time B1 38
by yourself 76
cabbage 23
cabin B2* 34
calm *adj* B1 8; **calm (sea)** B1 13
calm yourself (down) 57
calmly 22
camel 18
camp *v* A2 35
campaign *n* B1 17
camping *n* A2 35
campsite 35
campus B1 75, 76
can (+ sense verbs) A1 47
Can I possibly …? 96
can *n* A2 24
can't stand (doing) sth 87
cancel B2 33
cancer B2 54
candidate B1 74, 79
candy (US English) 100
cap *n* B1 27
capital *n* (= money) B1 80
capital letter 4
carbon dioxide 17
cardboard 41
care about sb/sth A2 36
care for sb B1 30, 50
care *n* A2 50; **take care** B1 98; **take care of sb** B1 30, 56
career A1 78
careful A2 20, 72, 92
careless B1 20, 72
carer 50
carry on A2 74
carry out sth A2 14
carsick 34
carton 24
case A2 *as in* **in case** B1 35; **in some cases** A2 93; **in that case** 40
casual B2* 28
catch *v as in* **catch (a train)** A2 33; **catch** (= find and hold sb) A2 49
category B1 65
cause (of sth) *n* A2 37
caution *n* C1* 92
cave B2* 13
ceiling B1 43
celebrate A2 12, 68
celebration B1 68
cellist 62
cello 62
cell phone (US English) A1 100
central B1 72
centre A1 72
ceremony B1 12, 68
certain about sth A2 39
chain *n* B1 41

challenge *n* B1; *v* B2 53
champion B1 9, 66, 99
championship B2* 66
chance A2 1, 82; **a good chance** 88; **by chance** 40
change *as in* **change (trains)** A2 33; **change your mind** B1 85, 93
channel B1 63
chapter B1 65
character B1 7
charge *v as in* **charge (sb for sth)** B1 26; **charge sb (with sth)** B2 49; (with electricity) B1 69
charge *n* B1 26; **in charge of sth/sb** B1 77
charger 69
charity A2 9, 54
chart A1 45
chat show 63
cheat *v, n* B1 74
cheating *n* 74
check in A2 34
check sth out B1 83
check-in 34
check-up 29
cheer up 59
cheerful B1 7
cheers 97
chemical *n, adj* B1 92
chemist 77
cherry 23
chest B1 5
childhood B1 11
chin 5
chip A2 100
choice A2 79
choose A1 79
chop *v* B2* 25
cinema [C] A1 60, 100; [U B2 60
circle *n* A2 45
circle *v* A2 14
circular *adj* 45
civil (ceremony) B2 12
claim *n, v* B1 53, 64
clap *v* B1 5
clause B1 73
clear A2 2
clearly A2 22
client B1 81
cliff B2* 13
climate change A2 16
close to sth A2 32
cloth B1 42
club A1 67
clue *as in* **I haven't a clue** 97
coach *n* A2, *v* B1 66
coal B1 41
cocoa 24
coincidence B2* 11
cold *n* A1 46; **the cold** B1 15
collection B1 59
collector B2* 59
colon 4
coloured B1 27
comb 41
combination B2 54, 60
combine B1 54, 60
come up with sth B1 83
comma 4
commence C1* 97
commercial *adj* B1 43
commit (a crime) B1 48
common A1 20; **have sth in common** B1 10
communicate (with sb A2 74
communication B1 74
community A2 68
commute 33
compare sb/sth with sb/sth A1 36, 89
compared with/to sb/sth B1 89
comparison *as in* **in comparison with sb/sth** 89
compete (with sb) A2 54, 66
competition A2 66
competitive B1 66
competitor B1 66, 81
complain *v* A2 *as in* **complain about sth/sb** 26, 36, 77; **complain to sb** B1 36
complaint B1 *as in* **make a complaint** 26, 77
completely A2 21; **completely different** 89
complex *adj* B1 2
complicated B2 11
compose B2* 62
composer B2* 62
concentrate (on sth) B1 32, 36
conclude B1 72
conclusion B1 72
condition A2 31
conductor 62
conference A2 75
confident B1 7
confirm 14, B1 79, 91, 98
confirmation C1* 14, 79
confuse B1 72
confused B1 19, 29
confusing B1 19
confusion B2* 72
congratulations 85
connect sth (to sth) A2 4, 69
connection (between A and B) B1 33, 37
consequence B1 *as in* **as a consequence** B1 54, 73
Conservative Party 51
consider A2 56, 79
consist of sth B1 36
constant *adj* B2 12
consultant B2* 30
consume B1 54, 97
consumer B1 28
contact lens 6
contact *v, n* B1 79
contain A2 2, 24
container B1 24, 41
content *n* B1 60
contest *n* B2 68
context A2 1
continue A2 56, 74
continuous B1 12
control *n* A2 *as in* **be in control of sth** 52
control yourself A2 57
convenient B1 20, 91
conversation A1 1

convince B1 17
cookie (US English) 100
costume B1 61, 68
cottage B1 43
cotton B1 27, 42
cotton (for sewing) 41
cough *n* B1 29
Could I possibly ...? 96
countryside B1 35
couple *as in* **a couple of sb/sth** A2 24
courgette 23
court (in sport) B1 67; **court (of law)** B1 49
cover *v* (= include) B1 64
cover *n* (of a book) B1 65
covered B1 67
crab 24
crash helmet 67
crazy (= not sensible) A2 7, 21; **crazy about sth/sb** A2 87
cream B1 72
creamy 72
creature B2 18, 41
crime story 65
criminal *adj* B1 48
critic B2 60
critical of sth B2 63
crocodile 18
crop B2 15
crossing 31
cruel B1 9
cruelty 9
cucumber 23
cultural B1 64
cup (in sport) A2 66
curly A2 6
currency B1 80
current B1 9, 64, 66
current affairs 64
currently B1 9, 66
curriculum vitae 78, 99
curve *n* B2 45
curved B2 45
custom B1 12
customer A1 81
cut yourself A1 57
CV 78, 99
cycling 66
cyclist 31
daily (paper) A2 64
damage *n, v* B1 15, 32
dancer A1 68
danger *as in* **in danger (from/of sth)** A2 40
dark (= not bright) A1 46; **dark (skin)** A1 6
dash 4
data A2 69, 82
date of birth 11
daughter-in-law 11
deal *n as in* **a great deal** B1 / **a good deal** 14
deal with sth A2 55, 77
Dear Sir/Madam, etc. 98
decade B1 53
decide A1 56
decorate B1 42
deep A2 67
define B1 3
definitely (not) A2 88, 94
definition B1 3
degree (in sth) A2 75
delay *n, v* B2 33
delete B2* 69, 70
deli 99
delicatessen 99
delighted B2 8
deliver B1 26, 77
demand (for sth) B2 82
denim 27
depart B2* 33
departure B1 34; **departure lounge** 34
departures (at an airport) B1 34
depend *as in* **depend on sth/sb** A2 36; **that/it depends** A2 85
depending on sth/sb B1 86
depth B2 67
deputy C1* 74
desert *n* A2 13
designer *n* A2, *adj* 28
despite B1 73
destination B1 33
destroy A2 15
destruction B2* 15, 59
detail A1 4; **in detail** 2, 40
determine B1 49
determined B1 52
develop A2 53
developed country 17
developing country B1 17
development B1 53
device A2 41
diagram B1 45
diamond B1 45
diary A2 100
diet *n* A1, *v* 25; **be/go on a diet** 25
difference A1 *as in* **make a difference** B1 86; **the main difference** 89
difficult (of a person) B1 9
difficulty B1 50
digital A2 70
diploma 78
direct *adj* A2 20
direct train 33
dirt B1 42
disadvantage (of sth) B1 34, 37
disagree with sb/sth A2 36, 71
disappear A2 16
disappointed B1 8, 19
disappointing B1 19
disaster A2 15
discount B1 26; **get a discount** 26
discover A2 14, 53
discovery A2 14, 53
discriminate (in favour of/against sb) 79
discuss A1 1
discussion A2 1
disease A2 16, 50
dishonest B2 71
dislike *n* B1 10, 87; *v* B1 87
disobey 95
disorganized 7, 71
distance *as in* **in the distance** 46
divide *n* B1 13, 31

divorce *n* B2* 11
divorce *v as in* **get divorced** 11
DIY 99

do

research 75
revision 1
sb a favour 85
sth up 27, 32
you mind if …? 96
/study for a degree 75
/try your best 86
documentary B1 63
don't bother 90
don't mind 87
donate B1 54
donation B2* 54
doubt (about sth/sb) *n* B1 37
doubt *v as in* **doubt (if/that)** B1 88; **I doubt it** 94
download *v* A2 69
drama A2 61
drama series 63
dreadful 15, 19
dream about sth/sb *v* A2 36
dress up 68
dressed B1 *as in* **be dressed in sth** 27; **get dressed** 27
drill 42
driving lesson 32
driving licence 32
driving test 32
drop *v* A2, *n* B1 80
drop by 83
drought B2* 15
drugstore (US English) 100
drummer 62
drum *n* B1 62
drunk *adj* B1, *n* 54
due *as in* **due (to do sth)** (= expected) B2 33, 51; **due to sth/sb** (= because of sth/sb) B1 73, 86
dull B2* 7
dust *n* B1 42
duty (= tax) 64
duty B2 77
each other A1 10
eagle 18
early A1 *as in* **an early night** 86
earring 27
earth *as in* **(the) earth** A2 14; **why/what, etc. on earth …?** B1 40
earthquake B1 15
eastern B1 13
easy-going 7
economic B1 50
economical 72
economy B1 50, 72
economy class 34
edge B1 44
editor B1 64
educate B1 75
educated *adj* B1 75
effect A2 16, 32, 59
effective B1 2, 20
effectively B1 2, 22
effort B1 81
elbow B2* 5
elderly *n* 50
elect B2 51
election B1 51
element B1 28
elevator (US English) 100
embarrassed B1 8, 19
embarrassing B1 19
emergency B1 30, 77
emergency service 31
emotion B1 8
emotional B2 8
emphasis B2 3
emphasize B2 3
employment B1 78
encourage B1 2, 72
encouragement C1* 72
encouraging C1* 2
end *n as in* **at the end (of sth)** A1 40; **in the end** A2 40
end up B1 32
enemy B1 52
energetic 7
energy (= power from fuel) A2 17; (= being active) A2 7
engaged B1 *as in* **be/get engaged** 12
engine A2 77
enjoy A1 56, 87; **enjoy yourself** A2 57
enormous A2 19
enough A1 30
enquiry B2 54
entertain B1 68
entertainment B1 34, 68
entrance B1 43
entry B1 3
environment A2 16
environmental B1 16
episode B1 63
equal *adj* B1 12
equality C1* 12
equally B1 50
escape *v* B1 52
especially A2 22, 98
essential *adj* B1 19, 28, 74
estate agent 77
EU B1 99
evaluate B2 82
even if B1 86
even though B1 73, 90
eventually B1 22
evidence A2 49
exact *adj* A2 24
exactly A2 24; **exactly the same** B1 89
exam A1 99
examination B2 49, 99
examine (= look at sth carefully) B1 30; (= consider carefully) B1 49; (= formally test) B1 74
except (for sth) A2 66, 89; **except (that)** B1 89
exchange sth (for sth) B1 26
excited about sth A1 39
exclamation mark 4
excuse *n* B2 9
exhausted 19
exhibit *v* B2* 59
exhibition B1 59
exist A2 14
existence B2 14

expand B1 2
expect (= think sth will happen) A2 56, 88, 94; expect (= demand sth because of a responsibility) B1 9; **I expect so** B2 94; **expect a baby** B1 6
expected B1 20
expedition B1 53
experience [U] A2 34, 37; [C] A2 34
experienced B1 34
experiment *n* A2 14
experiment with sth *v* B1 1
expert *n, adj* A2 54
explain A1 1
explanation A2 1
explode B1 52
exploration B2 14
explore B1 14
explosion B1 52
export *n, v* B1 77
exporter 77
express (train) 33
express *v* A2 2, 93
extreme *adj* A2 15
eyebrow 5
face *v* B1 43
facilities B2 35
fact *as in* **in (actual) fact** A1 22, 94
factor A2 54
fail (a test) A2 32; (of a business) 81
fair (= just) A2 71, 88; **fair (hair/ skin)** B1 6
fairly B1 22
fall *v* A2 16, 80; **fall asleep** B1 32
fall *n* A2 16, 37, 80
falls 13
fame B2* 60
familiar B1 90
famine 16
famous for sth A1 39
fan (= admirer) A2 62, 67
fancy *v as in* (= would like) B1 56, 97; (= sexually) B1 10, 88
fancy *adj* B1 90
FAQ 69, 99
far (less/more) B1 63
farther 98
fascinated 19
fascinating B1 19
fashion A2 28, 72; **in / out of fashion** 28
fashionable B1 28, 72
fasten *v* B1 32
father-in-law 11
faucet (US English) 100
favour *n as in* **be in favour (of sth)** B1 93; **do sb a favour** 85
fear *n* A2 54
feather B2 18
feature A2 13
fed up (with sth/sb) B1 8, 39, 90, 97
fee B2 76
feel A1 47; **feel like sth** A2 / **doing sth** 85; **feel free** B1 96
feeling A1 8
female *adj* A2 6
fence B1 41
fencing 66
festival A1 68
fiction A2 65
field (= area of knowledge) B1 78
fight *v, n* A2 52
fighter 52
fighting B1 52
figure *n* (= number) A2 66; (= body) 6
file *n* B1 69
fill sth in A2 83
film-maker 60
final *n* A2 66
finance B2 80
financial B1 80
find it difficult to do sth A2 2
fine A2 *as in* **that's fine** B1 96
fine *n* C1* 32, 48
fingernail 5
finish *v* A1 56
fire (at sb/sth) B1 52
first class 34
fit *adj* A2 71, 50
fitness B1 50
fix *v* A2 32, 42
fixed B1 93
fizzy (drink) 24
flag B1 67
flavour B2* 25
flood *n, v* B1 15
flour B1 25
flow *n, v* B1 13
flu A2 99
fluctuate 80
fluctuation 80
fluent 2
fluently 2
focus *n, v* A2 51
fog 15
foggy 15
fold *v* B1 5
folder 70
folk *n* (= people) B1 68
folk *adj* B1 *as in* **folk music/art** 68
follow instructions 74
fond of sth/sb / of doing sth B2* 87
footballer 67

for
  a start 85
  a while B1 38, 85
  ages 38
  example A1 3
  free B1 40
  instance B1 3
  life B1 40
  long B1 38
  this/that reason A2 76
force *n* B1 31; **the (armed) forces** 78
force sb (to do sth) B1 54, 95
forecast *n* B2 82
foreground 46
foreign A2 1
foreigner C1* 1
forever B1 64
forget A1 56
formal A2 1
fortunately A2 32
forward *v* 70
foster parent 11
frame *n* B1 59

freedom B2 76
freeze (= become hard and change to ice) B1 55; (of a computer) 69
freezing (cold) 15
French bean 23
French fry (US English) 100
frequently B1 22
fridge A2 99
friend *as in* **make friends (with sb)** B1 10
friendship B1 10
frighten B1 54
frightened B1 8, 19, 39
frightening B1 19
frozen B1 23
fruit salad 23
frustrating C1* 2
frustration C1 2
fry *v* B1 25
frying pan 25
fuel *n* B1 64
full stop 4
full-time (job) 76
fun *as in* **have fun** A1 68
function *n* B1 1
fur B1 18, 27
furious B2* 8, 19
further *adj* (= more) A2 4, 98
further *adv* (comparative form of **far**) B1 98
further to … 98
gadget 26
gain independence 53
game show 63
garage B1 43
garbage (US English) 100
garbage can (US English) 100
garlic 23
gas A2 16
gasoline/gas A2 (US English) 100
gather B1 82
gender B2* 79
general *as in* **in general** B1 40
generally B1 22
generation B1 11
generous B1 7
genre B2 60
gentle B1 9
gentleman B1 46
gents (= toilet) 46
geographical 13
geography A1 13

get

  (= become) A2 8
  away (= escape) 52
  better A2 2
  divorced 11
  dressed 27
  in (= arrive) B2 33
  into sth 83
  married A1 11
  on (well/badly with sb) B1 10
  on (with sth) (= make progress) 84
  on sb's nerves 90
  out of sth / doing sth 83
  over sth B2 30
  rid of sth B2 42
  somewhere/nowhere 86
  sth wrong 8
  through sth B2 84
  to know sb B1 10
  together (= meet for social reasons) 10, 91
  used to sth B1 87
ghost B1 65
give birth 11
give sb pleasure 90
give sth out 84
give sth up A2 56
give/lend sb a hand 97
glad B1 8
global B1 16
global warming B1 16
glove B1 27
glue 24, 42

go

  away (= leave the house) A2 85
  away! (= leave me alone) A2 85
  camping 35
  down A2 80
  into hospital 30
  off (= explode) B2 52
  off (= make a noise) B2 83
  off sth 83
  on (to sth) 75, 84
  out of business 81
  out with sb 10
  over sth 84
  through sth B2 1, 84
  to hospital 30
  to prison 48
  to war 52
  up A2 80
  wrong B1 10
  on a diet 25
go *n as in* **give sth a go** B2; **have a go at sth** B1 86
goal (= aim) A2 2, 82
goalkeeper 67
god A2 68
gold A2 41
golfer 67
good (quality) A1 28
goods *n pl* B1 26, 81
government A2 51
gradual 16
gradually B2 16
graduate *v, n* B1 75
grain B1 16
grape 23
grateful B1 *as in* **grateful to sb** B1 39; **I would be grateful if you could …** 98
green bean 23
greet A2 77
groom 12
ground (= the surface of the earth) A2 44; B1 *as in* **sports ground** 67
grow (= become bigger) A1 81; (= become) A2 55
growth B1 80, 81
guard *n, v* B1 92
guess *v* A1 1; **I guess so** 94
guess *n* A1 1; **have a guess** 1
guest A2 63
guilty (= not innocent) B1 20, 49; (= feeling sorry about sth you have done) B1 8

guitarist 62
gym A1 99
gymnasium 99
gymnast 67
gymnastics 66, 67
habit A2 90
hairdresser 77
hairdressing 77
hairstyle 6
hammer 42
hand *as in* **give/lend sb a hand** 97; **on the one hand … but on the other (hand) …** B1 73; **on the other hand** B1 86
hand sth out 84
handbag 100
hang B1 42; **hang sth up** 55, 84
hang on B2 97
happily A2 22
happiness B1 59, 90
harbour *n* B2* 13
hard-working 7
hardly B1 22
hardware C1* 69
harm *v* B2 16, 18; *n* B2 18
harmful B2 16, 18
harmless 18
hate *v* A1 87
have (got) sth on (= wearing sth) 27
have a guess 1
have a reaction to sth 29
have fun A1 68
have (got) to do sth A1 95
have sth in common B1 10
head teacher 74
head *v* B1 35
headline B1 64
hear A1 47
heart *as in* **by heart** 86
heat *n* A2 46
heating B1 43
heatwave 16
heaven B2 *as in* **my idea of heaven** 90
heavily B1 22
heavy rain 15
heel B2 5
helicopter B1 34
help yourself *as in* (used for giving permission) B1 85, 96; **help yourself (to sth)** (= take what you want) B1 57
herb B2* 23
herself A2 57
hide *v* A2 55; **hide (your feelings)** B1 8
high (quality) A2 28
high school (US English) A1 100
high street B1 28
higher education B1 75
highlight *n* B1 90; *v* B1 82
highly B1 21
highway B2* 100
hike 35
himself A2 57
hip B2* 5
hire *v* B1 77
historic B1 43
historical B1 65
hockey player 67
hold *as in* **(an election)** B1 51; **(an event)** B1 66; **hold (talks)** B1 52; **(a record)** B2 66
hold on 97
hold sb up 33
hold-up 33
hole A2 42
homeless B2* 54
honest B1 10, 71
honey 24
honeymoon 12
hope *v* A1 56, 94; **I hope so/not** 94
horizon C1* 13
horrible B1 15
host (on TV/radio) B1 63; (in a competition) B1 66
hostel 35
How do you feel about …? 93
How's it going? 85
How/What about …? A1 91
however A1 73
huge A2 19
human *adj* A2 16
humorous B2 72
humour B2 72
hunt *v* B1 18
hurricane B1 15
hurry up 84
hurry *n* B1 *as in* **in a hurry** 38
hurt yourself A2 57
hyphen 4
I (don't) think so A2 94
I look forward to hearing from you 98
I was wondering if … 96
I wonder if … B1 96
I'm sorry, but … 96
ice A1 16
ice hockey player 67
ID (card) B2* 99
idea *as in* **have no idea (about sth)** B1 93
ideal *adj* A2 90
identical B2* 11, 89
identify A2 1
idiom 3
if I were you B1 86
ignore B1 46, 82
illegal B1 48, 71
illegible 71
illness A2 50
image A2 59, 69
imaginary B1 20
imagine A1 56; **I imagine so** B1 94
immediate B1 70
immediately A2 70
immigrant B1 51
immigration 51
impact (on sth) *n* B1 17, 62; *v* B1 17
impatient B2 7, 71
impolite 71
import *n, v* B1 77
importance B1 76
importer 77
impractical 7, 71
impression B1 46
impressive B1 43
improve A1 2, 72
improvement B1 2, 72

in
- **(actual) fact** A1 22, 94
- **a (serious) relationship** 10
- **a good/bad mood** 8
- **a hurry** 38
- **addition (to sth/sb)** B1 73
- **case** B1 35
- **charge of sth/sb** B1 77
- **contrast to sth** B1 86
- **danger (from/of sth)** A2 40
- **detail** 2, 40
- **general** B1 40
- **my youth** 63
- **order to do sth** B1 86
- **other words** B1 14, 86
- **particular** B1 40, 98
- **power** 51
- **private** 40
- **public** B1 40
- **recent years** B1 40
- **secret** 22
- **some cases** A2 93
- **spite of** B2 73
- **that case** 40
- **the distance** 46
- **the end** A2 40
- **the meantime** C1* 38
- **the way** 40
- **time** B1 33, 38
- **/out of fashion** 28

inbox 70
include A1 2
inconvenient 20
increase *v, n* A2 80
incredible A2 14
incredibly B1 9
indeed B1 90
independence B2* 53
independent A2 53
indicate B1 63
indirect B1 20
individual *n, adj* A2 17, 70
indoor B1 20, 35
indoors B1 35
industrial B2 46, 72
industry A2 46, 72
ineffective 20
inflation B2* 80
influence *n, v* B1 60
info B2* 99
inform *as in* **well informed** B1 65
information A1 99
informal A2 1
ingredient B1 25
injure B1 29, 52
injured B1 21, 29
injury A2 29
innocent B1 20, 49
insect A2 18
insecure 7
instant B2* 70
instantly B2* 70
instead of sb/sth A2 4, 17
instruction A2 74
insurance B2 32
intelligence B1 99
intend B1 94
intention B1 *as in* **have no intention of doing sth** 94
interest (= money) B1 80
interest rate 80
interested in sth A1 39
interrupt B2 4
invent A2 9, 14, 53
invention A2 14, 53
invest (money) B1 80; **invest in sth** 25
investigate B1 49
investigation B2 49
involve A2 52, 77
involved (in sth) B1 52, 39
IQ 99
iron *n* (= metal) B1 41
iron *n, v* (for clothes) B1 76
irregular 71
irresponsible 7
-ish 6
Is it a problem if …? 96
Is it all right if …? 96
Is it OK if …? 96
ISP 99
issue B2 50
it isn't easy 42
it's up to you 85
IT B1 99
item B1 *as in* **news item** 64
itself A2 57
jail *n* B2* 48
jar 24
jealous (of sth) 8, 39
job A1 78
join A1 4
journal B1 64
journalism B2* 64
journalist A2 64
journey A1 33
judge *n* B1 49; *v* B1 93
jungle 13
junk 70
jury B2* 49
just (= by a small amount) A1 46
keen (= interested) B1 2; **keen on (doing) sth** B1 87
keep (= continue/stay in a place) A1 32; **keep doing sth** A2 56; **keep (a record of sth)** B1 1; **keep in contact with sb** 70; **keep/be in touch (with sb)** B1 10
keyboard B1 62
keyboard player 62
kick *v* B1 5
kid A2 97
kill yourself A2 57
killing *n* B1 48
kind *adj* B1 9
kind of (= a little) 86
king A2 53
kiss *v* B1 5
knee A2 5
knickers 27
know A1 72; *as in* **well known** B1 62, 65
knowledge A2 72
lab A2 75, 99
label *n, v* B1 28
laboratory B1 75, 99
Labour Party 51
lack (of sth) *n* B1 12, 29

lack *v* B1 29
ladies (= toilet) 46
lady A2 46
land *v* A2 34
landing B2 34
landscape 59
lane (on a road) B2 31
last *v* A2 74
last *as in* **at last** B1 38
lasting 52
late *as in* **a late night** 86
latest *adj* B1 28
law A2 51
lay B1 55
layer B1 44
lazy A2 7
lead *v* A2 53, 55; **lead to sth** B1 43
lead singer 62
leader A2 52, 53
leading *adj* B1 61
leaf B1 44
least *as in* **at least** A2 40
leather B1 41
leave A1 33; **leave sb alone** 85; **leave sth out** B1 4, 84
lecture *n* A2 75
lecturer 75
legal B1 48, 71, 74
legally 74
legible 71
leisure B1 46
leisure centre 43
lend *as in* **lend sb a hand** 97
length B1 24, 67
leopard 18
let me know A2 98
lettuce 23
level *adj* B1 35
lie *v* (= be horizontal) A1 55
lie down 84
life expectancy 18
lifespan 18
lifestyle A2 63
lift *n* A2 100
light (rain) B1 15
light *v* A2 55; **light sth up** B1 68
lightning B2* 15
like *prep* (= such as) A2 4
like *v* A1 56
like *n* B1 10
likely A2 21, 71, 88
limit *v, n* B1 50
limited B2 82
linesman 67
link *n* A2 70; (to the internet) A2 76
lip B1 5
liquid B1 16
list *n* A1 4
listen to sb A1 36, 47
live apart 12
live *adj* B1 62
living *adj* B1 62
living *n* B1 77
loads of sth B2 97
loaf 24
loan *n* B2 76
local *adj* A1 61
locate B1 43
located B1 13
location B1 13
lock *v* A2 71
log in/on 69
log off/out 69
login 69
lonely B1 8
long *adj* A2 67
look *v* A1, *n* A2 47
look as if/though A1 47
look at yourself A1 57
look forward to (doing) sth B1 35, 94; **I look forward to hearing from you** 98
look like (+ noun) A1 47
look onto sth 43
look out (= be careful) B1 83
lose A1 *as in* **lose weight** 25
loss B1 80
Lots of love 98
love *v* A1 56
Love from 98
loving 9
low (= of a reduced amount) A2 69
luck A2 32
luckily 32
lucky A2 71
lung cancer 54
luxury B1 34
mad (= not sensible) B1 7, 21
mad about sth/sb B1 87
magic B1 64
main *adj* A1 *as in* **main (station)** 33; **main road** 31, 100; **the main difference** B1 89
mainly B1 13, 22
majority B2 51

make

a difference B1 86
a payment 76
a profit/loss 80
a speech 12
an arrangement 77
an attempt 52
an effort 81
as in **can you make it?** 91
friends (with sb) 10
it (= come) 85
a mistake A2 1
plans (for sth) 94
sb do sth A2 95
sth up B1 9
sure A2 77
up your mind 85

male *adj* A2 6
mall B1 43
manage (= be in control) A2 76; **manage to do sth** B1 56, 78
management B1 81
mango 23
market *n* B1 81, *v* B1 82
market research 81
marketing B1 82
marriage B1 12
married A1 11
marry A2 11
mash 25
match *v* A1 28
material A2 41
maths A2 99

maximum *adj* B2 67
may *v* A2 88; **May I …?** 96
mean *v* (= intend) B1 9
mean *adj* 7
mean *v* A2 *as in* **I see what you mean** 93; B1 *as in* **mean a lot (to sb)** 68
meant *as in* **be meant to do sth** C1 * 33, 91
meantime *as in* **in the meantime** C1 * 38
meanwhile B1 38
measure *v* B1 24, *n* B1 51
mechanic B2 * 77
medal B2 * 41, 66
medicine A2 77
medium B1 *as in* **(of) medium build/height** 6
melon 23
melt *v* B2 16
Member of Parliament 51
mend 42
mental B1 50
mess *n* B1 42
metal A2 41
method A2 1, 25
metre A1 67
might A2 88
mild B1 15
minced 25
mind *n as in* **change your mind** B1 93; **make up your mind** B1 85
mind *v* (= be careful) B1 92; **not mind** A2 56, 87
mine *n* B1 92
minimum *adj* B2 67
minor B2 48
minority B2 51
mint 23
miserable B2 8
miss (a train) A1 33
mistake *n* A1 *as in* **by mistake** 40; **make mistakes** B1 1
mixed *as in* **mixed (vegetables)** B2 23; **mixed feelings** B2 20
mobile phone A1 100
modern A1 20
monarchy B1 53
mood B1 8; **in a good/bad mood** 8
moon A2 14
more and more B1 86
more or less B2 24
mosquito 18
mostly A2 13
mother-in-law 11
motivated 2
motivation B2 2
motor racing 67
motorway 100
mountainous 13
moustache 6
move *v* (= cause feelings) B2 59; **move sb to tears** 59
move (house) A2 43
move on (to sth) B1 84
move *n* B1 **43**
movie (US English) A1 100
movie theater (US English) 100
MP 51
mud B1 42
murder *n, v* B1 48
murderer 48
muscle B1 29
myself A2 57
mystery B1 65
nail *n* B1 42
narrative *adj, n* B1 65
nation B1 66
native *adj, n* B1 2
native speaker 2
natural A1 20
naturally B1 22
navy 78
neat B2 6
necessarily *as in* **not necessarily** B1 22
neck A2 5
necklace 27
need (to do sth) *v* A1 56
need (for sth) *n* A2 37, 51
needle B1 42
negative *adj* A1 20
neighbourhood B1 68
neither *as in* **neither do I** B1, **neither can/would, etc. I** 87; **neither … nor** B1 97
nerves *as in* **get on sb's nerves** 90
nervous A2 8
net B1 67
network *n* A2 69
network *v* 70
neutral B2 * 97
never mind 85
news A1 *as in* **the news** 63
newsreader 63
nickname 11
no longer B1 10
no way! A2 85
non-fiction 65
normal A2 46
northern B1 13
not any longer 10
not at all (= not in any way) 87
not necessarily B1 22
not only B1 **… but also …** 73
note *as in* **take notes** B1 75
nuclear B1 53
nuclear power 53
obey B2 95
object *n* A1 41
objective *n* B2 51
obligation 95
obtain B2 97
obvious B1 2
obviously B1 2, 22
occasion B1 8, 28, 68
occupation B2 * 78
occur B1 15, 31, 97
odd (= strange) B1 9
of course A1 22, 96
off A2 *as in* **a day/week off** 46
offer *v* A2 56
office block 43
official *adj* B1, *n* B2 92
OK *as in* **Is it OK if …?** 96
old age 50
old-fashioned B1 20
omit 4, 84

on
  a regular basis B1 40
  average 40
  my own B1 8, 76
  the basis of sth B2 79
  the horizon 13
  the one hand B2 **... but on the other (hand) ...** 73
  the other hand B1 86
  the street(s) B1 40
  the way B1 40
  the whole 22, 40
  time A2 34, 38, 76
  top of sth B2 63
  your own 8, 76
one another B2 10
one or two A2 85
only child 11
onto A2 43
operate B2 30
operation B1 30
opinion A1 *as in* **in my opinion** A1 93
opportunity A2 1, 82
optimistic B2* 59, 88
or so B2 *as in* **a day/week, etc. or so** 85
orchestra B2* 62
order *v* A1 26
order *n* B1 26; **in order to do sth** B1 86
ordinary A2 46
organ B2 62
organist 62
organized B1 7, 71
original *adj* B1 59, 65; *n* B1 59
originally B1 11
ought to B1 95
ourselves A2 57
outdoor B1 20, 35
outdoors B1 35
outfit B2* 28
outgoing 7
oval 67
over *adv* (= finished) B1 74
over time B1 40
over-ambitious B1 81
overcharge 81
oversleep 55
owl 41
package *n* B1 26
packet B2* 24
pain A2 29
painful B1 20, 29, 72
painless 20, 29, 72
paintbrush 59
pale (skin) B1 6, 29
pan B1 25
pants (= underpants) A2 27; (US English: = trousers) A2 100
parade *n* B2* 68
parcel 26
parking lot (US English) 100
parliament B2 51
parsley 23
part *as in* **take part (in sth)** B1 66
part-time (job) 76
participate in sth B1 36, 66
particular *as in* **in particular** B1 40, 98
particularly B1 22
pass (a test) A2 32
passion B1 54
passionate B2* 54
path B1 44
patience B2* 7
patient *adj* B2 7
patient *n* A2 30
pattern A2 27
patterned 27
pause *n* B2 4
pavement 31, 100
pay for yourself A1 57
payment B1 76
PC 99
PE 99
peace (= a state of calm) A2 46; (= opposite of war) A2 52
peaceful B1 46
peak *n* C1* 80
peanut 24
pear 23
per cent A2 81
percentage B1 81
perfect *adj* A1 90
perfectly (= very) B1 22
period A1 59
permanent B2 20
personality A2 7
personally B1 93
persuade B1 51
pessimistic 88
petrol A2 100
petrol station 31
pharmacist 77
photo A1 99
photograph *n* A2 99
photographer B1 77
photography B1 77
pianist 62
pick *v* B1 44
pick sb/sth up (= collect) 33
pick sth up (= learn without lessons) 84
pin *n* B1 42
PIN 99
pineapple 23
pipe *n* B1 41
place (an order) B1 26
pity B2 *as in* **what/that's a pity** 85
plain B2 27
plan *v* A1 56, 94; *n* A1 94
plane A1 99
planet A2 14
planning B1 74
plant *n* A1, *v* A2 44
play *n* A1 61
player A1 62, 67
pleasant B1 9, 20
pleased (with sth/sb) A2 8, 20, 39
pleasure B1 34, 65, 90
plenty of sth B1 25
plot *n* B1 65
plug sth in 69, 71
plus *conj* (= in addition) B2 73
PM 51
poem B1 65
poet B1 65

poetry B1 65
point *n* B2 45
point of view B1 93
pointed B2 45
poison *n* B1 18, 29; *v* B1 29
poisonous B1 18, 29
policy B1 51
polite to sb A2 39, 71
politely 22
political B1 51
politician B1 51
politics B1 51
pollute 16
pollution A2 16
pool A1 67
poor (quality) B1 28
pop (music) A2 99
popular music 99
port B1 13
portrait B1 59
position (= job) B2 79
positive *adj* A1 20
post *v* (= put online) A2 70
postgrad 75
postgraduate 75
postman 77
postpone C1* 91
postwoman 77
pot (for plants) B1 44; (for cooking) B1 41
pour (a liquid) B1 5; **pour (with rain)** B1 15
poverty B1 37
powder B1 24
power *n* A2 69, 72; **in power** 51
power plant 43
power station 53
powerful B1 20, 59, 72
powerless 20, 59, 72
practical B1 7, 72
practice *n* A1 72
practise *v* A1 56
pray B1 72
prayer B1 72
predict A2 16, 82
predictable B2* 16
prediction B1 82
prefer A1 *as in* **doing / to do sth** 87; **prefer sth or sth** 87; **prefer sth to sth** B1 87
preference B2* 87
pregnant B2 6
premises 97
prepared *as in* **prepared for sth** B1 32, 39; **prepared to do sth** B1 93
presentation B1 91
president A2 53
press *v* B1 47
pressure B1 12
pre-tax 80
pretend B1 9, 56
pretty *adv* (= quite) A1 22
prevent sb/sth from sth A2 36
previous B1 11
previously B1 14
priest B1 77
primary (education) B1 74
prime minister B1 51
prince B1 53
princess B1 53
prison A2 *as in* **in prison** A2 48
prisoner B1 48
private B1 20, 34, 74; **in private** 40
problem *as in* **Is it a problem if I ...?** 96
proceed (to/with sth) B2 97
process *n* A2 79
producer B1 60, 80
production B1 80
profession B1 78
professional *adj* A2 61; *n* B2 61, 66
professor A2 75
profile A2 70
profit *n* B1 28, 80
promise *v* A2 56
promote (= help to sell sth) B1 70; **promote sb** B1 78
promotion B2* 78
pronounce A2 1
pronunciation 1
proof B2 49
proper B1 25
properly B1 22, 42
property (= house) B2 43; (= possessions) B1 48
protect A2 13, 51
protection B2 13, 51
protest *n, v* B1 64
proud B1 9, 39
prove B1 49
provide A2 3
pub A2 99
public *adj* A2 20; **in public** B1 40
public house 99
publish A2 64, 65
publisher 65
publishing company 65
pull up 83
punish B1 49, 95
punishment B1 49, 95
purchase *n, v* B2 97
purpose (of sth) A2 49
purse (US English) 100

put
- **sth back** (= return) 84
- **sth down** 84
- **sth forward** B2 51
- **sth off** 91
- **sth on** (= organize) 61
- **on (clothing)** A2 83
- **sth out** (= stop sth burning) 83
- **sth up** B1 35
- **up with sth/sb** 84
- *as in* **to put it another way** B2 86

qualification B1 78
qualified B1 93
qualify (= win the right to enter a competition) B1 66; (= pass a course/training, etc.) B1 93
quality B1 9
quantity A2 24
quarter (= 3 months) 80
queen A2 53
question mark 4
queue *n, v* B1 34
quit B1 64
quite A1 22
quite a bit 85

quotation B1 72
quotation mark 4
quote *n, v* B1 72
race (= competition) A2 66; (of people) B1 79
racing driver 67
racket 67
rail travel 33
raincoat 27
rainfall 15
raise *v* (= make sth bigger) B1 64; (= obtain money) B1 9, 54, 80
range B1 *as in* **a wide range (of sth)** 2, 59
rare B1 20
rarely B1 22
rate *n* A2 64
rather (= quite) A2 22; **rather than** B1 54; **would rather do sth** B2 87
reach *v* A2 14; **reach (the highest point)** B1 80; **reach (an agreement)** B1 52
react A2 59
reaction B1 29, 59
real (= not artificial) A1 20; (not imaginary) A1 20
realistic B2 82
realize A2 10
really A1 19
reappear 71
rearrange 71
reasonable B2 35
rebuild B2 71
receipt B1 26
receive A2 70, 79
recent A2 66
reception B1 *as in* **wedding reception** 12
recipe A2 25
recognize A2 1
recommend A2 65
recommendation B1 65
record *n* A2 54; **keep a record of sth** 1; (= best performance) A2 66; (= vinyl) B1 62
record *v* A2 54
recording A2 62
recover from sth B2 30
rectangle 45
rectangular 45
recycle A2 17, 71
recycling 17
recycling bin 17
red light 32
red pepper 23
reduce A2 17, 26, 82
reduction B2 82
refer to sb/sth A2 36
referee (= sb who writes a reference) 79
referee (in sport) B2* 67
reference B2 79
reference book 65
refrigerator 99
refund *n, v* 26
refuse *v* A2 56
Regards 98
region A2 13
registry office 12
regular A2 71
regularly B1 15, 22
reject *v* B1 52
rejection 52
relationship A2 *as in* **in a (serious) relationship** 10
related to sth B1 3
related to sb B1 11
relation B1 11
relative *n* B1 11
relaxation 46
relaxed B1 8, 19
relaxing B1 19, 46
release *n, v* B1 53
release *v, n* (= on the market) B2 62
reliable B1 10, 71
relief B2 74
relieved B2* 74
religion B1 68
religious B1 12, 68
rely on sb/sth B2 10, 36
remain B1 78, 80
remember doing sth A1 59
remind sb (of sth) 91
remote *adj* B1 35
remote control 41
remove A2 69
renewable energy 17
rent *n, v* B1 76
reorganize 71
repair *v* A2 42
repeat *v* A1 1; *n* B1 63
repeated B1 90
repetition 1
reply *v* A2 70
report *v* A2 49
represent B1 51
republic C1* 53
reputation B2 81
request *n* A2, *v* B1 79
require B1 74, 79, 92, 97
research *n* A2 75
researcher A2 75
reservation B1 35
resident *n* B2 43
resource B1 82
respect (for sb/sth) *n* B1 37
respond (to sth/sb) A2 82
response A2 82
responsibility B1 25
responsible (for sth) B1 7, 39, 49, 77
rest room (US English) 100
result *as in* **as a result** A2 73, 86
retail *n* B2* 43
retail store 43
retake 71
retire B1 64, 78
retired B1 54
retirement B2* 64, 78
reuse 71
revise sth / for sth B1 1, 76
revision B2* 1, 76
revolve 14
rewrite 71
rise *v* A2 16, 21, 80; *n* B1 16, 37, 80
risk *n* B1 30, 81; **at risk (from sb/sth)** B1 40
risk *v* B1 32, 56
risky B2* 81
road sign 31

roast 25
rob B2* 48
robber 48
robbery B2* 48
robot B1 41
rock *n* A2 13
rocket B2* 14
role A2 61
roll *n* B1 24; *v* B1 5
romantic *adj* B1 11
rope B1 42
rough (= not smooth) B1 6; (= violent) B2 13
roughly B2 14, 22
round *adj* A2 45
round the block 43
round trip (US English) 100
roundabout 31
row (= line) B1 44
royal *adj* B1 53
rubber *adj* B2 41
rubbish *n* A2 17, 100
rude to sb A2 39
rugby player 67
rule *v* B1 53
run (= control) B1 81; (of a computer) B2 69
run away 55
run into sb 83
run out (of sth) B1 84
sadly A2 62
safety B1 92
safety glasses/boots/helmet 92
sail *v* A2 77
sailing boat 13
sailor B1 77
same *as in* **all the same** 73; **at the same time** 86
sample *n* B2 30
sand B1 13
sandy 13
satellite (= equipment) B2 14; (= object in space) 14
satisfactory 79
saucepan 25
save (= use less) A2 17; **save (money)** A2 50
save up (for sth) 84
saxophone 62
saxophonist 62
scan *n* 30
scared (of sth) A2 8, 39
scarf 41
scene (= place where sth happened) A2 31; (= picture of a place) 46
schedule A2 *as in* **on schedule** 34
school A1 *as in* **at school** A1 76
sci-fi 65
science A1 14
science fiction A2 65
scientific B1 14
scientist A1 14
scissors 42
screenwriter 60
script B1 60
sculpture B1 59
search engine B1 69
seasick 34
seaside *n, adj* 35
seat belt 32
second-hand 26
secondary (education) B1 74
secret *as in* **in secret** 22
secretly 22
section A1 82
security B1 92
see *v* A1 47; **see sb as sth** B1 7
seed B1 44
seem A2 56; **it seems to me** 93
seldom C1* 22
select B2 79
selection B2 79
selfie 70
semicolon 4
seminar B2* 75
send *v* A1 70; A1 *as in* **send sb to prison** 48
send sth back 26
sense of humour 10
sense *v* B2 46
sensible B1 7
separate *adj* A2 12
separate *v* B1 4, 12
serious A2 31, 48
seriously B1 21
servant B1 61
serve (= work for people) B2 78
service (= trains, buses, etc.) A2 33
set (work) B1 74
set *n (= group of things)* B1 26; (= TV) 63
set *v* (= decide) B1 17; (= prepare) B1 55
set off 84
set sth off 55
set sth up B1 81
setting B1 43
several A2 24
sew 42
sex B1 79
sexual B1 12
shake *v* A2 55
shall A2 79
shame B2 *as in* **what/that's a shame** 85
shampoo 41
shape A2 45; **in good/bad shape** 6
-shaped B2 45
share (sth with sb) *v* A1 70
share *n* B1 81
shark 18
sharp (knife, etc.) B1 25; **(rise, fall, etc.)** B2 80
sharply 21, 80
sheet (of paper) A2 24
shell B1 45
shift (= change) *n* B2 63
shine *v* (= direct a light at sth/sb) B1 55
shine *n* 72
shiny B1 72
shocking B2* 46
shoot *v* B1 48
shooting B2 66
shopping centre 43
shopping list 4
shopping mall 43

shore B2* 13
should A1 95
shoulder A2 5
shout *v* A2 67
show (your feelings) B1 8
shower (= rain) B1 15
shy B1 7
sibling B2* 11
side *n* B2 52
sidewalk (US English) 100
sight *n* B1 90
sights *pl* (for tourists) B1 35
sign up (to sth) 17
signal *n, v* B1 32
significant B2 80
significantly B2 80
silent B1 46
silly B1 88
silver *n* A2 41
similar (to sth/sb) A1 39, 89
similarity B1 89
simply B1 22
since *conj* (= because) B2 73
single parent 11
sink *v* B1 55
sister-in-law 11
sit down A1 84
sit an exam 74
site A2 68
skid 31
skier 67
skill A1 25, 78, 82
skilled B2* 82
slang 3
slash *n* 4
slice *n* B1 24; *v* B1 25
slight *adj* B2 80
slightly B1 22, 80
slow down B1 2
smart B1 28
smell (of sth) *v* A2 36; *n, v* A2 47
smooth B1 6
so *conj* (= as a result) B1 73
so *adv* B1 *as in* **so do/can/would, etc. I** B1 87; **so far** B1 14, 85
soap (opera) 63
social media 70
social networking 70
society A2 54
software B1 69
soil B1 44
soldier A2 52
solid *n* B1 16
solid *adj* B1 14
songwriter 62
sore 29; **a sore throat** 29
sort sth out 94
sorry A1 *as in* **I'm sorry, but …** 96
sound *v, n* A1 47
source (= sb/sth that provides information) B1 11; (= where sth comes from) A2 17
southern B1 13
space [U] (= beyond earth) A1 14
spacecraft 14
speak to sb A1 36
specifically B1 22
spectator B2* 67
speech A2 12
speed camera 31
speed limit 32
speed *v* B2 32
speeding *n* 32
spending *n* B1 64
spicy B1 87
spider A2 18
spill B2 55
spirits *as in* **lift sb's spirits** 90
spite *as in* **in spite of sth** B2 73
split up 12
spoonful 24
sports car 31
spot *n* (= small mark) B1 18; (= small red lump on skin) B1 88
spread *v* B1 16
spring *v* B2 55
square *n, adj* A2 45
stab C1* 48
stability C1* 80
stable *adj* B2 80
stadium B1 67
staff B1 74
stage *n* A2 61
stage design 61
stand A2 *as in* **can't stand (doing) sth** 87
stand for sth 99
stand up A1 84
standard *n* B1 (= level of quality) 34; **high standards** B1 9
standard *adj* (= normal) 67
star *n* A1 14
start up (a computer) 69
starve (to death) B2* 15
state *adj* B1 74
statistics B1 12
statue B1 41
stay the same 80
stay up 83
steadily B2* 80
steady B2 80
steal A2 48
steel B2 41
stick *n* (= thin piece of wood from a tree) B1 44; (= sth you hit a ball with) 67
stick sth together 42
still *adv* (used for emphasis) B1 73
still life 59
sting *v, n* 18
stock (in business) B2 81; (in cooking) 25
stomach A2 5
stone A2 41
stop *v* A1 56
stopping train 33
store *n* (US English) A2 100
store *v* B1 69
straight A2 31, 45
straight away 85
stranger B1 98
strategy A2 82
street *as in* **on the street(s)** B1 40
street light 31
strength B1 50, 82
stress *n, v* A2 3
stressed 8
string B1 42

stripe 18, 27
striped 27
strongly B1 21
structure *n* A2 78
studio B1 46
stuff *n* B1 41
stupid A2 7
style (of speech) A1 3;
  (= fashion) A2 28
stylish 28
substance B1 41
subway (= underground path) 100; (US English: = underground train system) 100
succeed in sth A2 36
successful A2 30
successfully B1 22
such as A1 4
sudden B1 15
suddenly A2 15, 22
suffer (from sth) B1 29, 36, 50
suggest A2 56
suicide C1* 64
suit *v* B1 28
suitable B1 2, 71
summarize B1 65
summary B1 65
sun A1 14
suntan 6
sunbathe 35
sunbathing 35
sunshine 15
supplier 81
supply *n* B2 69, 81; *v* A2 81
support *v* A2 10; B2 44
supporter B1 67
suppose A2 *as in* **I suppose so** 94
supposed *as in* **be supposed to do / be doing sth** B1 91
sure *as in* **be sure to do sth** 35;
  make sure B1 77
surely B1 93
surface B1 31
survey *n* A2 65
survival B2* 18, 81
survive B1 18, 81
sweep B2 5
sweet *n* A2 100
sweetcorn 23
swimmer 67
swimming pool A1 67
switch sth off/on 17, 83
syllable 3, 59
symbol A2 3
symptom B1 29
system A2 51
tail (of an animal) B1 18;
  (of a plane) 34

take
  (an exam) A2 32, 58, 74
  (a photo) A1 58
  (= borrow or steal) A2 58
  (drugs/medicine; sugar/milk in tea/coffee) A2 58
  (= need an amount of time) A1 58
  (= travel on) A1 58
  (= wear) **(a particular size)** 58
  after sb 84
  care 98
  care of sb A2 30, 56
  notes A2 75
  off (of a plane) A2 34, 84
  off (= start being successful) 84
  out (a loan) 76
  over (a company) 81
  part (in sth) A2 66
  place A2 49
  (sb's advice) A2 58
  sth back 26
  sth in 84
  sth off (= remove) A2 84
  sth seriously 17
  sth up (= start sth new) B1 56
  up sth (= fill time or space) B1 83
  vs bring 58
take-off 34
takeover 81
talent B1 9
talented B1 9
talk show 63
talk to sb A1 36
talks *n pl* B1 52
tan 6
tap *n* B2 17, 100
tape *n* B1 42
target *n* A2 17, 82; *v* 82
taste of sth *v* A2 36, 47
taste A2 *v, n* 47
tattoo 6
tax *n* B1 50, 80
teach yourself A1 57
tear B2 *v* 55
technical B1 78
technique B1 59
tell (= know or guess) B2 6;
  tell (lies / the truth) A1 10
telly 99
temperature A2 29
temporary B2 20
tend (to do sth) B1 56, 76
tennis player 67
tent B1 35
term B1 74
terrible A1 15
terribly B2* 21
terrified 19
terrifying 19
test *n* A1 30
that's fine 96
that/it depends A2 85
theatre [C] A1, [U] A2 61
theft B2* 48
theme B1 65
themselves A2 57
theory B1 53
therefore B1 67
thesis B2* 75
thick (fog) B1 15
thief A2 48
thing A1 41; **the thing is …** 93
think *v* A1 *as in* **be thinking of/about doing sth** 94; **I (don't) think so** A2 94; **What do you think about …?** B1 93
thinking (on sth) *n* A2 93
though *conj* B1 73
threat B2 82
throat B1 5

throughout *prep* B1 34
throw *v* A2 55
throw sth away A2 17, 83
thumb B2* 5
thunder 15
ticket machine 33
ticket office 33
tidal wave 15
tidy (sth) up 42, 84
tie sth together 42
tiger 18
tight (= not baggy) B1 20, 27
tights 27
time *as in* **at the time** A2 6, 38; **at times** B1 29, 38; **by the time** B1 38; **in time** B1 33, 38; **on time** B1 34, 38, 76
tin B1 24
tiny B1 19
tip (= advice) A2 32
tip *v, n* (= extra money) B1 85
tired of sth A2 39
title A1 65
toe B1 5
together with sth B1 25
tongue B1 5
tool A2 42
top *as in* **on top of sth** B1 63
topic A1 93
total B1 *as in* **a total disaster** 86
totally B1 21
touch *v* A2 47
touch *n as in* **keep/be in touch with sb** B1 47
tour *v* B1 62
tournament B2* 66
town hall 43
track *n* A2 31
trade *n, v* B1 28
traffic jam 33
traffic lights 31
tram 31
transfer *v, n* B2 98
translate B1 1
translation B1 1
trash (US English) 100
trash can (US English) 100
travel agency 77
travel agent 77
travel card 33
travel *n, v* A1 33
travel sick 34
treat *v* B1 30, 50
treatment B1 30, 50
trend B1 54, 80
trial B2 49
triangle 45
triangular 45
trick *n* B1 64
trip (over) *v* B2 29
trip *n* 33
trousers A1 27, 100
truck (US English) A2 100
trumpet 62
trumpeter 62
trust *v* B2 10
try *v* (= in a trial) 49
tube B1 24
tuition fee 76
turn out B1 35
turn sth off/on A2 17
turn sth up (= increase volume) B1 83
turn sth/sb down (= refuse an offer or person) 84
turn up (= arrive) 84
turnover C1* 80
tutor 75
TV A1 99
tweet *v, n* 70
twin *n* A2 11
typically B1 63
tyre B1 41
ugly B1 6
unable B1 71
unattractive 6
undergraduate C1* 75
underpants 27
underpay 81
underwear B1 27
undo 27
unemployed B1 78
unemployment B1 78
unexpected B2 20, 71
unfair B1 71, 88
unfashionable 28
unfit 71
unfriendly 71
unhappy A2 20
uni 99
union B1 99
universe B2 14
university A1 99; **at university** A1 76
unkind 9, 71
unless B1 35
unlike B1 89
unlikely B1 21, 71, 88
unlimited 82
unlock 71
unlucky 71
unpleasant B1 9
unplug 71
unpopular 71
unpredictable 16
unreliable 71
unsuitable 2, 71
unusual A2 71
unwell 30
unwilling 54
up to *as in* **up to (an amount)** B1 18; (= until) B1 74
update *v* B1 69
upload *v* 69
upon B1 97
upset *adj* (= sad) B1 8; **an upset stomach** 29
upset *v* B1 8, 90
used *adj* (= not new) B1 26
used to (doing) sth B1 76
useful A1 20, 72
useless B2 20, 72
username 69
usual A2 90
vacation (US English) A1 100
valuable (= worth money) B1 26; (= useful) B1 72
value *n* B1 26, 72

variety A2 50, 72
various B1 50, 72
vary B2 12, 18
vase 24
version B1 64
very much *as in* **like sth very much** 87
vest 27
vet 99
veterinary surgeon 99
victim B1 49
viewer B1 63
viewing *n* 63
violence B2 54
violent B1 15, 54
violinist 62
VIP 99
visual B2 62
vital B2 19
vitally 21
voluntary B2* 54
volunteer *n, v* B1 54
vote *v* B1 36, 51; *n* B1 51
waist 5
wake up A1 83, 84
want *v* A1 56
war A2 *as in* **at war** 52
warn sb (of/about sth) B1 92
warning B1 33, 92
wash yourself A1 57
waste *n* B1 *as in* **a waste of money** 28; **a waste of time** 74
waste *adj* B1 43; **waste ground** 43
waste *v* B1 17, 28, 74
watch *v* A1 47
watch out *v* 92
water *v* B1 17
waterfall 13
watermelon 23
wave *v as in* **wave (to sb)** B1 5; **wave (a flag)** B1 67
wave *n* A2 13
wavy 6
way A1 *as in* **in the way** 40; **on the way** B1 40; **to put it another way** 86
weakness B2 82
weapon B1 52
weblog 99
wedding A2 12
weigh B1 18, 24
weight A2 18
weightlifting 66
well done 85
well enough 30
well informed 65
well known B1 62, 65
well written 65
western B1 13
What do you think about …? 93
what's more 86
what's up? 97
what/that's a pity/shame 85
whatever B1 17, 87
whenever B1 17
wherever B2 17
whether (… or not) B2 49
whistle *n* 67
wide A2 67
widely B2 21
width C1* 67
Wi-Fi 69
wild *n as in* **in the wild** 18
willing (to do sth) B2 54, 93
wing (of a bird, insect, etc.) B1 18; (of an aeroplane) B1 34
wipe *v* C1* 42
wire *n* B2 69
wireless 69
wish B1 *as in* **I wish I could** 91
With kind regards 98
within B1 52
witness *n* B2 49
wolf 18
wonder *v* B1 94; **I wonder if …** B1, **I was wondering if …** 96
wonderful A1 20
wood A2 41
wooden A2 41
wool B1 27, 41
woollen 27, 41
word B1 *as in* **have a word with sb** 90; **in other words** B1 14, 86
work *v* (= function) A2 26, 42; (= be successful) B1 1
work sth out B1 84
work of art 59
work permit 79
working *adj* A2 50
worldwide *adv, adj* B1 67
worried (about sth) A2 19, 39
worry about sth/sb A2 36
worrying *adj* 19
worth (= a good idea) B2 26; (= value) B1 26
Would it be all right if …? 96
Would you mind if …? 96
would rather do sth B2 87
wrist B2* 5
written B1 74; **well written** B1 65
wrong B1 *as in* **something wrong with sth** 39, 42
x-ray 30
yard (US English) B1 100
yeah A1 97
young B1 *as in* **the young** 50
Yours faithfully 98
Yours sincerely 98
yourself A1 57
yourselves A1 57
youth B1 63
youth hostel 35
zoo 18

Abbreviations used in the book

adj	adjective
adv	adverb
conj	conjunction
[C]	(of a noun) countable
inf	informal
n	noun
OPP	opposite
pl	plural
pp	past participle
prep	preposition
pt	past tense
sing	singular
sb	somebody
sth	something
SYN	synonym
[U]	(of a noun) uncountable
v	verb

Oxford University Press is the world's authority on the English language.

As part of the University of Oxford, we are committed to furthering English language learning worldwide.

We continuously bring together our experience, expertise and research to create resources such as this one, helping millions of learners of English to achieve their potential.

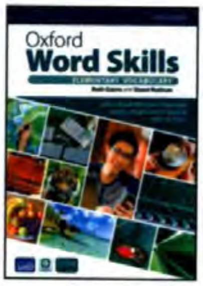
OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

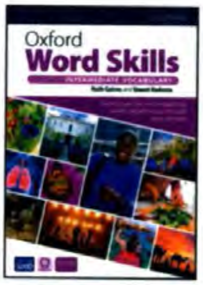
www.oup.com/elt

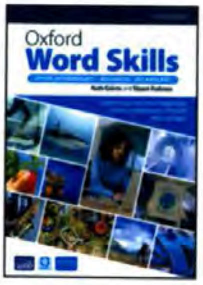
Oxford
Word Skills
INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY

Learn to use the most important words and phrases in English topic by topic

Based on the Oxford 3000™, *Oxford Word Skills* teaches you the words and phrases you need to use in English in real life. The Oxford 3000™ is a list of the 3,000 essential core words that every learner of English needs to know, graded by CEFR level.







- learn over 2,600 words and phrases
- improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- practise the words in context
- study 100 units (20 extra!) with more practice
- use in the classroom and for self-study

Now with one year's access to the best-selling *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app.

Use the app with *Oxford Word Skills* to:

- listen to the pronunciation of each new word and do exercises on pronunciation
- look up the meaning of any word you don't know

Ruth Gairns and **Stuart Redman** are language teaching experts who specialize in writing material for learning and teaching vocabulary.

APP

Oxford
3000

CEFR
B2
B1
A2